

学校的理想装备

电子图书·学校专集

校园网上的最佳资源

MBA 考试辅导  
英语分册



## 序

在社会主义市场经济条件下，为了培养和造就一批适应改革开放和经济发展需要的高层次经营管理人才，在国务院学位办公室和国家教委研究生工作办公室的领导下，从 1988 年 12 月开始探讨设置中国式的工商管理硕士（MBA）学位的可行性。1991 年，中国人民大学、清华大学等九所大学经授权，率先在校内试行培养工商管理硕士研究生，学制两年半。1993 年，国务院学位办又批准了 17 所高等院校进行试点。到 1997 年，学位办共批准了 56 所高等院校作为培养工商管理硕士研究生的试点。

随着试点单位的扩大，近几年来，全国报名申请入学的人数也大幅度地增加。1997 年，全国报考工商管理硕士研究生的人数达 10000 余人。与此同时，全国计划招生的人数也在以每年 15% 的速度增加。各校招生的实际人数又大大地超过了这一比例。以中国人民大学为例，最初只招收了 37 名学生，1997 年则招收了 149 名学生。加上企业管理人员在职申请工商管理硕士学位的人数，全国每年培养的工商管理硕士研究生将会超过 5000 人。

为了把好入学质量这一关，国家教委委托全国工商管理硕士教育指导委员会组织命题，并在全国试办工商管理硕士学位的高等院校中进行联考，企业管理人员在职申请 MBA 学位也采取这种入学考试（简称 GRK）。

《'98MBA 考试大纲》明确指出：MBA 入学考试重在测试考生的逻辑思维能力、汉语和英语的阅读表达能力、抽象概括能力、空间想象能力、基本运算能力，以及运用有关基本知识分析和解决实际经济管理问题的能力。由此可见，MBA 作为培养实务型综合管理人才的教育基地，其选拔考试与学术型硕士研究生的考试不同，它更注重测试考生的综合能力和基本素质，而不考或少考死记硬背的东西。

为了帮助应考人员更好地准备入学考试，中国人民大学出版社聘请有关专家编写了《MBA 工商管理硕士入学考试辅导》丛书。这些作者既是各专业专家，同时又是参加我校'97 联考考前辅导的教师，在把握各科内容上有较强的针对性，能够充分地照顾各种专业背景的应考人员，特别是非经济专业的考生。

本套丛书紧扣复习大纲，分为逻辑、语文、数学、英语、管理五个分册，全面地介绍各专业中考生需要掌握的知识要点，并且在注重考生理解要点的基础上，训练考生分析问题与解决问题的能力。这套丛书不仅分析了'97 联考的试题，还附有全真模拟试题及详解答案，以便应考人员能够自我训练。因此，这套丛书可以作为应考人员的自学教材，也可以作为各校教师的辅导参考教材。

最后，真诚地感谢我们的编委，北京大学光华管理学院副院长王其文教授，对外经贸大学管理学院院长马春光教授，北方交通大学管理学院副院长李培煊教授，北京理工大学管理学院前院长韩伯棠教授，以及我们的各位作者，感谢他们为本书的顺利出版所花费的心血，感谢他们为我们的应考人员所作出的奉献。

徐二明

中国人民大学工商管理学院

1997 年 6 月 8 日



## 第一篇 语 法 结 构

### 第一章 动词不定式

#### 第一节 概 述

一、动词不定式指由 to 加上动词原形（而且只能是动词原形）所构成的一种非限定动词，但在有些情况下 to 可以省略。动词不定式在语法功能上可作主语、宾语、表语、定语、和状语。

To acquire education is the principal way of gaining status in a culture that generally stresses achievement, skillfulness, and upward mobility. 在注重成就、技术和向上精神的文化里，获得教育是争得（社会）地位的主要途径。

We are planning to register for entrance examinations postgraduate. 我们要报考研究生了。

The most urgent problem now we are facing is to make our every effort to learn the needed materials for the exam. 最紧迫的问题是尽一切努力进行考前复习。

—Where should I send an application?

—The Personnel Office is the place to send it to.

—把申请寄到哪儿去？

—寄到人事处。

To get confidence from others, one should take his promise. 要获得别人的信任，我们应遵守诺言。

说明：以上五句中的斜体是其动词不定式的附属部分。

二、动词不定式可以作以上各种部分，但它毕竟是动词，所以有动词的属性。它还可以有自己的宾语（和 中的斜体部分）和状语（ 中的斜体部分）。虽然动词不定式在语法上没有表面上的直接主语，但它表达的意义是动作，这一动作一定由使动者发出。这一使动者我们称之为逻辑主语。考研题中，语法所考动词不定式部分主要是检测考生是否能掌握动词不定式与其逻辑主语之间的一致，其中主要包括它们之间主动和被动的关系以及它们在时间上的一致。这就涉及到动词不定式的各种形式。现以动词 make 为例，其形式如下：

	主动形式	被动形式
一般式	to make	to be made
完成式	to have made	to have been made
进行式	to be making	
完成进行式	to have been making	

#### 第二节 不定式的用法

##### 一、不定式结构作主语

To do one thing; to do another. / To get high marks in entrance exam for postgraduate in a short time is a hard nut to crack. / To talk with him is a great pleasure.

上述形式一般情况不多用，作为考试规范英语，我们倾向于用先行词it；把不定式结构后置。如：

It is really a hard nut to get high marks in the entrance postgraduate in a short time

It is a great pleasure to talk with him

不定式后置的情况不仅限于动词是系动词，也适用于其他动词。如：

It took us a great deal of efforts to finish that task

I made him extremely happy to get contact with his since they separated 40 years ago.

不定式结构所表示的动作是谁做的，即不定式的逻辑主语，通常可以在特定的上下文中能看出，也可以通过带“for+名词短语”辨出。如：  
It is quite important for us to read good books during the period of general review(总复习).

It is not difficult for those who study maths well to pass the exam.

在某些形容词(如careless, clever, considerate, foolish, good, impolite, kind, naughty, nice, silly, stupid等)作表语时，不定式后可以加of来引导出其逻辑主语。如：

It is very kind of you to help him to do a silly thing

间或也可用for+there to be表示(而且there后面的不定式只能是to be)

It's a great pity for there to be much trouble in

## 二、不定式作宾语

不定式作宾语有两种：一种是及物动词后直接跟带to的不定式；另一种是“动词+疑问词+带to的不定式”

### 1. 动词+带to的不定式结构

这样的动词常见的有：agree, aim, appear, apply, arrange, ask, begin, care, choose, claim, continue, decide, decline, demand, desire, determine, endeavor, expect, fail, forget, hate, hesitate, hope, intend, learn, like, long, manage, mean, offer, prefer, pretend, promise, refuse, seek, start, swear, threaten, try, undertake, want, wish等。

afford一般与can和can't或could和couldn't连用

I can't afford to buy that luxury piece of furniture.

He couldn't afford to go away for a holiday last summer.

以上例句中整句的主语是不定式的逻辑主语：即We是不定式to plant trees...的逻辑主语；you是to do的逻辑主语；I是to buy的逻辑主语，He to go away...的逻辑主语。弄清不定式与逻辑主语之间的关系在研究生入学英语考试中非常得要。后边我们还要进一步地阐述这一问题。

### 2. 动词+疑问代(副)词+不定式

这类动词常见的有：advise, decide, discuss, find out, forget, inquire, know, learn, regard, remember, see, settle, teach, tell, think(=consider), understand, wonder 等。这些疑问代(副)词有 what, when, where, which, how, whether 等，但不包括 why 如：

其中，(1)和(2)中不定式的逻辑主语仍是句子的主语，分别为 He 和 You；而 (3)中不定式的逻辑主语则不是句子的主语 I，而是宾语 you。

有时，我们常常先用一个 it 代表不定式，而把不定式放到后面去，如：

(1) We find it difficult to get everything ready before we require.

(2) She considers it important to make friends with them.

(3) I don't think it necessary to argue with them on this.

上述的 difficult, important, necessary 分别是(1)、(2)和(3)中不定式宾语的补足语，这种作宾语用的带 to 的不定式结构在有它自己补足语的情况下，就用先行词 it 代表不定式结构，而把不定式放到补足语后面去。

有时在个别的介词后可用“疑问词+不定式结构”作其宾语，如：

He has his own decision of how to do it.

另外一种情况是含有否定意义的带有介词 except 的不定式结构，如：

He seldom goes back home except to ask for money from his father.

He did nothing there except watch TV for the whole night. (不带 the whole night 的不定式)

当 but 作 except (只有....., 只能.....) 讲时，其后也可跟不定式，如：The poor man had no choice but to sleep on Sunday.

### 三、不定式作表语

不定式作表语的情况有两种：一种情况为主语是不定式(表示条件)，表语也是不定式(表示结果)。另一种情况主语是以 aim, duty, hope, idea, happiness, job, plan, problem, purpose, thing, wish 等为中心的名词，或以 what 引导的名词性从句，不定式表语说明对主语起补充说明作用，如：To see is to believe. To work means to earn a living. To get her children away from her is to kill her.

The most important thing is to negotiate with them at the moment. The future of the world depends on it. He wishes to buy a luxurious car. He is near to the boss's plan is to start building the skyscraper. What he wants to say is to get rid of the plan. He will never.

### 四、不定式作定语

不定式作定语修饰名词或代词，它只能放在它所修饰的名词或代词后面，如：

He has nothing to do during the period of review.

动词不定式定语往往有一层动宾关系，即所修饰的名词是不定式的宾语(如上述两例)。所以，如果不定式的动词是不及物动词，那么就要在动词后加上相应的介词。如：

He has a lot of trifles to deal with. He had got no place to live.

in/. That girl has nothing to worry about. That is the subject to concentrate on/. He has a strict teacher to listen to/. She has four children to look after. She had a sick mother to live with.

## 五、不定式作状语

不定式作状语修饰动词、形容词和副词，表示目的、结果和原因等。不定式作状语时，一般情况下句子的主语就是不定式的逻辑主语。如：

### 1. 表示目的：

- (1) Tom comes every year to visit us.
- (2) Thousands of people go to south to earn money.
- (3) To save time, cartoonists generally draw the hands of the characters with only three fingers and a thumb.
- (4) Over the centuries, various theories have been advanced to explain the origin of alphabetic writing.

(1)中的 Tom 是 to visit us 的逻辑主语；(2)中的 Thousands of people 是 to earn money 的逻辑主语；(4)中的 theories 是 to explain the origin of alphabetic writing 的逻辑主语。

### 2. 表示结果：

He must be crippled not to walk. / It seems that the first employee didn't sleep at all to be so sleepy in the early morning. / What have I done for you to deserve such a large amount of money? 还有固定搭配的不定式表示结果：so...as to; such(... )as to...; enough to...; too...to...; in order to...等。如：We have got so plenty of food as to treat the army. / He is too young to fit that job.

### 3. 不定式表示原因：

It's very kind of you to say I am pretty pleased to hear that you are elected as the president of the club. / I'm sorry to interrupt. They are quite surprised to see the great changes in the area.

## 六、在复合结构中的不定式

不定式的复合结构是指有些动词跟有宾语后再带上不定式，作宾语的补足语。前边已提到过，在这种结构中宾语是不定式的逻辑主语。如：

I expect you to come. / He warned us not to go there. / They try to avoid those things to do. / The teacher left a bag to solve the hard problems.

1. 有很多这样的动词可以跟宾语及其补足语不定式，如 advise, allow, ask, beg, cause, drive, encourage, expect, forbid, force, hate, get, intend, invite, like, permit, persuade, remind, teach, tell, trust, urge, want, warn 等表示“致使”等意义。

He advised me not to treat him in such a way. / He taught us how to grow plants.

2. 另外，表示感觉的动词 see, hear, feel, watch, notice, observe 和 have, let, make 后的宾语可接不带 to 的不定式。如：

I have seen him go to the library. Let him go.

3. 表示心理状态的动词像 consider, declare, find, prove, think, know, believe, discover, feel (=think), imagine, judge, suppose, understand 等词的宾语补足语不定式一般是 to be (或动词的完成时态)。

They thought he would be a quiet boy. All the students considered him to be a good student. Most of the book buyers imagined the author to be above the ordinary. I found him to have acted disgracefully.

而且, 在 consider, declare, find, prove, think 等动词后的 to be 是可以省去的。如: She considered me a scholar.

They found him guilty.

4. 在某些成语动词如: arrange for, call on, care for, count on, count upon, depend upon, long for, prepare for, prevail upon, rely on, vote for, wait for 等后面, 也可以跟这种宾语加不定式结构。如:

We are waiting for them to be elected. They voted for Wang Gang to be the chairman.

## 七、不定式的完成式、进行式和完成进行式

I happened to be with him when he was hit by a ball and collapsed.

My friend has spent four years studying at a college. He seems to have graduated during those years.

Some molecules are large enough to be used in the electronic microscope.

Many of the world's great novels are reported to have been made into films last year.

这三类在考研题中出现的频率很高, 要特别注意不定式的这三种形式: 如果不定式所表示的动作与主要谓语所表示的动作(状态)同时(或几乎同时)发生或发生在主要谓语之后, 那么用不定式的一般形式。如: Chichester was determined to carry his plan. He received a warm welcome from the Australians and from his family who had flown there to meet him. In 1967, he arrived back in England, where a quarter of a million people were waiting to welcome him. / After all, eighty was a special birthday, another decade lived or endured just as you chose to look at. / Now suddenly she began to shuddering herself in as if weeping were a disgrace.

1. 如果不定式所表示的动作(状态)发生在主要谓语动词之前, 那不定式就要用其完成式, 如:

I am glad to have been there several times. She feels relaxed to have finished writing her deadline.

不定式的完成式一般有下列用法:

(1) 构成复合谓语:

He is said to have designed several high buildings.



is in his thirties.

这样复合谓语还有(以 to do 为例): to be reported to have done sth., to be believed to have done sth., to seem (consider, appear, think,) to have done sth., to be likely to have done sth. 如:

The local health organization is reported \_\_\_\_\_ twenty-five years ago when Dr. Audon became its first president.

A) to be set up                      B) being set up

C) to have been set up            D) having been set up

空档前是动词 to be reported 与档处构成复合谓语, 填(C)。(为什么不选 D, 在下一节中阐述不定式与分词的区别时再讲), 注意, 这里用不定式的完成形式需有一时间状语 twenty-five years ago.

(2) 用在某些形容词后: 如

He is extremely happy to have got rid of the  
felt exhausted to have finished so much  
time

## 2. 不定式进行式

不定式进行式表示主要谓语动词所表示的动作(情况)发生时, 不定式所表示的动作正在发生。如: When he came in, I happened to be

doing my experiment

Why do you stand here? You are supposed to be working  
workshop

## 3. 不定式完成进行式

不定式完成进行式表示其动词所代表的动作, 在主谓语动词所代表的动作之前一直在进行。如:

The students from the Department of Sociology are said to have  
been investigating the possibility of pro  
/ They are quite happy to have been cooper  
with us till now.

## 八、不定式的被动形式

当不定式的逻辑主语是动作的承受者时, 这个不定式要用被动式, 包括它的一般式和完成式。如:

(1) It is important for me to be chosen as a member of the  
/ As far as his ability is concerned, it is impossible for him  
to have been assigned as an important

(2) He preferred to be given leave. The guest worker  
planned to have been guided to the city on Friday.

(3) Our director wanted the files to be sent to him and  
expected the experiments to have been finished the  
yesterday (动词不定式构成复合宾语)

(4) No food is allowed to be taken out of the cafeteria  
university is said to have been set up more

( 动词不定式构成复合谓语 )

- (5) They are going to hold an English Speech Contest to be sponsored by the big/ ~~There are~~ many problems raised at this meeting to have been discussed. ( 动词不定式作定语 )
- (6) He was too young to be loaded with a burden. ( 动词不定式作状语 )

### 第三节 实例与分析

- 1) The flexibility of film allows the artist \_\_\_\_\_ unbridled imagination to the animation of cartoon characters. ( 在动画片摄制过程中, 影片的灵活性能使艺术家充分施展想象力。 )

A) to bring      B) bringing  
C) is brought      D) brings

A) 为正确答案。不定式短语 “ to bring...characters ” 充当宾语 “ the artist ” 的补足语。

- 2) “ allow sb. to do sth. ” 是固定搭配, 还有类似的其他动词。

The function of Louis Sullivan's architecture was \_\_\_\_\_ large uninterrupted floor areas and to allow ample light into the interior.

A) provided      B) providing  
C) to provide      D) provide

C) 为正确答案。句子的主语是 “ function ( 功能 ) ”, 它的表语应采用不定式。凡表示 “ 目的 ”、 “ 理由 ”、 “ 功能 ”、 “ 意图 ” 等含义的名词充当主语时, 其表语应采用不定式形式; 再说, 根据平行原则, 空白处和 “ to allow... ” 是并列的表语, 所以空白处也应用不定式。

- 3) Billie Holiday's reputation as a great jazz-blues singer rests on her ability \_\_\_\_\_ emotional depth to her songs.

A) be giving      B) are given  
C) being given      D) to give

D) 为正确答案。名词 “ ability ” ( 能力 ) 后要接不定式, 表示哪一方面的能力。这些表示 “ 目的 ”、 “ 愿望 ”、 “ 打算 ”、 “ 能力 ”、 “ 意向 ” 意义的动词、形容词和名词后面要求接不定式。

- 4) The green turtle has been known \_\_\_\_\_ over 2000 miles to return to a nesting site.

A) in the navigating      B) the navigation  
C) to navigate      D) navigation

C) 为正确答案。 “ to be known ” 后通常接不定式, 与此类似的尚有 “ to be said ” 等。

- 5) I found \_\_\_\_\_ to answer all the questions within the time given.

A) no possibility      B) there was impossibility  
C) impossible      D) it impossible

D) 为正确答案。译文: 我发现在指定的时间内回答所有的问题是不可能的。

不定式(短语)可在句中作宾语,但当它后面常有宾语补足语时(通常由形容词或名词充当),不定式常由“it”代替充当形式宾语而真正宾语不定式放到了宾补的后面,又如:

He makes it a rule to take a walk before breakfast.

I think it interesting to play while it is snowing hard.

I have got a loaf of bread; now I'm looking for a knife \_\_\_\_.

A) to cut it with.      B) to cut with it

C) with it to cut      D) it to cut with

A)为正确答案。不定式还可在句中作定语,如本句的“to cut it with”修饰“knife”。注意:不定式作后置定语修饰名词时,如果动词已带了自己的宾语或为不及物动词时,要在后面加适当的介词,以便和前面的名词发生联系。如:

I have a house to live in. / He has no money to buy food with.  
/ There are a lot of books to choose from. / This is the very person to sell your ticket to.

Mr. Green ran all the way up \_\_\_\_\_ that the train had left fifteen minutes before.

A) to only find the station      B) only to the station find

C) to the station only to find      D) the station to only find

C)为正确答案。

不定式除作主、宾语外,还可在句中作状语,如本句“only to find...”作结果状语)等。作状语时,还可分别表示原因、条件、程度、目的等。

To succeed in a scientific research project, \_\_\_\_\_.

A) one needs to be persistent

B) persistence is needed

C) one needs be a persistent person

D) persistence is what one needs

A)为正确答案。不定式的逻辑上的主语应和句子主语一致,本题 B)和 D)选项虽然语法正确,但主语“persistence”(坚持不懈)无法作不定式“to succeed”(成功)的逻辑主语,故本句不定式主语应该是“人”,答案 A 正好符合要求,而 C 选项中“needs”后少不定式符号“to”。

This book is an attempt \_\_\_\_\_ English and recognize how it is used.

A) helping you to use      B) helping you use

C) to help you use      D) help you to use

C)为正确答案。

I advise them to withdraw \_\_\_\_.

A) so as to get not involved

B) so as not to get involved

C) so that not to get involved

D)as not to get involved

B)为正确答案。一般情况下，不定式符号“to”和动词不应分开，其否定式应将“not”或“never”放在不定式之前。又如：Mother told me never to tell a lie.

Having missed that last bus, Peter had no alternative \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi home though he did not like the idea.

A)to but take      B)to take but

C)take to but      D)but to take

D)为正确答案。译文：“由于未赶上末班公共汽车，彼得只好乘出租车回家，尽管他不喜欢这样做。”连词“but”在表示“只有怎样做时”，后面通常跟不定式，而前面会出现“not”、“no”等否定词，试比较（凡句子谓语为“have”者，“but”后应加“to”，否则要省略）：

I had no choice but to stay in bed.（我别无选择，只好卧床休息。）

We cannot choose but hear.（我不得不听。）/ I can do nothing but go.（我只好去。）

Last night I did nothing but prepare my lessons.（昨晚除准备功课外我什么也未做。）

I have no objection \_\_\_\_\_ the evening with them.

A)to spend                      B)to spending

C)to have spent              D)to have to spend

B 为正确答案。本题中的“to”为介词，而非不定式符号，故应在后边接动名词。下面是大纲中所列短语中的“to”为介词：(be)contrary to（与...相反），object(objection)to（反对），with a view to（为...起见）(be)opposed to（反对），in contrast to（与...成对比），be used to（习惯于），be exposed to, be dedicated to（致力于），resort to（诉诸于），as to（关于），be accustomed to（习惯于），be devoted to（献身于），be committed to（委身于），react to（对...反应），with regard to（关于），look forward to（期待），contribute to（贡献）等。

#### 第四节 练习试题

1. Anesthetics are used \_\_\_\_\_ insensitivity to pain during surgical operations.

A)the cause      B)to cause

C)cause of      D)causing

2. \_\_\_\_\_ any aspect of society the sociologist must determine the laws influencing human behaviour in social contexts.

A)Explain                      B)To explain

C)One explains      D)The explanation of

3. The workers waited patiently \_\_\_\_\_.

A)that the ship is arrived

B)that the ship should arrive

C)for the ship to be arriving

- D)for the ship to arrive
- 4.\_\_\_\_\_ the silkworm produces a fluid internally and thenforces it out through tiny holes in its body.  
 A)It makes silk and      B)Making silk  
 C)To make silk      D)Silk is made by
- 5.\_\_\_\_\_ bricks, workers press clay into blocks and bake them to the requisite hardness in a kiln(窑).  
 A)Being made      B)The making of  
 C)To make      D)Made
- 6.The Cubists were concerned with how\_\_\_\_\_a given subject from different points of view simultaneously.  
 A)represented      B)do they represent  
 C)to represent      D)representing
- 7.No one expected \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)the old man to disappear  
 B)the old man disappearing  
 C)to disappear the old man  
 D)disappearing the old man
- 8.The building is said\_\_\_\_\_ in a fire two years ago.  
 A)to be destroyed      B)to destroy  
 C)to have been destroyed      D)to be destroyed
- 9.I remember \_\_\_\_\_ the door before I went to bed.  
 A)locking      B)to lock  
 C)to have locked      D)being locking
- 10.I need that book badly. If you go to the bookshop this afternoon, please remember\_\_\_a copy for me.  
 A)buying      B)to buy  
 C)to have bought      D)being bought
- 11.The members of the delegation were glad\_\_\_\_\_ longer than originally planned.  
 A)to be staying      B)staying  
 C)to have stayed      D)if they stayed
- 12.Social reformer Jane Smith\_\_\_\_\_ a prominent fole in the foundation of the National Progressive party.  
 A)playing      B)who played  
 C)played      D)to play
- 13.The children were surprised when the teacher had them\_\_\_\_\_their books unexpectedly.  
 A)closed      D)to close  
 C)closing      D)close
- 14.The bank is reported in the local newspaper\_\_\_\_\_ in broad daylight yesterday.  
 A) to be robbed      B)robbed  
 C)to have been robbed      D)having been robbed

15. Byron is said \_\_\_\_\_ on vinegar and potatoes.  
A) to be living      B) live  
C) to have lived      D) to living
16. Would you \_\_\_\_\_ to give me a helping hand when I move to the new house?  
A) be so kind      B) be kind as  
C) be so kind as      D) be kind
17. After twenty years abroad, William came back only \_\_\_\_\_ his hometown severely damaged in an earthquake.  
A) to find      B) finding  
C) to have found      D) to be finding
18. \_\_\_\_\_ only five minutes to finish the job.  
A) I took myself      B) It required me  
C) It took me      D) It needed me
19. Where should I send my application? The Personnel Office is the place \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) to send it      B) sent it to  
C) to send it to      D) for sending it
20. Although we had told them not to keep us waiting, they made no \_\_\_\_\_ to speed up deliveries.  
A) trial      B) attempt  
C) action      D) progress
21. To tell you the truth, I really don't know how \_\_\_\_\_ deal with a man like him.  
A) can I      B) well  
C) to      D) much
22. The Vikings are believed \_\_\_\_\_ America.  
A) to have discovered      B) in discovering  
C) to discover      D) to have been discovered
23. Here we found little snow, as most of it seemed \_\_\_\_\_ blown off the mountain.  
A) to have been      B) to be  
C) that it was      D) that it had been
24. Did you intend us \_\_\_\_\_ the new method?  
A) to use      B) using  
C) our having used      D) the using of
25. He seemed not \_\_\_\_\_ what she really meant.  
A) to have grasped      B) grasping  
C) to be grasping      D) grasp
26. The teacher encouraged \_\_\_\_\_ good compositions.  
A) us write      B) us writing  
C) us to write      D) our writing
27. Please remember \_\_\_\_\_ lights on in the future.  
A) don't leave      B) not to leave

- C)not leaving      D)don't to leave
- 28.Although the lecture had laready been on for five minutes, I still was not able to find a chair\_\_\_\_\_.
- A) to sit      B)for to sit on  
C)to sit on      D)for sitting
- 29.Gloves have been worn since preistoric times for protection, for ornamentation, \_\_\_\_\_ social status.
- A)and as an indication of      B)indicating  
C)for they indicate      D)to indicate and
- 30.The students were to\_\_\_\_\_ at the auditorium before 1:30pm, but the lecture was cancelled at the last minute.
- A)having telephoned      B)have telephoned  
C)has telephoned      D)telephoning
- 31.He was to\_\_\_\_\_the new ambassador, but he fell ill.
- A)having telephoned      B)have telephoned  
C)has telephoned      D)telephoning
- 32.For twelve years, Spanish censorship did not allow Lorca's name\_\_\_\_\_ or his works\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)to mention; to be published  
B)to be mentioned; to publish  
C)being mentioned;being published  
D)to be mentioned; to be published
- 33.He ordered the room\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)to sweep      B)sweeping  
C)to be swept      D)be sweeping
- 34.The scientists working on the atom bomb didn't expect it \_\_\_\_\_.
- A)using      B) to use  
C)being      D) to be used
- 35."There is something wrong with the table." "Yes, I can \_\_\_\_\_."
- A)feel it that it's moving      B)touch its moves  
C)touch it moving      D)feel it moving
- 36.On his way back home, he found his wallet \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) to miss      B) missing  
C) miss      D) missed
37. They did nothing else than \_\_\_\_\_
- A) laughed      B) laugh  
C) laughing      D) having laughed
38. "I thought John was going to join the Air Force." "Didn't you hear he failed \_\_\_\_\_ the physical examination?"
- A) passing      B) in passing  
C) to pass      D) to have passed
39. There was no reason \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting yesterday.

- A) for your not attending      B) for your not to attend  
C) for you not attend      D) for you to not attend

40. There is no \_\_\_\_\_ what may happen.

- A) to know      B) knowing  
C) know      D) known

- |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. B)  | 2. B)  | 3. D)  | 4. C)  | 5. C)  | 6. C)  |
| 7. A)  | 13. D) | 19. C) | 25. A) | 31. B) | 36. B) |
| 8. C)  | 14. C) | 20. B) | 26. C) | 32. D) | 37. B) |
| 9. A)  | 15. C) | 21. C) | 27. B) | 33. C) | 38. C) |
| 10. B) | 16. C) | 22. A) | 28. C) | 34. D) | 39. A) |
| 11. C) | 17. A) | 23. A) | 29. A) | 35. D) | 40. B) |
| 12. C) | 18. C) | 24. A) | 30. B) |        |        |



## 第二章 -ING 结构形式

### 第一节 概 述

-ING 形式是指由动词原形+ing 构成的、具有完成时和被动态的一种非谓语动词形式。它有下列形式：

	主动形式	被动形式
一般式	doing	being done
完成式	having done	having been done

我们这里所说的-ING 形式包括-ING 分词和-ING 动名词。这两种-ING 结构形式所表示的动作与其逻辑主语是主动（而不是被动）的主谓关系。就其语法功能而言，它可以作主语、表语、宾语、宾语补语、状语和定语。

### 第二节 -ING 结构的用法

#### 一、作主语

1. Taking part in the entrance exam of postgraduate school was the turning point of my life.  
Talking with him was a kind of pleasure.  
Being absent from the creation, when the clay begins to breathe.
2. It's waste of time arguing with the gossip about the accident.  
It's interesting having traveled to Beidaihe this time.  
It's glorious getting involved in working out the plan.  
involved in working out the plan. (分词短语作 in 的宾语。)

说明：从 2 中我们可以看出这种结构通常适用于名词和形容词。但不适用于像 important, essential, necessary 等形容词，这些词后面一般要跟动词不定式。我们不能说 It's quite necessary taking part in the negotiation. 应改作 It's quite necessary to take part in the negotiation.

#### 二、作表语的-ING 形式

Seeing is believing  
His aim is learning to play the piano  
he has learned to practice

#### 三、作主语和表语的-ING 动名词与动词不定式的区别

一般来说，-ING 形式表示抽象的动作，而不定式则表示某次具体动作，特别是将来的动作。请看下边-ING 形式与不定式的比较：

1. Reading or writing too long without rest is harmful to the health.	Don't work too hard.It's no good to your health for you to read too long without rest.
2. Be sure to set aside enough time to complete your normal reading and work assignments.	Do you know how to improve your grades without having to spend more time studying?
3. Getting reading materials for graduate entrance exam in the remote areas is very difficult.	It is essential for you to go over all the reference books before the exam.
4. Their job is producing parts of the machine.	To study is our present main task in this period.

从上述可以看出：在多数情况下，-ING 动名词作主语不与特定的动作执行者联系在一起，而不定式作主语经常与特定的动作执行者联系在一起。

#### 四、-ING 动名词的逻辑主语

-ING 动名词除了具有动词的特点以外，它还有名词的特点，即可以加物主代词和名词的属格来表示其逻辑主语。如：

Are you surprised at my ~~v i s i t i n g~~ ~~s o n~~ ~~b r i n g i n g~~ ~~s t r a n g e~~ prospects to the local people.

That ~~s u p e r p o w e r~~ 's ~~r e c e n t~~ ~~i n t e r f e r i n g~~ ~~i n~~ ~~a f f a i r s~~ great disturbance in that area.

这种前面带有代词或名词的-ING 结构可以作主语、表语、宾语以及介词的宾语。

#### 五、-ING 形式作动词宾语

可以跟-ING 形式作宾语的动词有三类：

一类动词后边作宾语的非限定性动词只能是-ING 形式，如：

acknowledge, advocate, anticipate, appreciate, avoid, admit, advise, can't help, celebrate, consider, contemplate, defer, delay, deny, dislike, endure, enjoy, escape, excuse, fancy, favor, finish, forgive, give up, imagine, include, keep on, justify, mention, mind (在乎), miss, pardon, postpone, practise, prohibit, put off, quit, recall, require, resist, resume, risk, suggest, tolerate.

如：He ~~a d m i t t e d~~ ~~h a t i n g~~ ~~t h e~~ ~~i m p r o p e r~~ ~~b e h a v i o r~~ ~~o f~~ ~~h i s~~ ~~s o n~~ ~~o f~~ ~~h a v i n g~~ ~~g i v e n~~ ~~u p~~ ~~s m o k i n g~~

另一类动词后边作宾语的非限定性动词可以是-ING 形式的动名词，也可以是动词不定式，如：attempt, begin, can't bear, can't afford, cease, consider, continue, deserve, forget, go on, hate, intend, like, love, neglect, omit, plan, prefer, propose, regret, remember, start, stop, try。但上述有些动词后接-ING 和不定式时在用法上有一定的区别：

1.在 would love, /like, /prefer, /hate 等词后如果表示一种倾向或

习惯性的动作，一般用-ING 形式，如果表示特定的或具体的某次动作，则要用不定式。如：I like playing football./I would like to play football this afternoon.

2. 当谓语动词是进行时的时候，用不定式(但 consider 要跟由连接副词或代词引起的不定式短语)：It's beginning to snow considering how to go (where to go, what to go).
3. 在 remember, forget 等词后，如果跟-ING 形式，表示-ING 形式的动作发生在主谓语之前；如果跟不定式则表示不定式的动作发生在主谓语动词之后。如：I remember telling him that (告诉发生在“记得”之前)/He remembered to tell her that she had come back. (“记得”发生在“告诉”之前)/I'm sorry I forgot to give you the message. (主语动词表示的动作“忘记”发生在不定式表示的动作“给带口信”之前)/Why! I have such a bad memory. I forgot giving the message last night. (-ING 形式表示的动作“给带口信”发生在主谓语动词表示的动作“忘记”之前)
4. stop, go on 和 leave off 之后跟接动词不定式和-ING 形式所表达的意义有所不同。如：
  - { They stopped (talking) to work. (停下[其他动作]来工作)
  - { They stopped working. (停下工作[来干其他动作])
  - { Workers went on discussing the problem. (工人继续讨论这一问题)
  - { Workers went on to discuss the problem. (工人们停下来其他事，继续讨论这一问题)
  - { He left off writing. (他停下写作[去干其他事])
  - { He left off to write. (他停下其他事来写作)

另外，-ING 形式作宾语还有下一结构，即用 it 代表-ING 形式，而把-ING 形式短语放到句子的后边去。如：

I consider it worthwhile spending ten thousand yuan.

Marry found it marvellous having a journey with him.

## 六、-ING 结构形式作介词的宾语

几乎所有介词，不管是单个介词还是介词词组，不管它们是谓语动词的组成部分与否，都能用-ING 结构形式的动名词作其宾语。所以，-ING 结构形式作介词宾语的时候最多。

He is interested in playing tennis./Only by working hard can you be admitted to the university as a postgraduate./They are amazed at the child's intelligence./After leaving his comfortable home, he went to the mountain area to get training./He has a hoarse (发哑的) throat by shouting.

-ING 结构形式一般作介词短语的宾语，介词短语主要有以下搭配关系：

### 1. 动词+介词+-ING

They insisted on immediately after the final exam./He went on speaking without noticing his expression.

2. 动词+名词或代词+介词+-ING 如: They charged him for spitting around. / Excuse me for being late. / They persuaded John on trying the experiment.
3. 名词+介词+-ING 如: He got a chance of studying in the U.S.A. / None of them has any idea of helping overcome the psychological obstacles. / Not all of teachers can have the opportunity of going abroad in the near future.
4. 动词+副词+介词+-ING 如: I look forward soon to her coming.
5. 形容词(具有形容词性质的-ed分词)+介词+-ING 如: I am proud of having such a son. / He is greatly honored of shaking hands with the President. / It's impossible for him to finish the task in so short a time.
6. 在表示征询意见的 "How about...?", "What...about?" How about going? / What about having a concert?

以上几种类型常见的介词短语有: accuse...of, aim at, approve of, apart from, apology for, astonish at, be afraid of..., be angry about, be capable of..., be certain of, be confident of, be engaged in..., be fond of..., be good at, be interested in..., believe in, be pleased about, be responsible for, be sick of..., be tired of..., be (get) used to..., chance of, congratulate... on, depend on, devote...to, dream of, excuse for, experience in, feel like, for fear of, for the purpose of, habit of, hear of, hope of, honor of, idea of, importance of, in case of, intention of, in the event of, keep...from, look forward to, means of, method of, necessity of, objection to, opportunity of, persist in, plan for, possibility of, prevent from, process of, right of, set about, skill in, spend...in, stop...from, succeed in, surprise at, thank...for, think of, with a view to, with the object of, way of, worry about.

## 七、-ING 结构形式作宾语补足语

有几类动词带宾语可以接-ING 形式作宾语补足语

1. 表示感觉和心理状态的动词, 如 hear, feel, find, listen to, look at, notice, observe, see, smell, watch.

I heard him to whistle. / He felt someone touching his shoulder. / We found the baby drinking milk. / She watched her fiancé disappearing far away.

注意: see, hear, feel, watch, notice 等动词后, 除了能跟-ING 形式以外, 还能跟动词不定式(不带 to)。这两者是有区别的: 用-ING 形式时, 表示动作正在发生, 即处于发生的过程中, 还没有结束(1)、(3), 或表示一次动作(5); 用不定式时表示动作发生了, 即动作全部过程结束了(2)、(4), 或表示反复动作(6)。

(1) I saw him coming out. (Just as he came out to use the house, I saw him.)

(2) I saw him come out and drive away by this use

motorcar. (=He came out of the house and drove away by his motorcar. I saw all this.)

(3) —I hear somebody shouting outside.

(4) —Yes, I heard him shout to catch the thief. times

(5) I heard him knock at the door

(6) We heard the door slamming

2. 表示“致使”等意义的动词，如：catch, have, get, keep, leave, set.

I am sorry to have kept you waiting long. / What you must have told left me that you experienced much when you were young.

## 八、-ING 结构形式作状语

-ING 结构形式作状语表示主语在进行一动作的 cd\w

同时所进行的另一动作，它对谓语动词起加以修饰或陪衬的作用：She sat there deeply t. / They walked side by side, laughing and shouting. / Speaking I began my lecture.

在使用这种用法时，要注意：-ING 形式所表示的动作一定是主语所发出的，也就是说 -ING 形式的逻辑主语一定是主句的主语。试比较下列句子：

- { Getting into the room, I smelled a terrible smell.  
(getting 是 I 的动作)
- { Getting into the room, it gave a terrible smell. (错误)
- { Walking through the forest, we found many strange animals.  
(walking 是 we 发出的)
- { Walking through the forest, a lot of animals are there.  
(错误)
- { Looking out of the window of our hotel room, we saw zigzag mountains.  
(Looking 的使动者是 we)
- { Looking out of the window of our hotel room, there were zigzag mountains. (错误)

用 -ING 结构形式作状语表示时间、原因、条件、让步、结果和伴随情况。

1. 表示时间：一般放在句首，有时可放在句中。Coming into the room I found him sobbing. (=When I came into the room, I found him sobbing. 在这里 coming 这一 -ING 形式动作发生时，紧接着(几乎是同时)发生了谓语动作，有“一...就”的意思。)/ Getting on the platform, I saw the train coming. / Pulling his body in, he drove away.

如果 -ING 形式所表示的动作与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生，-ING 形式前可以加 when, while 等连词，可放在句首或句末：When arriving, he found the door opened. / He listened to the music radio while reading.

-ING 形式表示时间时，如果表示与谓

语动词同时或几乎同时发生，就用其一般式；但如果-ING 形式表示的动作发生在谓语之前，那么-ING 形式应该用其完成形式（而且这种-ING 形式主要用于状语中）：

Hav i n g b e e n t h e r e t h r e e t i m e s , s h e d o e s n ' t w a n t t o t r a v e l t o B e i d a i h e o n t h i s h o l i d a y . / H a v i n g e x p e r i e n c e d s h e i s s o s o p h i s t i c a t e d . / T h e d e l e g a t e , h a v i n g t r a v e l e d b e g a n t h e i r n e g o t i a t i o n i m m e d i a t e l y a f t e r t h e y a r r i v e d a t t h e h o t e l f r o m t h e a i r p o r t . / T h e s t u d e n t s s c a t t e r e d t o c o l l e c t t h e i r t h i n g s , h a v i n g f i n i s h e d t h e i r P h y s i c a l E d u c a t i o n .

2. 表示原因：N o t h a v i n g h a d a n y l e t t e r f r o m M a r r y , M a r r y w a s w o r r i e d . (=Marry was worried because she did not have any letter from Tom.) / H a v i n g g o t a h e a d a c h e , I d i d n ' t c o m e t o t h e c o n c e r t . (Because I got a headache, I didn't come to the concert.) / M o s t o f t h e p e o p l e , b e i n g s o t i r e d , c o u l d n o t g o t o s l e e p t h a t n i g h t a f t e r t h e p a r t y . / S h e w a n d e r e d a l o n g t h e s t r e e t , n o t k n o w i n g w h e r e t o g o .
3. 表示条件，一般放在句首：K n o w i n g a n y t h i n g a b o u t i t , I w i l l t e l l y o u a l l . (=If I know anything about it, I will tell you all.) / W o r k i n g d i l i g e n t l y , y o u w i l l p a s s t h e e n - t r a n c e e x a m . (If you work diligently, you will pass the entrance exam.)
4. 表示让步：H a v i n g g r e a t d i f f i c u l t i e s , t h e y f i n i s h e d t h e t a s k a h e a d o f t i m e . / B u y i n g a l o t o f r e f e r e n c e b o o k s f o r h i m , h e f a i l e d i n a i m b e c a u s e o f t h e l e a r n i n g m e t h o d .

表示让步的-ING 形式常常由 although/though, even if/though, unless 等连词引入，一般放在句首：A l t h o u g h r e p e a t i n g h i s w o r d s m a n y t i m e s , t h e t e a c h e r c o u l d n o t m a k e h i s s t u d e n t s u n d e r s t a n d t h e c o n c r e t e c o n c e p t o f p h i l o s o p h y . / E v e n i f c o m i n g b y t a x i , I w i l l a r r i v e i n a t l e a s t 45 m i n u t e s .

5. 表示结果 He w o r k e d d a y a n d n i g h t , m a k i n g h i m s e l f n e a r - s i g h t e d . / N o t m a k i n g w h a t h e m e a n t m i s u n d e r s t o o d , h e a d j u s t e d h i s t o n e s t o u n d e r l i n e h i s m e a n i n g . 置于句末，前面可加 so, thereby, thus, hence 等副词：T h e w o r k e r s w o r k e d 14 h o u r s a d a y , t h u s p r o d u c i n g p r o d u c t s t h r e e t i m e s a s t h e y d i d l a s t m o n t h . / H e w i s h e d t o t r a v e l a l l o v e r t h e w o r l d , t h e r e b y s t u d y i n g c u s t o m s o f o t h e r c o u n t r i e s .

需要说明的是：-ING 形式作状语时，它逻辑上的主语一般必须与句子的主语一致。但也有下述情况：-ING 分词结构有自己的主语，这个主语一般由做主语的名词或代词（即代词的主格）来表示，放在-ING 前边，与-ING 分词构成逻辑上的主谓关系。这种结构与主句不发生句法上的联系，叫做独立结构。在很多情况下它都相当于各种形式的状语，表示一种伴随的动作或情况：W e w e n t t o t h e W o r l d P a r k , X i a o W a n g a c t i n g a s g u i d e f o r h e h a d b e e n t h e r e s e v e r a l t i m e s . / T h e s t o r y e x c i t i n g , w e w e r e a l l a b s o r b e d i n i t t o l d b y

the old man./The rain being over, the peasants immediately went to the field to work./Weather permitting, we will go to Summer Palace tomorrow.

#### 九、-ING 形式作定语：

Jacob Lawrence executed many cycles of paintings \_\_\_\_\_ significant social themes.

A) expressed B) expressing

C) express D) expression of

B) 为正确答案。本句空白处缺能起定语作用的词，用来修饰前面的名词 paintings。C) 和 D) 明显不对。剩下 A) 和 B) 两种可能性。由于 paintings 本身能够主动表达“有意义的社会主题”(significant social themes)，故不应用 -ED 分词 expressed，再者 -ED 分词 expressed 亦不应再带宾语“themes”，故只有 B) expressing 正确。expressing...themes”是 -ING 分词短语作定语修饰 paintings，其作用相当于一个定语从句，即“which expressed...themes”。

The name Nebraska comes from the Oto Indian word "nebrathka", \_\_\_\_\_ flat water.

A) to mean B) meaning

C) it means D) by meaning

B) 为正确答案。本句空白后面的成分为 -ING 分词短语，相当于“which means...”。C) 表面上正确，但英语中没有连接词连接的两个分句是不能成立的，但我们可以说“which means”，用“which”指代“nebrathka”。但这样就变成非限定性定语从句了。

Operation PUSH, founded in 1971 by the Reverend Jesse Jackson, provides educational assistance to children \_\_\_\_\_ in economically depressed communities.

A) live B) living

C) lives D) lived

B) 为正确答案。本句中已出现了谓语动词 provides，所以空白处应为 -ING 分词形式 living，“living in...communities”是分词短语修饰 children。

Tom's teacher warned him against working too hard  
His hobby is collecting stamps

-ING 动名词是由动词转化而来，和普通名词一样，可作主语、宾语、介词宾语和补语。与名词所不同的是，动名词仍保留动词特征，所以它后面可以带自己的宾语和副词修饰语。

He is ashamed of being poor

She is proud of his father's being rich

He insisted on paying it (他坚持要付钱。y)

He insisted on my paying it. (他坚持要我付钱。y)

-ING 动名词本身具有逻辑上的主语。如果动名词所表述的事属于一般性的事件、逻辑主语已和句子主语一致、或逻辑主语为无生命的事物时，那么

其逻辑主语就可省略。但是，当其逻辑主语和句子主语不致时，就要用所有格表明其逻辑主语。

On ~~being given to make a business tour abroad~~, he gladly accepted it.

The car shows no sign of ~~having been~~ it ~~looks like a new~~ one.  
I am not used to ~~being treated~~ like that

-ING 动名词可用“being+ED 分词”的形式表示被动语态。

如果动名词所表示的动作先于句子谓语发生，就要用“having+-ED 分词”表示完成时，或“having been+-ED 分词”表示完成时的被动态。如果不用完成时不会引起语意上的误解时，可以用一般时代替完成时，如：I remember seeing (having seen) you before.

### 第三节 实例与分析

- 1) Never attempting to be a literary stylist, \_\_\_\_\_ in her novels.  
A) Alice Duer Miller considered the plot the most important element  
B) The most important element considered to be the plot by Alice Duer Miller  
C) considering the plot the most important element of Alice Duer Miller  
D) Alice Duer Miller's plot, considered the most important element  
A)为正确答案。-ING 分词 attempting (试图)的逻辑主语一定是人，因为只有人才能“试图”做事，故答案中只有 A)正确，Alice Duer Miller 即是句子的主语，也是分词短语的逻辑主语。
- 2) The guests said that they wouldn't mind \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) to have a little light music  
B) having a little light music  
C) if they have a little light music  
D) that they have a little light music  
B)为正确答案。英语中有些动词需要-ING 动名词作其宾语，这些动词包括... (见本章第二节的“五”)
- 3) The story was so funny that she couldn't help \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) laughing B) but to laugh  
C) to laugh D) not to laugh  
A)为正确答案。

在下列惯用语中，应使用-ING 动名词：

1. can't help +-ING 形式 (禁不住) =can't but+V(can't help laughing=can't but laugh)
2. There is no+-ING 形式 (不可能)  
There is no getting along with him.(无法和他相处。)



3. It (There) is no use (good)+-ING 形式 (无用) = It is of no use (good) to+V  
There (It) is no use advising him to give up smoking. (劝他戒烟是徒劳的。)
4. be worth+-ING 形式 (值得)
5. be busy+-ING 形式 (忙于)
6. feel like+-ING 形式 (想)  
I don't feel like eating just now. (我现在不想吃。)
7. What (How) about+-ING 形式? (...如何?)  
How (What) about having a short break now? (此刻稍休息一下如何?)
8. What do you say to+-ING 形式? (...怎么样?)  
What do you say to joining us for dinner? (和我们一起进餐, 你看怎么样?)
9. spend+时间+(in)+-ING 形式  
Jane spent several days (in) preparing for the final exams. (简花了好几天时间准备期末考试。)

$$10. \text{ have+} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{difficulty (困难)} \\ \text{trouble (麻烦)} \\ \text{a problem (问题)} \\ \text{a good (hard) time} \\ \text{(快乐/艰苦时刻)} \\ \text{fun (快乐)} \end{array} \right\} + (in) + -ING \text{ 形式}$$

They have difficulty (in) communicating with each other.  
(他们彼此间沟通有困难。)

#### 第四节 练习度题

1. I shall never forget \_\_\_\_\_ the late Premier Zhou during his inspection of our factory.  
A) to meet B) to have met  
C) meeting D) having been met by
2. We can't understand why he avoided \_\_\_\_\_ to us.  
A) to speak B) speech  
C) having spoken D) speaking
3. That criminal wore dark glasses to avoid \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) being recognized B) to be recognized  
C) recognizing D) to recognize
4. Our modern civilization must not be thought of as \_\_\_\_\_ in a short period of time.

- A) being created                      B) to have been created  
C) having been created              D) to be created
5. I know it isn't important but I can't help \_\_\_\_\_ about it.  
A) but to think              B) thinking  
C) think                      D) to think
6. When Jane fell off the bike, the other children \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) were not able to help laughter  
B) could not help but laughing  
C) could not help laughing  
D) could not help to laugh
7. He forgot about \_\_\_\_\_ him to join us for dinner.  
A) my asking              B) me to ask  
C) I asking              D) me asking
8. Upon being questioned he denied \_\_\_\_\_ the article.  
A) writing                      B) to write  
C) having written              D) to be prepared
9. There is no use \_\_\_\_\_ over spilt milk.  
A) of being crying              B) crying  
C) to cry                      D) if you will cry
10. I came late and missed \_\_\_\_\_ Jack winning.  
A) to see              B) seeing  
C) see                      D) seen
11. I don't think my father will fancy \_\_\_\_\_ an idle life like that.  
A) living                      B) to live  
C) being lived              D) to have lived
12. "I see our boss coming down the hall."  
"Then we'd better quit \_\_\_\_\_ and get down to business."  
A) talking                      B) to talk  
C) from talking              D) having talk
13. Solids, liquids, and gases at rest all have a tendency to resist \_\_\_\_\_ in motion.  
A) setting                      B) to set  
C) being set                      D) to be set
14. I suggest \_\_\_\_\_ on an excursion this Sunday.  
A) we are going              B) to go  
C) us going                      D) our going
15. News of success keeps \_\_\_\_\_ in.  
A) pouring                      B) to pour  
C) poured                      D) to be pouring
16. I regret \_\_\_\_\_ hard at school.  
A) not to have worked              B) not having worked  
C) not have worked                      D) having not worked
17. Revolution means \_\_\_\_\_ the productive forces.

- A) to liberate      B) to have liberated  
C) liberating      D) having been liberated
18. How about \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies tonight?  
A) going      B) if go  
C) to go      D) if we go
19. \_\_\_\_\_ by transforming the blame to others is often called scapegoating.  
A) Eliminate problems      B) The eliminated problems  
C) Eliminating problems      D) Problems are eliminated
20. By taking the back way he escaped \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) to be seen      B) have been seen  
C) seeing      D) being seen
21. "You've been taking a lot of nice photographs." "Thanks. I'm considering \_\_\_\_\_ a professional photographer."  
A) becoming      B) about become  
C) to become      D) over becoming
22. The school cannot tolerate \_\_\_\_\_ on exams.  
A) cheating      B) to cheat  
C) be cheated      D) being cheated
23. I must say I don't like to hear you \_\_\_\_\_ like that.  
A) talking      B) to talk  
C) have to talk      D) talked
24. "What's wrong with Henry?" "He needs \_\_\_\_\_. "  
A) cheer up      B) to be cheer up  
C) cheering up      D) to cheered up
25. "Where are the children?" "I saw \_\_\_\_\_ in the yard."  
A) them to play      B) them played  
C) them playing      D) to them playing

### 练习试题答案

- |      |       |       |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. C  | 11. A | 16. B | 21. A |
| 2. D | 7. A  | 12. A | 17. C | 22. A |
| 3. A | 8. C  | 13. C | 18. A | 23. A |
| 4. C | 9. B  | 14. D | 19. C | 24. C |
| 5. B | 10. B | 15. A | 20. D | 25. C |

### 第三章 -ED 分词形式及用法

#### 第一节 概 述

-ED 分词形式即动词加-ed 所构成的我们平常所说的动词过去分词。语法功能上，它在句子中所能担任的成分基本上与-ING 形式相同。但在意义上两者有差别：-ING 形式表示主动的意义，而-ED 分词形式则表示被动的意义；-ING 形式表示一般性的或正在进行的动作，而-ED 形式则表示已经完成和被动的动作。在表现形式上，-ING 分词有“一般式”和“完成式”与“主动式”和“被动式”之分；而-ED 分词只有一种形式，在意义上，一般表示被动的意义，但形容词化了的-ED 分词或不及物动词的-ED 分词也可表示主动。

但少数几个动词的-ED 分词形式，有两种形式而且在意义上有差别，如：bear 有-ED 分词 born 和 borne 之分，前者只用于“出生”的意义，而后者用于“负担”，“负荷”，“承担”和“传送”之意。如：

I was born in 1966.

His borne responsibility to the whole workers of the factory is really great.

再如：hang 的-ED 形式也有两种，一是 hung，另一形式是 hanged，前者表示“悬挂”，后者表示“吊死，绞死”。strike 的-ED 形式也有两种：struck 和 stricken，前者有“打击”“冲击”“感动”等意，而 stricken 只用作形容词，表示“受折磨”之意。

来自及物动词的-ED 分词所表示的是被动意义；来自不及物动词的-ED 分词则可表示主动和完成的意义；fallen leaves (落叶)，a full-blown rose (盛开的玫瑰)，escaped prisoners (逃犯)，the exploded bomb, her deceased husband, the retired workers, the vanished jewels, the newly arrived visitors, the returned students, the risen sun.

#### 第二节 -ED 分词的形式和用法

##### 一、-ED 形式作表语

The glass is broken. / He was amused. / She seemed quite disappointed. / She was astonished. / He is greatly disappointed by her refusal of inviting her to the party. / The window remains locked. / That piece of land lay deserted. / The boy stood fascinated at the case in the shop, staring at the toy robot.

作表语的-ED 分词部分来自及物动词。而且，不是所有的-ED 分词都能作表语，常见的有：accomplished, amazed, amused, astonished, broken, closed, completed, complicated, confined, confused, connected, covered, crowded, decided, deserted, devoted, discouraged, distinguished, done, dressed, drunk, exhausted, excited, experienced, faded, finished, frightened, hurt, illustrated, inexperienced, injured, interested, known, learned, loaded, lost, married, offended, painted, paved, pleased, posted,

puzzled, qualified, recovered, reserved, satisfied, saved, shut, sent, surprised, surrounded, tired, unexpected, unprepared, unqualified, unknown, upset, won, worried, wound-ed, 等。

## 二、作定语的-ED形式

They have a u n i f a c i d y . / The b r o g l e s s has been thrown away.  
/ The u n e x p e n t o e d here again without invitation. / The  
name of that piece of music is called "the U n f i n S y s p h o e d .

## 三、用作状语的-ED分词

这样的分词通常来自不及物动词。-ED 分词结构作用状语时,跟-ING 形式作状语时一样,修饰主句的谓语动词,意义上相当于状语从句,表示时间,条件,原因,伴随状况等。一般说来,这种结构的逻辑主语就是主句的主语。

1.表示时间: B u i i n 1778, the building is one of the oldest ones in that area. / Last year, t h e w o r k , h e i w e n t t o D a t o d g about a month for a holiday.

2.表示条件: All things considered, Xiao Han's graduation thesis is of greater value than his. (全面考虑起来,小韩的毕业论文比他的要更有价值。)/ C o o , l s e t a m becomes water. / H e a , t e d iron turns into liquid. / G i v e n b e a t n t d e i r , t e v e r y s student in this school could go to college. / C o m p a r e d , w i t h y o u we have much room to improve. / U n i t e d w o e d e i d e d w e m a d l . (团结则存,分裂则亡。)/ A n y s u s p i c i o u s c h a r a c t e r d w i l l b e s o o n r e p o r t e d (发现可疑人物,马上报告司令部。)

3.表示原因: C a u s e d m u c h , s s b e b e c a m e q u i t t e d i s p i r i t e d recently. (她最近受了很多苦,变得萎靡不振)/ D e p r e s s e d went to her fiancé (男朋友). / B o r n i n t o a w e a l t h y f a the child received a good education. / E x h a u s t e d i n t h e h a w o , r h e s l e p t 18 hours without having any food.

4.表示伴随状况: D e l i g h t e d w i t h h i , s h e l e e a t e d d i n g a b i l i him as their general manager. / E n c o u r a g e d b y t h e s u c c w r i t i n g , t h e d e c i d e d t o c o n t i n u e c o m p o s i n g a n o t h e r o n e .

这种-ED 分词短语作状语,如果本短语有自己的逻辑主语(即独立结构)这时短语表示的动作不一定与句子主语保持一致。Her eyes filled with tears, she did not notice his coming.

## 第三节 实例与分析

1) Encouraged by his mother, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) art was studied in Florence by John Singer Sargent
- B) Florence was where John Singer Sargent studied art
- C) the study of art in Florence by John Singer Sargent
- D) John Singer Sargent studied art in Florence.

D)为正确答案。四个选项中,只有D)的主语为“John Singer Sargent”

(人名),而只有人才能被“encouraged”(鼓舞),也就是说,只有D)中的主语能充当空白前-ED分词短语的逻辑主语。

- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ in all parts of the state, pines are the most common trees in Georgia.

A) Found                      B) Finding them  
C) To find them              D) They are found

A)为正确答案。本句的主语为pines(松树),这样就排除了B)选项,因为-ING分词表主动,而“松树”不可能是“找”(find)这个动作的逻辑主语,即动作发出者。故只有A)“found”(被发现)的逻辑主语与“pines”一致,应选A)。

- 3) Peter Joseph Wilhelm Debye developed a method for bringing substances to the lowest temperatures \_\_\_\_\_.

A) known to science              B) know science  
C) knowing science              D) science is known

A)为正确答案。空白处成分相当于“which are known to science”, -ED分词短语修饰“temperatures”。注意本句不可选C),因为-ING分词表示主动,若把空白处理解为“which are knowing science”明显不合逻辑。

- 4) Some laws formalize long-accepted customs, while others impose norms \_\_\_\_\_ previously mandated by the populace.

A) not                      B) are not  
C) while do not              D) and they are not

A)为正确答案。本句是两个并列分句,表示转折(连词while意思是“而,但是”),空白前面的分句已主谓宾齐全,故B)、C)和D)都不正确。否定副词not与其后面的成分-ED分词短语“(previously) mandated...”,在本句中起定语作用修饰限定名词“norms”,相当于“which are not...”。

#### 第四节 练习试题

1. Considered one of the leading poets in America today, \_\_\_\_\_.

A) a number of books and plays have also been written by Sonia Sanchez  
B) Sonia Sanchez has also written a number of books and plays  
C) a number of Sonia Sanchez's books and plays have been written  
D) there have been a number of books and plays written by Sonia Sanchez

2. A cell \_\_\_\_\_ a single process is unipolar.

A) had      B) having      C) that      D) to have

3. The pearl is the noly gem \_\_\_\_\_ by a living creature.

A) creating      B) to create      C) is created      D) created

4. The University of California, \_\_\_\_\_ in 1868, is administered by a president and governed by a twenty-four-

A) founded                      B)has been founde  
C)to have been founded     D)was founded

5. Waves generally result from wind \_\_\_\_\_ on water.  
A)acted      B)to act      C)it acts      D)acting
6. \_\_\_\_\_ for her anthropological research, Margaret Mead also was involved with the World Federation for Mental Health.  
A)She is noted primarily      B)Noted primarily  
C)Primarily is noted      D) She primarily noted
7. Inaugurated a second time on March 4, 1901, \_\_\_\_\_ focused on domestic rather than foreign policies.  
A)William McKinley's new term looked forward to and  
B)the new term looked forward to William McKinley and  
C)looking forward to a new term was William McKinley  
D)William McKinley looked forward to a new term
8. Closed plane figures like the square or the equilateral triangle can be grouped into a class \_\_\_\_ polygons.  
A)called      B)to call      C)is called      D)call as
9. The production of tin ore in the United States is relatively insignificant, \_\_\_\_\_ less than one hundred tons annually.  
A)amounting to      B)in the amount  
C)amountsd to it      D)to the amount of
10. The University of Georgia, \_\_\_\_\_ in 1785, was the first state-supported university in the United States.  
A)chartered      B)was chartered  
C)it was chartered      D)to be chartered
11. \_\_\_\_\_ by the decision, the lawyer quickly left the court room.  
A)Angering      B)Having angered  
C) Being angry      D)Angered
12. In the 1850's Harriet Beecher Stowe's "Uncle Tom's Cabin" became the best-seller of the generation, \_\_\_\_\_ a host of imitators.  
A)inspiring      B)inspired      C)inspired by      D)to inspire
13. A tariff (关税) is customarily collected on goods \_\_\_\_\_ into a country.  
A) come      B)coming      C)came      D)have coming
14. Known for her caricatures (漫画) of the United States society, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) Peggy Brown wrote and illustrated books for children  
B) the writing and illustrating of books children by Peggy Brown  
C) children's books were written and illustrated by Peggy Brown  
D) Peggy Brown's writing and illustrating of children's books
15. Great changes \_\_\_\_\_ in the city, since the reform and opening

- to the outside world, and a lot of factories \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) have been taken place, have been set up  
 B) have taken place, have been set up  
 C) have taken place, have set up  
 D) were taken place, were set up
16. \_\_\_\_\_ of the burden of ice, the balloon climbed up and drifted to the South.  
 A) To be free      B) Freeing      C) To free      D) Freed
17. Being in no great hurry, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) we went the long route with scenery  
 B) the long, scenic route was our preference  
 C) we took the long, scenic route  
 D) our preference was taking the long, scenic route
18. After a long walk on a hot day, one often feels \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) exhaustive    B) exhausting    C) exhaust    D) exhausted
19. The squirrel was lucky that it just missed \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) catching    B) to be caught    C) being caught    D) to catch
20. With the guide \_\_\_\_\_ the way, we set out on foot into the dark night.  
 A) leading      B) leads      C) to lead      D) led
21. When the bell sounded, the boys rushed out of the class-room, each \_\_\_\_\_ a number of new books under his arm..  
 A) had carried    B) to carry    C) to be carried    D) carrying
22. The resistance \_\_\_\_\_ very high, the current in the circuit will be weak.  
 A) been      B) will be      C) is being      D) being
23. Most of the people \_\_\_\_\_ to the party were famous scientists.  
 A) invited    B) to invite    C) being invited    D) inviting
24. Darkness \_\_\_\_\_ in, the young people lingered (闲荡) on merrymaking.  
 A) sets      B) being set      C) setting      D) to set
25. The author gave a detailed description \_\_\_\_\_ on his personal observation of nature.  
 A) based      B) to base      C) to be based      D) basing
26. These students are quick at learning. We'll have them \_\_\_\_\_ in new methods.  
 A) train      B) training      C) trained      D) to train
27. I wonder if he could get it \_\_\_\_\_ before tomorrow.  
 A) do      B) doing      C) done      D) to do
28. \_\_\_\_\_ one task, we started on another one.  
 A) To complete      B) Having completed  
 C) To have completed      D) Being completed
29. The lecture \_\_\_\_\_, he left his seat so quietly that no



- one complained that his leaving disturbed the speaker.  
 A) began B) beginning C) having begun D) being beginning  
 30. \_\_\_\_ home at daybreak, he felt deadly tired.  
 A) Arrived B) To arrive C) Arriving D) Having been arriving  
 31. \_\_\_\_\_ by his work, he lay down on the bed to take a rest.  
 A) Exhausted B) Exhausting C) Having Exhausted D) To be exhausted  
 32. Ford tried dividing the labour, each worker \_\_\_\_ a separate task.  
 A) assigning B) having said C) being said D) saying  
 34. \_\_\_\_\_ to disturb his baby sister, he siptoed into the room.  
 A) Wishing not B) To wish not C) Not wished D) Not to wish  
 35. \_\_\_\_\_ several times, they need some encouragement.  
 A) Failed B) Having failed C) To fail D) To be failed

### 练习试题答案

- |      |       |       |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1.B) | 8.A)  | 15.A) | 22.D) | 29.C) |
| 2.B) | 9.A)  | 16.D) | 23.A) | 30.C) |
| 3.D) | 10.A) | 17.C) | 24.C) | 31.A) |
| 4.A) | 11.D) | 18.D) | 25.A) | 32.C) |
| 5.D) | 12.A) | 19.C) | 26.C) | 33.D) |
| 6.B) | 13.B) | 20.A) | 27.C) | 34.C) |
| 7.D) | 14.A) | 21.D) | 28.B) | 35.B) |

### 第五节 -ED 分词、-ING 形式和不定式三者间的关系

分词在语法功能上可以作为形容词使用,即可作前置定语修饰名词以及作主语和宾语的补足语。

-ING 分词强调进行和主动, -ED 分词则强调完成或被动。

Don't get your schedule changed; stay with us in this class.

Peter had his gas and electricity turned on when he moved into his new apartment last month.

It's quite obvious that Paul won't sell his business now that he has got it running so well.

During the final scene I noticed him wiping his eyes.

英语中还有几类动词要求分词作宾语补足语:

#### 1. “have+宾语+-ED 分词”结构

如第 例, -ED 分词所表示的被动行为的发出者往往不是主语,而是他人。这时 have 可译为“使”、“叫”,在这点上 get 与 have 用法相同(见第 例)。如:I had my watch repaired.(我把表送去修理。)  
 I got my composition corrected.(我请别人改我的作文。)注意:这种结构应和“have”作使役动词讲时区别开来,试比较:

We ought to have ~~her~~ examined by the doctor. 我们应请医生给他检查。

The teacher has ~~the~~ boy stand in front of the blackboard. 老师让那个男孩站在黑板前。

## 2. 感官动词+宾语+-ING 分词

如第 例，这种结构中，-ING 分词表示宾语正处于某种状态，强调正在进行，如：

I can smell the dinner cooking

Mother heard her baby crying

这类感官动词主要有：feel, hear, notice, observe, see, find, smell 等。这种结构应和“感官动词+宾语+动词原形”区分开来，因为后者强调动作全过程，试比较：

I saw him run ~~the~~ room. 我看到他从屋中跑出来。（强调全过程）

I saw him run ~~the~~ room. 我看到他正从屋中跑出来。（强调当时情景）

## 3. 有些表示“起始”、“状态”或引出某种结果的动词后也要求分词作宾补(如第 例), 这类动词主要有: imagine, have, set, keep, catch, leave, start 等, 例:

What he said set all of the students laughing. (他的话使得所有的学生都笑起来。)

I won't have you ~~me~~ about ~~r~~. (我不能容忍你对我指手划脚。)

He kept his mouth ~~stayed~~ where he was. (他闭口不言，呆要原地不动。)

Matter is the name given to everything which has weight and occupies space.

The baby sleeping in the cradle is my brother.

The house being painted belongs to Edward.

They are talking about the experiment made in the new lab.

分词短语常常作后置定语修饰前面的名词, 这时它们相当于定语从句, 如上边四句也可分别改用定语从句。

Matter is the name (that is) given to everything ...

The baby (who is) sleeping in the cradle is (...将来)

The house (which is) being painted belongs ...

They are talking about the experiment (which has been) made...

-ING 分词作定语表示该动作与句子谓语所指的动作同时发生, 相当于现在进行时或一般现在时(如第 例)。-ED 分词作定语表示该动作在谓语动作前已完成(如第 例)或是单纯的被动含义(如第 例), 如强调同时发生, 可用“being+-ED 分词”表示(如第 例)。分词作后置定语应和不定式作定语区分开来, 不定式一般表示该动作在谓语动作之后发生或单纯起修饰作用, 试比较:

The boy eating looks hungry. (同时)

The vase broken has been thrown away. (完成)

English words ending in *-ly* are usually adverbs. (一般现在时)

He was the last person to leave. (一般修饰作用)

I have a lot of letters to write. (将来)

Compared, what is but a matter of minor importance. (单纯被动)

Having been soaked (浑身湿透), they eventually reached the station. (被动完成)

They stood by the roadside, watching traffic. (正在进行)

His complete works, now being published, will fill more than fifty volumes.

分词短语作状语时，其位置较灵活，可放在句首、句中或句尾，且通常和句子其他成分用逗号隔开。分词所用的时态取决于它与被修饰动词（即谓语动词）的关系：

(1) -ING 分词表示与谓语的动作同时发生和正在进行，如第 例；

(2) -ING 分词表示一般动作，如第 例

(3) -ING 分词的完成式表示先于谓语动作发生，如第 例；

(4) -ING 分词表示先于谓动作发生，强调状态或仅表示被动含义，如第 、 例；如果强调同时发生，用 being+ -ED 分词，如 ；如果强调分词动作先于谓语完成，可用被动完成形式 “haveing been + -ED 分词”，如第 2 例。

4. 动词不定式表示其动作在谓语动词之后发生，如例 ，或纯起修饰作用，如例 。

Not knowing what appropriate measures to be taken to cope with the situation, he wrote to his lawyer for advice.

They had been working round the clock for a couple of days, hoping to get the design out before their competitors did.

Having been caught in the rain, he was wet to the skin.

She sat at the window reading a novel.

分词短语作状语往往带有原因（第 、 例）、目的（第 例）、伴随（第 例）、条件、让步、方式、结果等含义，其具体含义应根据上下文进行判断，又如：

Turning to you will find the newly-built bank. (条件)

Admitting what is still wrong. (让步)

We increase the length of wire, thus increasing its resistance. (结果)

注意：分词结构中的分词如果是“being”时，常被省略，如 (being) tired with the work for a walk.

由于工作累了，他出去散步。

(being) A good teacher is loved by all of her pupils.

因为她是个好老师，所以受到全体学生的爱戴。

Night fell, and hurried home.

How can I work with that noise going on? outside  
The students having done the exercise went on to explain the text.

With all facts taken into consideration, our program may excel all the others in achieving the goal.

分词短语作状语时如果带有与句子主语所不同的，即自己的主语，就构成了分词独立结构（也叫独立主格结构或垂悬分词结构），这种结构也可作状语表示时间，原因等。有时在独立结构前还可加介词 with 或 without，其作用是一样的。注意：这种带有介词的分词独立结构还可以由其他词类替换，例：

With the baby on her lap, the mother began telling it a fable.  
(介+名+介词短语)

She used to sleep with all the windows open. (介+名+形)

He always reads with the radio on. (介+名+副)

Seen from the moon, our earth looks like a big bright disk.

Being a clever girl, she was sent to college by her father.

分词短语如果没有自己的主语，就必须和句子的主语在逻辑和语意上一致。如例 中分词短语“seen...”（从月亮上看去）的逻辑主语刚好和“our Earth”一致，因为分词短语成“When our Earth is seeing...”。其中“seen”不可改为“seeing”，因为不能说“when our Earth is seeing...”。而例 规范英语中不可改成 Being a clever girl, her father sent her to college. 因为分词短语的逻辑主语不是“her father”，而只能是“she”

## 第六节 练习试题

1. Written in great haste, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) Jim made a lot of mistakes in the report  
B) there are plenty of errors in the report  
C) we found several mistakes in his report  
D) the book is full of errors
2. \_\_\_\_\_ its plans to promote disarmament, the party has decided to establish a campaign headquarters with Benjamin Seaman as its leader.  
A) Although      B) To carry out  
C) Except that      D) Make
3. \_\_\_\_\_ under a microscope, a fresh snowflake has a delicate six-pointed shape.  
A) Seen      B) Sees  
C) Seeing      D) To see
4. Commercial banks make most of their income from interest \_\_\_\_\_ on loans and investments in stocks and bonds.  
A) earn      B) earned

- C) to earn      D) was earned
5. John admitted that it's always difficult \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) for him being on time      B) being on time for him  
 C) for him to be on time      D) on time for him
6. An explosion is really a sudden increase in volume \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) rapid burning causes it  
 B) and caused by rapid burning  
 C) causing its burning to be rapid  
 D) caused by rapid burning
7. Francis Preston Blair, Jr., \_\_\_\_\_ born in Kentucky, lived and practiced law in Missouri.  
 A) was                      B) he was  
 C) although              D) who he was
8. \_\_\_\_\_ to steel, chromium ( 铬 ) increases the metal's hardness.  
 A) Added              B) In addition  
 C) Adding              D) Adds
9. Having the highest marks in his class, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) the college offered him a scholarship  
 B) he was offered a scholarship by the college  
 C) a scholarship was offered him by the college  
 D) a college scholarship was offered to him
10. I often heard him \_\_\_\_\_ that his family was well descended.  
 A) said                      B) say  
 C) to say                  D) to be said
11. In his movies, W.C. Fields was always at war with the world, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) battling both people and objects  
 B) both people and objects were battled  
 C) he was battling both people and objects  
 D) both people and objects that were battled
12. \_\_\_\_\_ was not incorporated as a city until almost two centuries later, in 1834.  
 A) Settling Brooklyn, the Dutch  
 B) The Dutch settled Brooklyn  
 C) Brooklyn was settled by the Dutch  
 D) Settled by the Dutch, Brooklyn
13. \_\_\_\_\_ pure lead, the lead ore is mined, then smelted, and finally refined.  
 A) Obtaining              B) Being obtained  
 C) To obtain              D) It is obtained
14. Having been served lunch, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) the problem was discussed by the members of the committee  
 B) the committee members discussed the problem

- C) it was discussed by the committee members the problem  
 D) a discussion of the problem was made by the members of the committee
15. Well known as a splendid pianist in Boston, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) we all are pleased to hear Mr. Anderson's concerto (小协奏曲)  
 B) a concerto was composed by Mr. Anderson  
 C) Mr. Anderson composed a concerto  
 D) Mr. Anderson's concerto was composed
16. \_\_\_\_\_, Hong Kong acts as a gateway into and out of the People's Republic of China.  
 A) Strategically located  
 B) It is located strategically  
 C) Where strategically located  
 D) Because located strategically
17. Professor Tate \_\_\_\_\_ about him  
 A) heard the students to talk  
 B) heard the talk by the students  
 C) heard the students' talking  
 D) heard the students to talk
18. Electrical resistance is a common property of all materials, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) differs only in degree      B) it noly differs in degree  
 C) only in degree it differs      D) differing only in degree
19. \_\_\_\_\_, Tony jumped into the river and saved the drowning man.  
 A) Good swimer as he is  
 B) He can swim very well  
 C) Being that he was a good swimmer  
 D) Being a good swimmer
20. Why do you object to \_\_\_\_\_ the direction?  
 A) foolowing      B) follow  
 C) have follow      D) have been followed
21. We must have a person \_\_\_\_\_ them build the house.  
 A) see      B) to see  
 C) will see      D) shall see
22. Husband and wife with a common duty to the country will find themselves \_\_\_\_\_ closer together.  
 A) been drawn      B) to draw  
 C) drawn      D) drawing
23. The company manager may enable the men who tend the machines \_\_\_\_\_ a large panorama (全景) of possibilites.  
 A) to see      B) see  
 C) seeing      D) seen

24. Though I have been learning the English language for a year and a half, I still cannot make myself \_\_\_\_\_ English.  
 A) understand in      B) understood by  
 C) understand with    D) understood in
25. \_\_\_\_\_ with the new method, the material does not break up easily.  
 A) To have treated    B) Having treated  
 C) Being treated      D) Having been treated
26. When they met, Leonardo and his enemy were fighting \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) killed each other      B) killing each other  
 C) to be killed each other    D) to kill each other
27. \_\_\_\_\_ that new information to anyone else but the sergeant.  
 A) They asked him not to give  
 B) They asked him to don't give  
 C) They asked him no give  
 D) They asked him to no give
28. There are four factories in our institute, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) each to have over 100 workers  
 B) each having over 100 workers  
 C) which there are over 100 workers  
 D) with each that has over 100 workers
29. Attempting to reach his home before the storm, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) the bicycle of John broke down  
 B) it happened that John's bike broke down  
 C) the storm caught John  
 D) John had an accident on his bicycle
30. This \_\_\_\_\_, we went out to play.  
 A) was done      B) did  
 C) was doing    D) done
31. Anna was reading a piece of science fiction, completely \_\_\_\_\_ to the outside world.  
 A) being lost      B) having lost  
 C) losing          D) lost
32. Those naughty boys were caught \_\_\_\_\_ flowers in the garden again.  
 A) to steal          B) stealing  
 C) having stolen    D) stolen
33. \_\_\_\_\_ of all legal rights, the oppressed people resorted to armed struggle in the form of guerrilla war.  
 A) Deprived          B) Depriving  
 C) Being deprived    D) To deprive
34. On his return from his college, he found the house \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) deserting      B) deserted

- C)desert            D)to be deserted
- 35.However hard I tried, I could not possibly get the car\_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)going            B)go  
 C)gone            D)to be going
- 36.Such being the case, it's better to leave some things\_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)unsay            B)unsaying  
 C)unsaid           D)to unsay
- 37.They should be kept here\_\_\_\_\_this matter.  
 A)informing about    B)be informed  
 C)be informed of    D)informed of
- 38.\_\_\_\_\_enough food and water, they could have beaten the enemy.  
 A)Being given        B)Given  
 C)Give               D)To give
- 39.There\_\_\_\_\_no spare parts, the truck is still left unrepaired.  
 A)were              B)to be  
 C)being              D)having
- 40.Weather\_\_\_\_\_, we'll go sightseeing.  
 A)permitted          B)is permitted  
 C)permitting        D)is permitting
- 41.\_\_\_\_\_all his followers dead, the commander was taken by his enemy.  
 A)For                B)As  
 C)Because of        D)With
- 42.To everybody's surprise, the meeting ended with nothing \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)settled            B)being settled  
 C)settling           D)to settle
- 43.\_\_\_\_\_of the change in the meeting time, Mike arrived late.  
 A)Not having notified    B)Not notifying  
 C)Not to notify           D)Not having been notified
- 44.\_\_\_\_\_these two pieces of metal, a special kind of glue is needed.  
 A)Joining            B)Joined  
 C)Having joined      D)To join
- 45.\_\_\_\_\_the kind of man he was, he did not pay much attention to it at first.  
 A)To be              B)Being  
 C)Having been        D)Though to be
- 46.We always hear about aeroplanes\_\_\_\_\_because of technical faults.  
 A)delaying           B)being delayed  
 C)be delayed        D)to be delayed
- 47.We were overjoyed at the news of China\_\_\_\_\_another man-made satellite.  
 A)having launched    B)to have launched



- C)to launch                      D)launched
- 48.The noise of desks\_\_\_\_\_could be heard out in the street.  
A)opened and closed      B)to be opened and closed  
C)being opened and closed  
D)having been opened and closed
49. “ Do you have any clothes\_\_\_\_\_today? ” Mother asked her child.  
A)be washe                      B)washed  
C)to be washed      D)wash
- 50.Any such news would start her\_\_\_\_\_.  
A)to worry      B)worrying  
C)worry      D)worried
- 51.He wants\_\_\_\_\_as soon as possible.  
A)that this harvester is repaired  
B)this harvester repaired  
C)that this harvester will be repaired  
D)this harvester to repair
- 52.I heard my name\_\_\_\_\_several, times by someone behind me.  
A)call      B)to be called  
C)called      D)be called
- 53.Other conditions\_\_\_\_\_equal, the pressure remains constant.  
A)being      B)is  
C)will be      D)be
- 54.\_\_\_\_\_, she went back to her bedroom.  
A)Without having cause for alarm  
B)There being no cause for alarm  
C)Being no cause for alarm  
D)Being without cause for alarm
- 55.We found the temperature of the storeroom much higher than\_\_\_\_\_.  
A)allowing                      B)being allowed  
C)allowed                      D)we allow it
- 56.The bus was held up by the traffic jam, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)thus causing the delay      B)so that caused the delay  
C)to cause the delay      D)caused the delay
- 57.Peter Joseph Wilhelm Debye developed a method for bringing substances to the lowest temperatures\_\_\_\_\_.  
A)known to science      B)know science  
C)knowing science      D)to be known by science
- 58.Emily Post's book “ Etiquette ” , \_\_\_\_\_in 1992, was an immediate success.  
A)published                      B)publishing  
C)being published      D)to be published
- 59.The carat ( 宝石重量单位 “ 克拉 ” ) , \_\_\_\_\_as a unit for weighing gems, derived its name form a Greek word.

- A)still                                      B)still used  
C)to still be used                      D)to use still

60.Never attempting to be a literary stylist, \_\_\_\_\_ in her novels.

- A)she considered the plot the most important element  
B)the most important element considered to be the plot  
C)considering the plot the most important element  
D)the plot was considered to be the most important element

### 练习试题答案

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1.D)  | 7.C)  | 13.C) | 19.D) | 25.D) |
| 2.B)  | 8.A)  | 14.B) | 20.A) | 26.D) |
| 3.A)  | 9.B)  | 15.C) | 21.A) | 27.A) |
| 4.B)  | 10.B) | 16.A) | 22.C) | 28.B) |
| 5.C)  | 11.A) | 17.C) | 23.A) | 29.D) |
| 6.D)  | 12.D) | 18.D) | 24.D) | 30.D) |
| 31.D) | 37.D) | 43.D) | 49.C) | 55.C) |
| 32.B) | 38.B) | 44.D) | 50.B) | 56.A) |
| 33.A) | 39.C) | 45.B) | 51.B) | 57.A) |
| 34.B) | 40.C) | 46.B) | 52.C) | 58.A) |
| 35.A) | 41.D) | 47.A) | 53.A) | 59.B) |
| 36.C) | 42.A) | 48.C) | 54.B) | 60.A) |

## 第四章 虚拟语气

### 第一节 概述

虚拟语气表示说话人所说的话是某种愿望、假设、怀疑、猜测、建议、可能或纯粹空想，所以虚拟语气总是与假设条件句用在一起。虚拟语气的条件句与真实条件从句的最大差别在于时态不同，真实条件句的条件（从句或结论主句）均采用陈述语气。虚拟（条件）语气中，主句与从句中谓语动词的形式可分为下面四类：

假设类型	条件从句谓语动词形式	主句谓语动词形式
与现在事实相反	过去式动词（be 的过去式用 were）	would（第一人称可用 should）+动词原形
与过去事实相反	had+-ED 分词	would（第一人称可用 should）+have+-ED 分词
与将来事实相反	were to+动词原形	would（第一人称可用 should）+动词原形
与将来事实可能相反	should+动词原形	would（第一人称可用 should+动词原形）

以上四种类型的用法依次举例如下：

#### 1. 与现在的事实相反

If I knew his address, I would write to him. 假如我知道他的地址，我就写信给他。（事实上我不知道他的地址，因而无法给他写信。）  
/If I were you, I would go and tell him the fact. 如果我是你的话，我会告诉他实事。/If there were no sunlight, plants would not grow.（没有太阳，植物无法生长。）

#### 2. 与过去的事实相反

If I had known his address, I would have written to him. 假如我知道他的地址，我早就写信给他了。（事实上我当时并不知道他的地址，所以那时没给他写信。）  
If I had had a bike, I would have lent it to you yesterday. / You would have been able to do very well if you had taken this quiz at the beginning of the course. / If I had arrived sooner, I would not have missed the show.

以上三句中，条件句表示的都是与事实相反：第一句表示“昨天我没有自行车”，第二句表示“你没有参加他的考试”，第三句则表示“我没有及时赶到”。所有这些表示与过去事实相反的假设，其假设句应用过去完成时。

#### 3. 与将来的事实相反

If the sun were to rise in the west, I would marry you. 假如太阳从西边出来，我才会嫁给你。（事实上太阳不可能从西边出来，因而我也不可能嫁给你。）/Well, it is said Tom will go to an

appointment tomorrow. If he were to come tomorrow, I would ask him to go to your place. 嗯，据说汤姆明天要约会。如果他明天来了，我就让他去你的住处。

#### 4. 与将来的事实可能相反

If it should rain tomorrow, I would stay at home. 要是万一明天下雨，我就呆在家里不出去。（事实上现在天气很好，明天下雨的可能性应该不大，不过也说不准。）/ If I should see her next Monday, I would tell her about it. 如果下周一我能见到她的话我就把这件事告诉她。

我们还应该注意以下几点：

1. 主句谓语动词形式中的“would”根据情况可由“should”、“might”或“could”替换。

2. 上面几种假设类型中，主句与从句的谓语动词形式应前后呼应；如果主句与从句的动作发生的时间不一致，谓语动词形式应做适当调整。如：

If I had a bike (now), I would have lent it to you yesterday. 假如我有自行车，昨天早就借给你了。（主句与过去事实相反，从句与现在事实相反。）

If she had not stayed so late, she would have got up by now. 要不是她睡得那么晚，她现在早起来了。

Had Paul received six more votes in the last election, he \_\_\_\_\_ our chairman now.

A) must have been      B) would have been

C) were                      D) would be

正确答案是 B)

3. 条件从句中，谓语动词“be”的过去时一般用“were”，例：If I were you, I wouldn't have bought that car.

如果我是你，我就不会把那部汽车买下。

4. 有时假设的情况并不以条件从句表示出来，而是通过一个介词短语来表示，或通过上下文或其他方式表示出来。如“but for”，“without”及“but that”和“supposing”特表示让步假设：

But for your help, I would fail. （若没你的帮助，我就会失败。）

Without the money, I would not be alive. （要是没有那笔钱，我现在不会活在人世。）

还有“otherwise”表假设转折的：

He worked very hard; otherwise he might have failed. （他刻苦工作，不然他就失败了。）

5. 表示与现在事实相反的虚拟语气偶而在“开放式条件句”（open conditional clause）和让步状语从句中出现，如：If any person be guilty of a crime, the court shall have the right to appeal. （任何人犯罪，法院有权起诉。）/ Whether she be right or wrong, she will have my unanswering support. （不管她是对还是错，我都会支持她的。）

但如果把引导词去掉，我们就要用倒装句：Be any person guilty

of a crime, the court shall have the right or wrong, she will have my unanswerable

6. 有的条件从句可以不用连词 if 而是把 were, 或 had 移动到

主语前, 如: Had I arrived earlier, I would have been

7. 在以 wish 所引导的宾语从句中, 其谓语动词用一般过去式表示, 如:

I wish I were you. / I wish he came here

8. 一些表示提议、主张、要求、命令、紧要等概念的词语, 由于它们本身隐含说话者的主观意见, 认为某事应该或不应该怎样。这些词语后面的“that”从句应用虚拟语气, 且均以“should”表示这种语气, 但事实上“should”常被省略, 故此从句中谓语动词用原形。这些词可分为下列几类:

- 1) 下列动词后“that”引导的宾语从句:

suggest (建议), propose (提议), recommend (建议), move (提议), advise (建议), insist (坚持), urge (极力主张、敦促), ask, require, request (要求), demand, insist, order, command (命令), decide (打算), prefer (宁愿)。They insisted that we (他们坚持马上走) should leave immediately that we take action on it (她敦促我们立即对这件事采取行动。) / When I suggested that he try cream, he said that razor and water (当我建议他用刮胡膏时, 他说“剃刀和水就行了”。) / He pursued various theories for several days until I suggested to see how it (他费了几天功夫寻找理论根据, 直到我建议拆开看看它是如何动转的。) / One can suggest that students should spend two or three years in English-speaking countries. (我们建议学生应在说英语的国家呆上两三年。)

- 2) 下列表示必须、急迫、重要等概念的形容词后面“that”引导的主语从句, 这时“that”所引导的主语从句中的谓语动词常用 should (should 动词原形或 should 过去分词) 或省略 should 用动词原形。

necessary (重要的), vital (极重要的, 不可缺少的), important (重要的), urgent (紧要的), advisable (应该的), proper (适当的), obligatory (必须的), desirable (令人满意的, 值得的), appropriate (合适的), fit (合适的), strange (奇怪)

如: It is important that we should speak on this occasion of foreign affairs (在这样的外交场合, 我们礼貌说话是很重要的。) / It is strange that he should have finished in such a short time (真是奇怪, 他在如此短的时间内就拿到了文凭。) / It is urgent that you should be present at present (你到场是非常要紧的。)

- 3) 下列表示主张、要求、命令等概念的名词后面“that”引导的同位语从句, 这种由“that”引导的从句其谓语动词通常用 should 动词原形。

这类词有: order, request, suggestion, command, necessity

important (提议), propose (建议),  
recommend (建议), wonder (疑问), resolution  
(决定, 决议)

如: His request is that we should buy him a new one. (他的要求是要我们给他买一个新的。)/ My suggestion is that we go at once. (我建议马上走。)

- 4) 在 expect, believe, think, suppose 等动词的否定或疑问形式后的宾语从句, 我们经常用“should + 动词原形 (或完成形式)”, 表示惊奇, 怀疑, 不满等: I never thought that he should be so young. (我们从来没想到他是个如此勇敢的小战士。)
- 5) lest for fear 和 in case 引起的从句 (这时谓语多用 should + 动词原形) 如: We dare not play jokes on Mr. Wang lest he should become angry. (我们不敢跟王先生开玩笑, 恐怕他生气。)/ He hurried on, lest he should drop out. (他加快步伐, 生怕在急行军中掉队。)/ Every attention must be paid to him (should) feel that he is inferior to the others. (对他特别关照, 唯恐他感觉到比我的其他客人低人一等。)/ He's working hard for fear that he should fail. (他加紧学习唯恐考试不及格。)

## 第二节 实例与分析

- 1) I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies with you last night.

A) went      B) could go  
C) go      D) had gone

D) 为正确答案。

- 动词 wish 后跟由 that 引导的宾语从句 (that 经常被省略) 要用虚拟语气表示一种不可实现的愿望。宾语从句中用过去时 (be 用 were 的形式) 表示与现在事实相反。
- 有时 wish 的宾语从句中可用 would + 动词原形, 表示一种愿望、要求, 如: I wish you would stay here longer. (我希望你在这儿多呆一会。)/ She wishes you wouldn't go. (她希望你不要走。)/ Sarah wishes she had studied harder in the university. (Sarah 后悔她在大学时没有好好学习。)
- would rather (宁愿) 和 it is (high) time (该 (必须) 做.....) 等词或短语后面的从句中的谓语动词应使用虚拟语气, 一般使用过去时, 如: I would rather you were not here to watch the video. (我宁愿你们不要来看录像。)/ It is high time that you went home. (你们现在必须回家了。)

His wife would rather they \_\_\_\_\_ about the matter any more.

A) don't talk      B) couldn't talk  
C) didn't talk      D) won't talk

C) 为正确答案。

It is high time that this wrong spending \_\_\_\_\_.

- A)checks                      B)checked  
C)was checked              D)is to check  
C)为正确答案。

2)Had he worked harder, he\_\_\_\_\_.

- A)would get through the exams  
B)could get through the exams  
C)must have got through the exams  
D)would have got through the exams

D)为正确答案。虚拟条件从句中的谓语动词如果是 were 或 should ,had , could 等助动词时 ,可以省略连词 If ,但应将 were 或 should ,had ,could 助动词移至主语前。上二例可还原为 If 从句 :

If he had worked harder, .....

If Paul had received.....

Sammy looks as though he never got a square meal, but in fact his parents feed him very well.

I was so sick last night that I felt as if the room were going round.

由 as if 和 as though 引导的状语从句表示比较和方式时,意思是“好像”,这时从句中的谓语动词应用虚拟语气。其动词形式用过去时 (be 用 were 的形式)表示所说的与现在的事实相反;用过去完成时表示所说的与过去的事实相反,如:I feel as if I had wakened from a nightmare. (我觉得像是从恶梦中惊醒。)/He jumped back as if he had been stung, and the blood rushed into his wrinkled face. (他突然跳回,像是被叮了一下,他布满皱纹的脸变红了。)/He felt awkward and almost as if he alone were responsible for what happened. (他感到尴尬,好像他自己一个人对发生的一切负完全的责任。)/Homer said as if he were speaking to a student. (Homer 像是跟一个学生在说话。)

此外 ,还有省去了结果主句的虚拟结构 ,一般表示愿望 ,如 :If only I were five years younger! (要是能年轻五岁就好了。)/If only she had never been married. (要是她从来没有结婚就好了。)

### 第三节 练习试题

- 1.The judge assented to the suggestion that\_\_\_\_\_.  
A)both of the criminals will soon be set freedom  
B)some of the criminals there are of guilt only  
C)the girl was to be paroled in the custody of a welfare society  
D)the prisoner be sentenced to death
2. If the United States had built more homes for poor people in 1955, the housing problems now in some parts of this country\_\_\_\_\_so serious.  
A)wouldn't be                      B)will not have been  
C)wouldn't have been              D)would have not been

3. George would certainly have attended the proceedings \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) if he didn't get a flat tire  
B) if the flat tire hadn't happened  
C) had he not had a flat tire  
D) had the tire not flattened itself
4. If you had studied the problem carefully yesterday, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) you won't find any difficulty now  
B) you would not have found any difficulty now  
C) you would not find any difficulty now  
D) you have not find any difficulty now
5. \_\_\_\_\_, John would not have failed.  
A) If he has listened to me  
B) Had he listened to me  
C) If he listened to me  
D) As soon as he listened to me
6. \_\_\_\_\_, he would have come to class.  
A) If Mike is able to finish his homework  
B) Would Mike be able to finish his homework  
C) If Mike could finish his homework  
D) If Mike had been able to finish his homework
7. If the United States had not entered the Second World War, probably the 1940 unemployment rate of 14% \_\_\_\_\_ still further.  
A) would rise                      B) would risen  
C) would have risen            D) had risen
8. If he \_\_\_\_\_ the detective honestly, he would not have been arrested.  
A) would have answered        B) answered  
C) should answer                D) had answered
9. From the standpoint of the long-term strategic interest of the West it is imperative that \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) their territorial unity being a safeguard  
B) their unity is a territorial safeguard  
C) they're a territorial safeguard  
D) their territorial unity be a safeguard
10. The chairman requested that \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) the members studied more carefully the problem  
B) the problem was more carefully studied  
C) with more carefulness the problem could be studied  
D) the members study the problem more carefully
11. \_\_\_\_\_ that the time will soon be ripe for intervention in Iran, they would be faced by a large army.  
A) It is believed                B) Should they believe  
C) They would believe        D) If they would believe
12. Through the centuries the world would have made little progress



- \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) if creative thinkers will heed such counsel
  - B) than creative thinkers heed such counsel
  - C) but are creative thinkers heeding such counsel
  - D) had creative thinkers heeded such counsel
13. The committee recommends that the matter \_\_\_\_\_ at the next meeting.
- A) would be discussed      B) will be discussed
  - C) be discussed              D) may be discussed
14. What type of automobile would you buy \_\_\_\_\_?
- A) if you have free choice to choose the cars available today
  - B) if you are free to choose among all the cars available today
  - C) if all cars available were free to be chosen by you
  - D) if you were free to choose among all the cars available today
15. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anything about it for the time being.
- A) do              B) didn't do
  - C) don't          D) didn't
16. She \_\_\_\_\_ to join us if she had been able to.
- A) had come      B) would have come
  - C) is coming     D) came
17. \_\_\_\_\_ I known it, I should have told him.
- A) Have              B) Had
  - C) Having          D) If
18. I think it advisable that he \_\_\_\_\_ for Tokyo soon.
- A) will leave      B) may leave
  - C) leave            D) leaves
19. If he didn't promise it yesterday, still he \_\_\_\_\_ it tomorrow.
- A) would not promise      B) will not promise
  - C) should not promise      D) could not promise
20. The doctor insisted that his patient \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) that he not work too hard for three months
  - B) take it easy for three months
  - C) taking it easy inside of three months
  - D) to take some vacations for three months
21. \_\_\_\_\_, he would have signed his name in the corner.
- A) If he painted that picture
  - B) If he paints that picture
  - C) If he had painted that picture
  - D) If he would have painted that picture
22. Ben would have studied medicine if he \_\_\_\_\_ to a medical school.
- A) could be able to enter      B) had been admitted
  - C) was admitted              D) were admitted
23. If a traveler had visited the San Diego Peninsula in the 1880's, \_\_\_\_\_ that coyotes and jackrabbits outnumbered the human

population 10000 to one.

- A)he had found      B)he found
- C)had he found      D)he would have found

24. I \_\_\_\_\_ Professor Jones had taught me this equation.

- A)believe              B)wish
- C)deeply think      D)am guessing

25. If you hadn't gone with Tom to the party last night, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A)you would meet John already
- B)you won't have missed John
- C)you will have met John
- D)you would have met John

26. If you \_\_\_\_\_ to see Mary, what would you tell her?

- A)are              B)will be going
- C)must              D)were

27. But for his help, I \_\_\_\_\_.

- A)should not have succeeded      B)had not succeeded
- C)did not succeed                      D)have not succeeded

28. Hadn't my car broken down, I \_\_\_\_\_ the train.

- A)should have caught      B)might catch
- C)could catch                      D)had caught

29. \_\_\_\_\_ the English examination I would have gone to the concert last Sunday.

- A)In spite of      B)But for
- C)Because of      D)As for

30. Had she been given some information, she \_\_\_\_\_ the questions.

- A)answered      B)could have answered
- C)answers      D)was answering

31. My uncle always talks as though he \_\_\_\_\_ a public meeting.

- A)addresses              B)addressed
- C)is addressing      D)were addressing

32. Don't come today. I would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.

- A)came      B)will come
- C)come      D)are coming

33. It's essential that all these figures \_\_\_\_\_ twice.

- A)check              B)are checked
- C)checked      D)be checked

34. If the doctor had been available, the child \_\_\_\_\_.

- A)would not die      B)would have not died
- C)could not die      D)could have not died

35. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ the play on TV the other night.

- A)saw                      B)had seen
- C)have seen      D)have been seeing

36. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ like that.

- A)don't talk              B)won't talk

- C)wouldn't talk     D)not to talk
37. In the past men generally preferred that their wives\_\_\_\_\_in the home.  
A)worked     B)would work  
C)work     D)were working
38. There is a real possibility that these animals could be frightened, \_\_\_\_\_a sudden loud noise.  
A)being there     B)should there be  
C)there was     D)there having been
39. The business of each day, \_\_\_\_\_selling goods or shipping them, went quite smoothly.  
A)it being     B)be it  
C)was it     D)it was
40. I told him how to get here but perhaps I \_\_\_\_\_him a map.  
A)should have given     B)had to give  
C)ought to give     D)must have given
41. If he had properly used the equipment, he \_\_\_\_\_his mouth.  
A)could have prevented water from entering  
B)could at all prevent water into  
C)might be preventing water go into  
D)could prevent water entering into
42. If only we \_\_\_\_\_the manager's advice!  
A)had followed     B)would follow  
C)follow     D)followed
43. My idea is that the meeting \_\_\_\_\_until further notice.  
A)must be postponed     B)will be postponed  
C)should be postponed     D)postponed
44. Supposing you \_\_\_\_\_five bottles of beer, do you think you would get drunk?  
A)were drinking     B)have drunk  
C)were to drink     D)drink
45. \_\_\_\_\_, I will take her as my wife.  
A)Were she rich or poor     B)Being rich or poor  
C)Be she poor or rich     D)Whether is she poor or rich
46. But that he came to help me, I \_\_\_\_\_,  
A)could not have succeeded     B)did not succeed  
C)sould not succeed     D)can't but succeed
47. \_\_\_\_\_today, he would get there by Thursday.  
A)He is starting out     B)If he starts out  
C)Would he start out     D)Were he to start out
48. They would not have made the mistake \_\_\_\_\_them about it beforehand.  
A)if you told     B)had you told  
C)if had you told     D)if you would tell

49. I \_\_\_\_\_ to make an airline reservation, but I didn't.

- A) should have called      B) called  
C) would call              D) didn't call

50. It is not strange that the new machine \_\_\_\_\_ two small electric motors.

- A) powered                  B) was powered  
C) has powered by        D) should be powered by

#### 练习试题答案

1.D)	11.B)	21.C)	31.D)	41.A)
2.C)	12.D)	22.B)	32.A)	42.A)
3.C)	13.C)	23.D)	33.D)	43.C)
4.B)	14.D)	24.B)	34.B)	44.C)
5.B)	15.B)	25.D)	35.B)	45.C)
6.D)	16.B)	26.D)	36.C)	46.A)
7.C)	17.B)	27.A)	37.C)	47.D)
8.D)	18.C)	28.A)	38.B)	48.B)
9.D)	19.B)	29.B)	39.B)	49.A)
10.D)	20.B)	30.B)	40.A)	50.D)

## 第五章 名 词

名词分为专有名词和普通名词两大类。普通名词又分为个体名词、集体名词、物质名词和抽象名词四类。普通名词中的个体名词和集体名词为可数名词；物质名词和抽象名词为不可数名词。只有在大量的实践中才能区分名词的可数与不可数，并熟练运用它们。

### 第一节 名词用法、实例与分析

英语中有些名词通常只有单数形式，即为不可数名词，考生切不可受汉语的影响。下列名词为不可数名：

advice/anger/applause/baggage/cake/chalk/chocolate/cloth/bread/damage/equipment/fruit/furniture/gold/information/ink/jewellery/luggage/mail(邮件)/money/news/paper/protection/soap/sugar/toothpaste/weaponry/machinery/scenery/personnel/work/ 如果要表达汉语的数量，我们可以加 a(n)piece(sheet,tube,item,bar,etc.)以表示一件(片,管,项,条,块等)

不可数名词可以与表示量的可数名词连用，借以表示“可数”的概念，如：

a piece of advice(一个建议)/a basket of fruit/an item of information(一则信息)/a kind of protection。

1)Ten years had passed.I found she had\_\_\_\_\_.

- A)a little white hair      B)some white hair  
C)much white hair          D)a few white hairs

D)为正确答案。有些不可数名以复数形式出现时，其含义会发生变化。“hair”本来是不可数名词，泛指“头发”，但变复数后意为“(可数的)若干根头发”，其他的如 fruit 和 damage 等也有类似的用法

He bought apples, oranges and other fruits.("fruits"在此处意为“多种水果”)

The insurance company paid \$10000 in damages for the accident.("damage"本来为不可数名词“损害”，变复数后意思是“损失赔偿费”。)

单复数含义不同的名词还有 communication(通讯)——communications(通讯系统,通讯工具);content(内容)——contents(目录);convenience(便利)——conveniences(便利设备);humanity(人类)——humanities(人文科学);necessity(需要)——necessities(必需品);pain(疼痛)——pains(辛劳);ruin(毁灭)——ruins(废墟,遗迹);sand(沙子)——sands(沙地);wood(木材)——woods(树林);work(工作)——works(工厂,著作)。

另外，有些名词通常只用复数形式，如：fundamentals(基本原则),goods,means,rapids(急流),shorts,sweets,valuables(贵重物品)。

英语里有些名词的单复数变化较为特殊，需特别注意：analysis-analyses,hacterium-bacteria,crisis-crises,criterion-criteria,formula-formulae(或 formulas),fungus-fungi,phenomenon-

phenomena

2) In the 20th century chemists have learned to make \_\_\_\_\_ of new compounds that never existed before.

- A) the thousand      B) thousands  
C) a thousand      D) one thousand

“thousand”以及“hundred”和“million”前若没有其他限定修饰时(如“a few”、“one”、“ten”等),则要用复数形式,后面再加“of”,表示不定数。“thousands of compounds”意为“数以千计的化合物”。再如:They were killed by thousands. 他们被数以千计地杀害。

3) Take an umbrella with you in case of \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) it rains      B) the rain  
C) rain      D) raining

C) 为正确答案。定冠词一般表特指,但本句中的“rain”并不专指哪一场雨,故不必在前加“the”。试比较:They walked out in the rain. (特指那场雨)/a heavy rain (一场大雨)当数词和名词(有时后面再加表长短、大小的形容词)一起构成合成词修饰后面的名词时,其中的名词应用单数。比较:a three-year-old boy, three-mile-long walk。

4) It is widely believed that the pull of gravity on a falling raindrop changes \_\_\_\_\_ round shape into a teardrop shape.

- A) of the drop      B) the drop's  
C) drop of      D) drops their

B) 为正确答案。本句空白处缺限定词,和“round”一起修饰名词“shape”。“drop”在此处为名词(水滴),它和后面的“(round) shape”有所属关系,故用所有格。

## 第二节 练习试题

1. “How often have you seen cases like this?” one surgeon asked another.

“Oh, \_\_\_\_\_ times, I guess.” was the reply.

- A) hundred of      B) hundreds  
C) hundreds of      D) hundred

2. \_\_\_\_\_ of the students have successfully passed the final exam.

- A) Two thirds      B) Two thirds  
C) Two third      D) Two thirds

3. In the zoo there was \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) a hundred-years-old elephant  
B) hundred-year-old elephant  
C) a hundred-years-aged elephant  
D) a hundred-year-old elephant

4. \_\_\_\_\_ are so excited, for they bought a lot of furniture the other day.

- A) Browns      B) The Browns  
C) The Brown      D) A Brown

5. "What is she?" "She is\_\_\_\_\_。"
- A)a singer and a dancer                      B)a singer and dancer  
C)the singer and the dancer                  D)singer and dancer
6. It was\_\_\_\_\_that we went camping in the mountains last week.
- A)such nice weather                      B)too nice weather  
C)so nice a weather                      D)nice weather so
7. Danny spent\_\_\_\_\_in Europe this summer that he plans to return as soon as he saves enough money.
- A)such enjoyable vacation  
B)such an enjoyable vacation  
C)so an enjoyable vacation  
D)a so enjoyable vacation
8. Etymologically(从词源学的角度)considered, the word journeyman means one who is employed\_\_\_\_\_。
- A)by the day    B)by day  
C)by a day      D)by days
9. He took the old woman by\_\_\_\_\_hand.
- A)the            B)a  
C)her            D)his

#### 练习试题答案

1.C 2.A 3.D 4.B 5.B 6.A 7.B 8.A 9.A

## 第六章 形容和副词

英语中只有形容词和副词才有比较级和最高级形式变化，有关此类考题在历届考试中一直占有比较重要的位置。

### 第一节 形容词比较级和最高级的变化形式

#### 一、形容比较级和最高级的形式变化

形容词的比较级和最高级变化形式规则如下：

构 成 法	原 级	比 较 级	最 高 级
1.一般单音节词末尾加-er 和-est	strong	stronger	strongest
2.单音节词如果以-e 结尾，只加-r 和-st	strange	stranger	strangest
3.闭音节单音节词如末尾只有一个辅音字母，须先双写这个辅音字母，再加-er 和-est	sad      big hot	sadder bigger hotter	saddest biggest hottest
4.少数以-y，-er（或-ure），-ow，-ble 结尾的双音节词，末尾加-er 和-est（以-y 结尾的词，如-y 前是辅音字母，把 y 变成 i，再加-er 和-est，以-e 结尾的词仍只加-r 和-st）	angry clever narrow noble	angrier cleverer narrower nobler	angrest cleverest narrowest narrowest noblest
5.其他双音节和多音节词都在前面加单词 more 和 most	different	more different	most different

下边是大纲中的形容词，我们把它们进行了归类，看你是否都知道它们的含义。

（一）大纲中类似“1.”的单词还有：

cheap	grand	odd	queer	smart	stiff
cool	great	old	rich	smooth	strict
deep	hard	open	rough	small	sweet
dark	loud	poor	short	steep	swift
fast	low	proud	slow	stern	thick
gay	new				

（二）大纲中类似“2.”的单词还有：

bare	fierce	loose	ripe	sharp	tense
brave	free	nice	rude	simple	white
close	hum-	pure	safe	stale	wide
crude	ble	rare	scarce	tame	wise
dense	large				

（三）“3.”中所说的是指单词中最后一个元音是重音音节，而且最后结尾的辅音是单个。试比较：



{ fat	fatter	fattest	{ neat	neater	neatest
{ mad	madder	maddest	{ thick	thicker	thickest

大纲中类似“3.”的单词还有：

big	fat	fit	flat	thin
-----	-----	-----	------	------

(四) 大纲中类似“4.”的单词还有：

slender	funny	lucky	sticky	mellow
bloody	greedy	merry	stuffy	shallow
busy	happy	muddy	tasty	able
costly	hasty	naughty	thirsty	feeble
crazy	heavy	noisy	tidy	gentle
dry	holy	pretty	ugly	simple
early	icy	rainy	uneasy	sleepy
easy	jolly	shady	wealthy	mature
fancy	lazy	silly	worry	obscure

三个或三个以上音节的形容词只能加 more 和 most，如只能说 more beautiful 而不能说 beautifuller；只能说 the most beautiful 而不能说 beautifullest。

但是以形容前缀-un 结尾的三音节形容词如 unhappy, untidy 除外，我们可以说：unhappier unhappiest, untidier untidiest

由-ING 分词和-ED 分词（包括不规则动词如 know known）演变过来的形容词只能加 more 或 most 来表示它们的比较级和最高级。如：more(most)striking, more(most)

interesting, more(most)wounded, more(most)worn 等。

英语里有些形容词由于其词义而不可能有比较级形式，如：

absolute	foremost	possible	supreme
chief	inevitable	primary	universal
entire	infinite	right	utter
eternal	main	simulta-	vital
excellent	naked	neous	whole
fatal	perfect	sufficient	wooden
final			

## 二、不规则形容词的比较级和最高级形式变化如下

### 第二节 副词比较级和最高级的变化形式

副词比较级和最高级的变化形式与形容词的基本上一样，如：

一般副词

hard	harder	hardest
fast	faster	fastest
late	later	latest
early	earlier	earliest

特殊副词：

badly worse worst

well better best

little less least

much more most

但是，开放类副词以后缀 -ly 结尾的副词不能像形容词那样加 -er 和 -est，如：

quickly more quickly most quickly quietly more quietly most quietly

[注]：early 中的 -ly 不是后缀，故可以加 -er 和 -est

### 第三节 形容词和副词比较级最高级的基本用法

一、“as+原级+as”构成“程度相同”比较句；其否定式，即“程度不及”比较句型为“not so(as)+原形+as”而且 as.....as 结构前可用 just, almost, nearly, quite 等词表示程度：

二、“形(副)比较级+than 表示一方比另一方“更加...”，连词 than 后可接名词(代名词)、名词短语、也可接句子。

例：

Colleges and universities across the nation have decided to do more than talk about the rise in student cheating. 全国大学已决定，关于学生作弊的问题不只是停留在口头上。

Fructose (果糖) is a monosaccharide (单糖) sugar that is much sweeter\_\_\_\_\_.

A) than cane (甘蔗) sugar does

B) does cane sugar

C) cane sugar

D) than cane sugar

D) 为正确答案，本句为两种事物(糖)进行比较，前面一种比后面一种更甜(sweeter)，故应使用“比较级+than”结构。A) 不对，因为选项中的代词 does 无所指(与词前动词不一致)，不过本句空白处可填入“than cane sugar is”。

A) rays more than infrared (红外线)

B) rays are more infrared than

C) more than infrared rays

D) more infrared rays than

D) 为正确答案。本句中的比较级为形容词 more(much 的比较级)，被比较的两个事物为“hot objects”和“cold objects”，在所释放(emit)的红外线(infrared rays)的量上，前者多于后者。其中 more 修饰 infrared rays，它们不能被分开，故只有 D) 在词序上正确。空白后面为倒装语序，其中的 do 代替动词 emit，本句空白也可用正常语序，即“cold objects do”。

The activities of the international marketing researcher are frequently much broader than\_\_\_\_\_.

A) the domestic marketer has

B) the domestic marketer does

C) those of the domestic marketer

D) that which has the domestic marketer

C)为正确答案。比较句中，连词 than 前后，即所比较的成分要一致，应在同种事物间进行比较。一句所比较的是两种 activities，故 C) 正确，代词 those 代替“the activities”。

例：

The development of mechanical timepieces ( 時計，指钟表 ) spurred the search for \_\_\_\_\_ with which to regulate them.

A) more accurate than sundials

B) more accurate sundials

C) sundials more accurately

D) more accurately than sundials

B)为正确答案。本句空白处缺名词短语，作介词 for 的宾语，A)和 D)不符合条件，而且连词 than 前后比较的成分不一致；C)不符合逻辑，因为副词比较级 more accurately 从语义上无法修饰动词 spurred；只有 B) 符合条件，“more accurate sundials”意为“更为精确的日规”，此处无必要说出被比较事物。

三、最高级用于三者以上比较，形容词的结构形式是“定冠词+形容词最高级+名词+表示范围的短语或从句”，如：

Shanghai is the biggest city in China. 上海是中国最大的城市。

This is the best food that I have eaten. 这是我吃过的最好的食物。

副词的最高级与形容词最高级的区别在于最高级前没有定冠词。

#### 第四节 形容词和副词的特殊表达法

一、表示“几倍于”用 twice ( 两倍 )，four times ( 四倍 )，ten times ( 十倍 ) 加上 as.....as 结构：如

This one is four times big as that one. 这个是那个的四倍大。/ Our campus is three times as large as yours. 我们的校园比你们的大两倍。/ He has books twice as many as she does. 他的书比她多一倍。

二、“the same+名词+as”表示同等比较，例：

The lens of a camera performs \_\_\_\_\_ the lens of the eye.

A) in the same function

B) the same function as

C) the function is the same as

D) and has the same function

B)为正确答案。本句的汉语意思是“照相机的镜头和眼睛的水晶体所起的作用相同”。

The elimination of inflation would ensure that the amount of money used in repaying a loan would have \_\_\_\_\_ as the amount of money borrowed.

A) as the same value

B) the same value

C) value as the same

D) the value is same

B)为正确答案。本句的汉语意思是“消除通货膨胀会保证还的钱与借时

的钱同值”。

三、比较级前可用 many, much, far, a little, a bit, slightly, a great deal, a lot, completely 等词语表示不定量，例：

He has far greater influence on the people than that leader.  
他对国民的影响远比那位领导人要大。/She is slightly better today. 他今天好点了。

四、比较中的省略。

1. 同级比较中的省略

as...as 中，as 从句的省略结构，可省略整个谓语部分，保留主语，如：

She sings as well as her sister. 她跟她的姐姐唱得一样好。

可以省去谓语部分，保留主语和 be、have 等助动词：Susan has done as much housework as you have. (Susan 干的家务活和你一样多)。

可以省去主语和谓语，只剩下状语，如：It is not as cold in Beijing as in Datong. 北京的天气没有大同冷。

2. 比较级中的省略

than 从句也可以省去整个谓语部分，保留主语，如：Tom is younger than Jane. 汤姆比简大。(省去了 is young) /They say that blood is thicker than water, that our relatives are more important to us than others. 他们说血浓于水，亲属对我们来说比其他人更重要。

than 从句省去部分谓语部分，保留主语和 be, have 或助动词，如：The white collar workers earn more than the blue workers do. 白领工人比蓝领工人挣得多。

这时我们可以进行倒装，即将 than 后从句中的 be, have 或助动移到该从句的前边，如：After all, big changes are relatively easier to make than are small ones. 相对来说，大变动比小变动毕竟容易些。/The fact is that some drug addicts are much better able to cure addiction in each other than are psychiatrists; some convicts can run better rehabilitation programs for convicts than do correctional officers; some patients in mental hospitals are better for each other than is the staff. 事实上，吸毒成瘾者之间戒瘾比精神病医生的作用还好；有些罪犯在改造其他罪犯方面比教改人员强；医院里的病人与病人之间的沟通比医务人员与病人间的沟通还强。

than 从句可以省去主语和部分谓语，保留宾语：如：Grandma gives more candies to her grandson than her granddaughter. 奶奶给孙子的糖比给孙女的多。(省去了 she gives candies to)

than 从句可以省去主语和谓语，保留状语，如：There are more books in this library than in that library. 这个图书馆的书比那个多。(省去了 there are many books) /She is much better than yesterday. 她比昨天好多了。(省去了 she was) /Signs of dishonesty in school, business, and government seem much more numerous in recent years than in the past. 近些年来在学校、

商业和政府中欺诈的迹象很多。

than 从句可以省去主语，保留谓语部分，如：His speed of doing the work was much faster than had expected. 他干此事的速度远比想象的快。（省去了 he 或 we）

有时可以省去整个 than 从句，如：He is much healthier and happier. 她比以往任何时候都健康幸福。（省去了 than he was ever before.）

- 五、no more than...表示“只不过”；not more than...表示“不多于”；no less than 表示“不亚于”；而 not less than 表示“不少于”；more often than not 表示“多数情况下”，例如：

{ There are no less than five hundred people present at the New Year party.  
出席新年晚会的有五百人之多。（出席的人较多）  
There are not less than five hundred people present at the new Year party.  
出席新年晚会的只有五百人。（出席的人较不多）

During observations made over a fifty-year period, the power-out-put of the Sun has \_\_\_\_\_ than a few tenths of one percent.

- A) varied by no more                      B) varied no more by  
C) not varied more by                      D) more varied by not

A) 为正确答案。

- 六、比较级+and+比较级（后面不可接 than 从句）表示“越来越……”  
如：

Spring has come, and the days are getting longer and longer  
春天来了，白天变得越来越长了。

- 七、the more...the more 表示“越是……，就越……”如：

The better your health is, the more work you can do. 你身体越好，就越能干更多的工作。

- 八、隐含比较级 有时比较级并不一定出现 than，这时通过上下文可暗示出，如：The price in Beijing is rising every day.（北京的物价一天比一天高。）

- 九、最高级的使用，在有下列短语的句子中，往往使用最高级：

1. one of...; 2. of (among)+三者以上名词或代词；3. in the world（或群体名词），例：

The grape is \_\_\_\_\_ cultivated plants.

- A) one of the oldest                      B) the oldest one  
C) one which the oldest                      D) the one is the oldest of

A) 为正确答案。“one of the oldest...”表示“（历史）最长的栽种植物之一”，C) 和 D) 均不合语法，而 B) 选项中的 one 多余。

- 十、其他有关比较的习惯表达法：

1. “as+形容词（副词）+as possible”结构，表示“最…，尽可能”

能...” , 如 : “ as quickly as possible ” ( 尽量快 ) 。 如 : The best way to control rats is by seeing that they have as\_\_\_\_\_.

- A) possibly little nourishment
- B) nourishment possibly little
- C) little as possible nourishment
- D) little nourishment as possible

D)为正确答案 , “ as little nourishment as possible ” 意为 “ 尽可能少的养料 ” 。

2. “ sooner or later ” 是成语 , 表示 “ 迟早、早晚 ” 。

3. “ would rather+动词原形+than...” 是惯用句型 , 表示 “ 宁愿...而不愿...” , 由于连词 than 要求前后所比较的成分要一致 Alexander Graham Bell once told his family that he would rather be remembered as a teacher of the deaf\_\_\_\_\_of the telephone.

- A) than inventing      B) than as the inventor
- C) the invention      D) as the inventor

B)为正确答案 , 两个短语 “ as a teacher of the deaf ” 和 “ as the inventor of the telephone ” 相比。

## 第五节 实例与分析

1) Prior\_\_\_\_\_his departure, he addressed a letter to his daughter.

- A) to      B) of
- C) in      D) from

A)为正确答案。

2) Their watch is\_\_\_\_\_to all the other watches on the market.

- A) superior      B) advantageous
- C) super      D) beneficial

A) )为正确答案。

下列几个形容词在表示比较时后面用 “ to ” , 不用 “ than ”

prior to 较早的 , 较重要的

The task is prior to all others. 这项任务比其他所有的任务都重要。

I called on him prior to my departure. 动身前我去看了他一趟。

superior to 优越 , 高于

In math he felt superior to John. 他觉得自己教学比约翰强。

They were resolved to rise superior to every obstacle. 他们决心战胜一切困难。

inferior to 下等的 , 次的

These apples are inferior in flavour to those. 这些苹果的味道不如那些。

senior to 年长的 , 地位高的 ; junior 年幼的 , 地位低的 , 迟的

He is two years senior to me. 他比我大两岁。

Her appointment is junior to mine by six weeks. 她的任命比我迟六星期。

preferable to 更好的

Health without riches is preferable to riches without health.  
贫穷但健康要比富有却多病更可取。

prefer...to 更倾向于...

I prefer this to that. 我喜欢这个而不喜欢那个。

You sang well last night: We hope you'll sing\_\_\_\_\_.

A) more better      B) still better

C) nicely          D) best

B) 为正确答案。本例应使用比较级，即：“你昨晚唱得好，我们希望你以后唱得更好。”这里使用最高级“best”不妥，因为两者相比（昨天和以后）不可能出现最高级。此外，“more better”中的“more”多余，因为 better 已是比较级，more 只用来修饰多音节形容词或副词，但比较级前可加“far”，“still”等副词加强语气，如：He earns a much higher salary than I do. 最高级前可加“by far”，如：John is by far the tallest among us.

3) This \_\_\_\_\_ girl is Mary's cousin.

A) pretty little Swedish      B) Swedish little pretty

C) Swedish pretty little      D) little pretty Swedish

A) 为正确答案。

4) Policemen \_\_\_\_\_ very busy.

A) nearly are always      B) always are nearly

C) always nearly are      D) are nearly always

D) 为正确答案。

5) Kunming is usually cool in the summer, but Shanghai \_\_\_\_\_.

A) is rarely      B) scarcely is

C) hardly is      D) rarely is

D) 为正确答案。

当几个形容词共同修饰同一名词时（如例 1），它们的先后顺序是：限定词 数词 描述性形容词 大小、长短、形状的形容词 色彩形容词 类属形容词 表示材料形容词+被修饰的名词。例：

the first two books

the two rather beautiful pictures

some beautiful little red flowers

an expensive blue Chinese vase

a rather beautiful green Chinese woollen carpet

副词一般应放在它所修饰的成分前面（修饰全句的副词除外），例 2）中的 nearly 修饰 always，always 又修饰“very busy”，由于它们不修饰系动词“are”，故应放在其后。例 3）中空白处的“is”在此处为代动词（代“is cool”），被“rarely”修饰，故应放在它前面，此句还可说成：

Kunming is usually cool in the summer, but Shanghai is rarely cool.

在此句中，“is”是系动词，而“rarely”修饰“cool”。再如：

She seems more sensible than she really is.

- 6) More people will eat out in restaurants \_\_\_\_\_ they do today.

A) than      B) as  
C) when      D) while

- 7) Why is there \_\_\_\_\_ traffic in the streets in February than in May?

A) less      B) fewer  
C) few      D) little

A)为正确答案

连词“than”引导出的是比较状语从句，出现“than”的句子一定要同时出现比较级。“than”前后相比较的成分应一致，此外，“than”后面如果是个句子，还可用倒装结构，例：

Hot objects emit more visible rays than do cold objects.

“rather than”是固定词组，表示“而不是”，例：

- 8) He came all the way to China for promoting friendship for making money.

A) other than      B) better than  
C) more than      D) rather than

D)为正确答案。这里应注意：“other than”也是词组，意为“与……不同”（参见“代词”一章例句）。

- 9) I should say Henry is not \_\_\_\_\_ much a writer as a reporter.

A) that      B) so  
C) this      D) as

B)为正确答案。

- 10) "Do you regret paying five hundred dollars for the painting?"

"No, I would gladly have paid \_\_\_\_\_ for it."

A) twice so much      B) twice as much  
C) as much twice      D) so much twice

B)为正确答案。

英语中的同级比较由“as...as”引出，其否定式为“not so...”或“not as...as”，例9译为：“我认为，亨利与其说是个作家倒不如说是名记者”。考生应注意下列含有“as”结构或短语的句子：

1. as such: 表示上文所指明的事或人，例：

He is a child, and must be treated as such.

他是个孩子，必须被当作孩子对待。

2. as much: 表示“与...同量”，例：

Take as much as you like. 拿多少都行。

I would gladly have paid twice as much for it.

就是价格再贵一倍，我也会愿意把它买下的。

He as much as admitted the whole story.



他几乎全部承认了。

3.as many: 表示“...一样多”, 例:

I found six mistakes in as many lines.

我在六行中发现了六个错。

11)Anna was reading a piece of science fiction , completely to the outside world.

A)being lost      B)having lost

C)losing          D)lost

12)\_\_\_\_\_ for a quick decision, the chairman called for a vote.

A)Anxiety    B)Anxiously

C)Anxious    D)Anxiously

D)为正确答案。

形容短语(以形容词为中心,且不含动词)在功能上可以起修饰说明作用。第11)例中的"completely lost...world"可以视为形容短语(虽"lost"由动词"lose"变来,但在此句中已失去动词特征),起补充说明作用。第12)例中"Anxious...decision"起的作用与例11)一样。需要注意的是,如果只是单个的形容词,如:Nervous, the man opened the letter.这样的句子不妥,因为"nervous"不是形容短语,最好改说成:Rather nervous, the man...,或干脆说成 Nervously, the man....再看下面几个例子:

The man, quietly assertive, spoke to the assembled workers.

Unhappy with the result, she returned to work.

Glad to accept, the boy nodded in agreement.

Long and untidy, his hair played in the breeze

13)I won't pay \$ 20 for the coat; It's not worth\_\_\_\_\_.

A)all that much    B)that much all

C)that all much    D)much all that

A)为正确答案。

14)I can't but\_\_\_\_\_ to go.

A)to choose      B)choose

C)choosing      D)chose

B)为正确答案。

"this"和"that"除可作代词外,还可当作副词表程度。如例13)中,"that much"表示“那样多”(其中"all"修饰"that much",表强调)。再如: The weather isn't (all)that hot.天气(根本)没那么热。

They didn't expect to wait this long.他们没料到要等这么久。

例14)中"can't but"中的"but"是副词,表示“只有,只好”

We can not but try.我们只能试一试。

I can't but choose to go.我只好去。

I can not choose but go.我只好去。

## 第六节 练习试题

1.Quarter horses can start more quickly, turn more sharply, and

- run faster over short courses\_\_\_\_\_breeds can.  
 A)that the other      B)other  
 C)than other          D)of all other
- 2.No profession is more demanding\_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)than medicine      B)than medical  
 C)as medicine        D)as the medical
- 3.Galaxies and clusters of galaxies are the largest units\_\_\_\_\_the structures of the universe.  
 A)among      B)and  
 C)but        D)that
- 4.Maine has \_\_\_\_\_weather than most of the other states in the continental United States.</PGN0104.TXT/PGN>  
 A)coolest      B)the coolest  
 C)cooler      D)the cooler
- 5.Among these houses, Mr.Thomason preferred\_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)one most in isolation      B)in that  
 C)because of                  D)consequently
- 7.Willams Jame's brillisnt lectures helped to make him \_\_\_\_\_American thinker of his day.  
 A)the more influential      B)the most influential  
 C)the greatest influence    D)a great influence
- 8.Mincroscopes make small things appear larger than \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)really are      B)are really  
 C)are they really    D)they really are
- 9.\_\_\_\_\_, the most familiar to general public is the crimi-nal jurisdiction.  
 A)All the activities          B)Actively  
 C)Of all the activities      D)It is the activities
- 10.Although pecans are most plentiful in the southeastern part of the United States, they are found \_\_\_\_\_Ohio and Illinois.  
 A)far north                  B)north as far  
 C)farthest north          D)as far north as
- 11.Thomas Jefferson's achievements as an architect rival his contributions\_\_\_\_\_a politician.</PGN0105.TXT/PGN>  
 A)such      B)more  
 C)as        D)than
- 12.Ball-point pens require\_\_\_\_\_ than fountain pens do.  
 A)the thicker the ink      B)an ink and thicker  
 C)a thicker ink            D)the ink is thicker
- 13.Americans are eating \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables per person to-day as they did in 1910.  
 A)more than twice          B)what are twice as many  
 C)twice as many are      D)more than twice as many
- 14.Most substances contract when they freeze so that the densi-ty

- of a substance's solid is\_\_\_\_\_ of its liquid.  
 A)than the higher density                      B)higher than the density  
 C)the density is higher than that      D)the higher the density
- 15.Using new telescopes, astronomers have gained\_\_\_\_\_ information about the universe.  
 A)more accurate                      B)more accurate than  
 C)the more accurate      D)than more accurate
- 16.Alex Bradford is one of the world's \_\_\_\_\_ exponents of gospel music.  
 A)very most              B)foremost  
 C)the most              D)mostly
- 17.Of the two houses the family prefers \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)the most isolated one                      B)the one isolated more  
 C)the more isolated one                      D)the isolated one more
- 18.There are now \_\_\_\_\_ methods for studying color vision in infants than there once were.  
 A)more sophisticated than                      B)much more sophisticated  
 C)much sophisticated                      D)sophisticated
- 19.Freezing is at present one of the \_\_\_\_\_ of preserving meats and vegetables.  
 A)most methods are important  
 B)methods most important  
 C)most important methods  
 D)most are important methods
- 20.Many flatworms have \_\_\_\_\_ of eyes.  
 A)more pairs than one                      B)more than one pair  
 C)one more pair than                      D)one pair more than
- 21.Few of the people who live in the cooperatives\_\_\_\_\_ than they were as laborers.  
 A)is well off financial                      B)financially well off  
 C)are better off financially                      D)financial better off
- 22.She is older than \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)any other girl in the group  
 B)any girl in the group  
 C)all girls in the group  
 D)you and me as well as the group
- 23.The crane is\_\_\_\_\_ of the wading birds.  
 A)the tallest                      B)the tallest that is  
 C)which is the tallest                      D)which the tallest is
- 24.Wool is \_\_\_\_\_ characteristic on which to classify breeds of sheep.  
 A)most obviously                      B)obvious the most  
 C)the most obvious                      D)the most obvious that is
- 25.\_\_\_\_\_,William Shakespeare is the most widely known.

- A)With all writers in English
  - B)All writers in English
  - C)All of the writers in English
  - D)Of all writers in English
- 26.The photographs of Mars taken by satellite are\_\_\_\_\_ than those taken from the Earth.
- A)clearest                      B)the clearest
  - C)much clearer              D)more clearer
- 27.He speaks English, but not\_\_\_\_\_ his sister does.
- A)as good as                  B)so well like
  - C)so good as                  D)as well as
- 28.It is better to die on one's feet than \_\_\_\_\_.
- A)living one's knees          B)live on one's knees
  - C)on one's knees              D)to live on one's knees
- 29.They left prior\_\_\_\_\_ our arrival.
- A)at                              B)to
  - C)by                              D)of
- 30.He had \_\_\_\_\_on the subject.
- A)a rather strong opinion
  - B)rather strong opinion
  - C)rather the strong opinion
  - D)the rather strong opinion
- 31.This pair of shoes isn't good, but that pair is\_\_\_\_\_bet-ter.
- A)rather                        B)less
  - C)ever                          D)hardly
- 32.He knows little of mathematics, and \_\_\_\_\_ of chemistry.
- A)even                          B)still less
  - C)no less                        D)still more
- 33.\_\_\_\_\_, more than 200 houses and buildings are heated by solar energy, not to mention the big cities in the region.
- A)Alone in the small town
  - B)Inthe small alone town
  - C)Inthe alone small town
  - D)Int the small town alone
- 34.The project requires more labor than \_\_\_\_\_ because it is extremely difficult.
- A)has been put in              B)have been put in
  - C)being put in                  D)to be put in
- 35.The talk proceeded in\_\_\_\_\_ friendly atmosphere.
- A)a most                        B)most
  - C)very                            D)the very
- 36.The more we looked at the picture, \_\_\_\_\_.
- A)the less we liked it              B)we liked it less

- C)better we liked it                      D)it looked better
- 37.Which student is near the teacher? Malcolm is\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)much near                      B)still
- C)the nearest                      D)the near
38. In some countries, many people were killed by eating poi-sonous fish; \_\_\_\_\_others were crippled for life.
- A)more                      B)still
- C)the                      D)most
- 39.I prefer this diagram \_\_\_\_\_ that one.
- A)than                      B)more than
- C)rather than                      D)to
- 40.The sun gives us as much energy every minute \_\_\_\_\_mankind utilizes in a year.
- A)as                      B)like
- C)that                      D)which
- 41.She writes as \_\_\_\_\_ as her sister.
- A)clear                      B)more clear
- C)clearly                      D)most clearly
- 42.You are just the same \_\_\_\_\_ you were the day when I first met you.
- A)that                      B)like
- C)to                      D)as
- 43.Rather than \_\_\_\_\_the risk of losing his job, he came to terms with them.
- A)run                      B)running
- C)to run                      D)ran
- 44.The town was built in the side of a hill.\_\_\_\_\_the name Hillside.
- A)Therefore                      B)Consequently
- C)Accordingly                      D)Hence
- 45.For an hour or \_\_\_\_\_ she world walk up and down be-tween the stalls looking at everything.
- A)so                      B)more
- C)else                      D)another

#### 练习试题答案

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1.C)  | 5.B)  | 9.C)  | 13.D) | 17.C) |
| 2.A)  | 6.B)  | 10.D) | 14.B) | 18.B) |
| 3.A)  | 7.B)  | 11.C) | 15.A) | 19.C) |
| 4.C)  | 8.D)  | 12.C) | 16.B) | 20.B) |
| 21.C) | 26.C) | 31.D) | 36.A) | 41.C) |
| 22.A) | 27.D) | 32.B) | 37.C) | 42.D) |
| 23.A) | 28.D) | 33.D) | 38.B) | 43.A) |

24.C)	29.B)	43.A)	39.D)	44.D)
25.D)	30.A)	35.A)	40.A)	45.A)

## 第七章 情态动词

### 第一节 情态动词的用法

#### 一、情态动词的现在式在肯定句中的比较：

can 表示体力或脑力方面的“能力”、“技能”或根据客观条件能做某种动作的“能力”

Can you move that stone?你能搬动那块石头吗？

但表示过去的能力并已完成一具体动作时须用 were (was) able to, 如：He was able to do that without any help.他不需要任何帮助就能完成这项工作。

may 表示“允许，可以”，相当于 be allowed to, 如：You may go. 你可以走了。/Children may not stay outside after mid-night without their parents' permission.没有父母的允许，午夜后孩子不准呆在外边。

may (might) 可和 as well 连用，表示“建议”，译为“还是……的为好”，如：You may as well keep a certain distance from that mad man.你们还是离那疯子远点为好。/You might as well go home now.你还是现在回家为好。

must 表示“必须”或“应当”、“一定”，如：You must be there at three o'clock sharp.你一定要在三点整到达那里。/You must leave at once.你必须马上离开。

have to 加动词原形，表示“不得不”，“必须”，它比 must 更强调客观，如：Tom had to work into the deep night to earn a living everyday.汤姆为了生计不得不工作到深夜。

should 表示“劝告”，“建议”或“义务”时，译作“应当”，或表示“预测”和“可能”，如：He should take care of his parents as they are old enough not to live on themselves.由于父母亲老了，不能自理，他应当照顾他们。/He should be there now.他可能到了。

ought, 只有一种形式：即 ought 后必须加 to, 然后跟接动词原形表示“有义务”或“必要”做某事，译为“应当，应该”：

I feel that she ought to see her parents.我觉得她应当去看父母了。

dare 可以用作情态动词，后面跟不带 to 的动词不定式，这主要用于否定句中，它本身可有现在时第三人称单数词尾-s 以及-INH 分词 daring, 以及过去式和过去分词 dared。

#### 二、情态动词在一般时否定句中的用法：

can't (can not, cannot) 表示“不可能”，may not 表示“或许不”，mustn't (must not) 表示“不应该”，“不许可”，needn't (need not) 表示“不必”，dare not + 动词原形表示“不敢”。He can't finish his essay by this time.现在他不可能写完论文。/He may not sleep now.他或许现在没在睡觉。/You mustn't criticize her in that way.你不应该那样批评她。/You needn't come tomorrow.你明天没必要来了。

/He dared not meet his fiancée.他不敢见女朋友。

- 三、must + have + -ED 分词：用于肯定句，表示对过去情况一种肯定推测，表示“肯定，一定。”

You look so sleepy.You must have sat up late last night.你看上去这么困倦，昨晚一定睡得很晚。

Johny is always showing numerous little attentions to Mary these days.He must have fallen in love with her.约翰尼这些天总是向玛丽大献殷勤，他一定爱上她了。

- 四、may(might) +have +-ED 分词：用于肯定句和否定句，表示对已发生事情的不肯定的推测，相当于“可能，大概，”其中might 较 may 语气更弱，把握更小。

She might have gone to see her doctor last week, but I am not sure.上星期或许她去看医生了，但我不敢肯定。

Don't worry, your husband may not have been hurt seriously.别急，你丈夫也许伤得不厉害。

- 五、should (ought to) +have+-ED 分词：肯定句表示过去本应发生事却没有发生；否定句表示已发生了本不该发生的事。前者可译为“本应”后者为“本不该”。

You should have apologized to her for not soon replying to the letter.

你本应向她道歉，说明为什么没能及时回信。（可你没这么做）

Sally shouldn't have bought that hat.It looks terrible.

萨莉真不该买下那顶帽子，真难看死了。

- 六、can (could) +have +-ED 分词：用于表示过去的时间，说明某事可能或不可能已发生：

I simply can't understand how he could have made such a mistake.我简直不明白他怎么会犯那样的错误。

He is an hour late —He can have been delayed by fog.Of course, that's a possibility.

他迟到了1小时，可能因为大雾而耽搁了。

This poem can't have been written by her.She is only five.

这首诗不可能是她写的，她才5岁。

- "could +have+-ED 分词"有时可表示过去本来可以做某事，但却未做：

He walked there, but he could have taken a taxi.

他走着去了，可当时完全可以坐出租。

"couldn't +have +-ED 分词"有时表示无论如何也不可能做到：

I couldn't have called you.I wasn't near a telephone.

反正我也不可能给你打电话，我附近没有电话。

- 七、needn't +have+-ED 分词：表示不必做的事情却做了，可译为“其实不必”。

You needn't have woken him up.It's only five.

你其实不必叫醒他，现在才5点。

"must +be "表示对现在所发生事情的肯定推测，如用否定句或疑问句，



应使用 "can"或 "can't"

"can be"有时表示偶尔发生的事情：

It's already half past eight.He must be waiting for us at the gate.

What he has said can't be true.

Children can be very trying sometimes.孩子们有时非常讨厌。

"Could"有时表示“想要”的意思（用于肯定句）：

It's so hot.I could have a dozen ices.天气真热，我真想吃一打冰淇淋。

此外，情态动词 "may"与副词 "well"连用可以表示“有足够的理由去做什么事”：

You may well tell her what happened.你尽可告诉她发生的事情。

We may just as well stay where we are.我们留在现在的地方倒也不错。

You may just as well go as not.你去也行，不去也行。

#### 八、used to , had better, would rather 的用法比较：

used to 表示过去的习惯动作或状态，现在已不存在，其否定陈述句和否定疑问中，一般用 didn't use to 均可；而且，used to 还可与 never, often, always 等连用。注意：used to 与 be used to 的不同，后者表示 be accustomed to “习惯于某种状态”，如：

He used to drink.表示“他过去经常喝酒”而现在不喝了。

He is used to wine (He is used to drinking wine) at each meal.  
表示“他现在已养成习惯，每顿饭喝点葡萄酒。”

had better 表示“最好……”，后接动词原形，其否定式在后边为 had better not+动词原形，如：You had better not follow his behavior.你最好不要学他。

would rather 意思是“宁愿”，表示选择，肯定句后直接跟动词原形，其否定句是 would 后加 not，即 would not rather+动词原形；由于 would rather 表示选择，其后可路 than，如：She would rather go home.她宁愿回家。/Susan wouldn't rather stay here with him.苏珊不愿和他在这儿呆着。/She would rather sleep than talk rubbish.她宁愿睡觉不愿闲聊。

### 第二节 练习试题

1. It \_\_\_\_\_ around nine o'clock when I drove back home because it was already dark.  
A) had to be B) must have been  
C) was to be D) must be
2. Comrade Li \_\_\_\_\_ be in Beijing because I saw him in town only a few minutes ago.  
A) mustn't B) can't  
C) may not D) isn't able to
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ go now. It's getting late.

- A)had better B)would rather  
C)had rather D)would better
4. You should bear in mind that he is not so strong as he \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)was used to be B)was used to  
C)used to be D)used to
5. Carey didn't go to the party last night because she\_\_\_\_\_the baby for her sister until 9:30.  
A)must have looked after  
B)would have to look after  
C)had to look after  
D)should have looked after
6. Since she is angry, we\_\_\_\_\_.  
A)had better leaving her alone  
B)should leave her alone  
C)might as well leave her alone  
D)had rather leave her alone
7. It is cold in the room. They\_\_\_\_\_have turned off the steam.  
A)must B)ought to  
C)should D)could
8. Mary\_\_\_\_\_ my letter; otherwise she would have replied before now.  
A)has received B)ought to have received  
C)couldn't have received D)shouldn't have received.
9. The traditional goal of science is to discover how things are, not how they ought\_\_\_\_\_.  
A)to B)to be  
C)be D)have been
10. Although Oriental ideas of woman's subordination to man prevailed in those days, she\_\_\_\_\_meet with men on an equal basis.  
A)did not dared B)dared not  
C)dared not to D)did dare not to
11. John's score on the test is the highest in the class\_\_\_\_\_.  
A)he should study last night  
B)he should have studied last night  
C)he must have studied last night  
D)he must had to study last night
12. You \_\_\_\_\_all these parcels yourself. The shop would have delivered them if you had asked a shop assistant.  
A)didn't need to carry B)needn't have carried  
C)needn't carry D)didn't need carry
13. "Did you criticize him for his mistakes?" - "Yes, but\_\_\_\_\_it."  
A)I'd rather not do B)I'd rather not doing

- C)I'd rather not nave done     D)I'd rather not did
- 14.You\_\_\_\_\_yesterday if you were really serious about your work.  
A)ought to come                      B)ought to be coming  
C)ought to have come     D)ought have come
15. "We didn't see him at the lecture yesterday." "He\_\_\_\_\_it."  
A)mustn't attended                      B)couldn't have attended  
C)would have not attended     D)needn't have attended

#### 练习试题答案

- |     |     |     |      |      |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|
| 1.B | 4.C | 7.A | 10.B | 13.C |
| 2.B | 5.C | 8.C | 11.C | 14.C |
| 3.A | 6.C | 9.B | 12.B | 15.B |

## 第八章 时态和语态

### 第一节 时 态

#### 一、一般现在时

表示现在的状态，习惯或普通的、客观的现象或真理时，应使用一般现在时。

Certain layers of the atmosphere have special names .

A)which indicated their character properties.

B)whose characteristic properties are indicating

C)what characterize their indicated properties

D)that indicate their characteristic properties

D)为正确答案。本句表述的亦是自然界中的客观现象，主从句都应用一般现在时，故A)和B)都不对，C)不合语法，所以只有D)正确。

Igneous (火成的) rock \_\_\_\_\_ from the cooling and solidification of molten (熔化的) matter from the Earth's interior.

A)being originated      B)have originated

C)originates              D)originating

C)对，理由同上。

#### 二、现在完成时

现在完成时表示到现在为止的一段时间内发生情况，强调对现在的影响，可能是已完成的动作，也可表示多次动作的总和，或习惯性的行为和持续的动作，句末常跟一个表示到现在为止这段时间的状语。

The domestic dog, considered to be the first tamed animal, \_\_\_\_\_ with human beings since the days of the cave dwellers (居住者).

A) is coexisting      B) has coexisted

C) coexisted          D) had coexisted

B为正确答案。应改为现在完成时has coexisted，因为本句表示到现在为止这段时间内发生的情况（持续性的），最关键的是抓住句中的状语“since...dwellers”（自从...到现在）。

Industrial management is the aspect of business management that \_\_\_\_\_ most prominent in the United States for the past eight years.

A) was                  B) is

C) had been          D) has been

D为正确答案。理由同上，注意本句的时间状语for the past eight years（在过去8年中）。

#### 三、一般过去时

一般过去时主要表示过去某一时刻发生的动作或情况，句中通常有表示过去某一时刻的状语，如：

Oberlin College \_\_\_\_\_ degrees to both sexes in 1837, but coeducation in american colleges did not spread until the second half of the century.

A) awarded      B)awards

C) awarding D) awarded

A 为正确答案。本句显然是谈论过去的事情，且句中有表示过去的状语“in 1837”。

The operetta (小歌剧) first \_\_\_\_\_ as a popular form of musical theater in the nineteenth century.

A) to emerge B) emerging

C) has emerged D) emerged

D)为正确答案。注意句中表示过去某一刻的时间状语 in the nineteenth century.

#### 四、过去完成时

过去完成时表示在过去某一时刻之前业已发生了的动作或现象，句中通常会出现有表示过去某一时刻的时间状语，如：

Although she \_\_\_\_\_ law for only a little over eight years, Florence Allen became in 1922 the first woman to sit on a state supreme court.

A) will practice B) practices

C) had practiced D) has been practicing

C)为正确答案。本句的主句有表示过去某刻的时间状语 in 1922，用的是过去时，而空白处应填入在 1922 年前已发生的动作（修习律师业 8 年多），故应使用过去完成时。

Before 1970 many technological advances \_\_\_\_\_ in the field of computer science, which resulted in more efficient computers.

A) have been made B) made

C) make D) had been made

D)为正确答案。因为本句明显表示过去某刻之前(before 1970)业已发生的情况，而且又是被动语态。

#### 五、其他错用时态问题

A desert area that has been without water for six years will still bloom when rain \_\_\_\_\_.

A) will come B) came

C) has come D) comes

D)为正确答案。表示时间和条件的连词所引出的副词从句作状语一律以一般现在时代替将来时，但如果 when 或 if 引导的是名词从句作宾语时，则仍用将来时，例如：Nobody knows when he will arrive.

### 第二节 时态实例与分析

1) The teacher told them since light \_\_\_\_\_ faster than sound, lightning appears to go before thunder.

A) travels B) traveled

C) traveling D) travel

A 为正确答案。本句宾语从句所表述的是客观现象，所以既是主句谓语动词用的是过去式，从句也要用一般现在时。

2) He \_\_\_\_\_ somebody creeping into the house through the open

window last night.

A) was seeing      B) saw

C) seeing            D) seen

B 为正确答案。瞬间动词和一些表示状态及感觉的动词一般不用进行时，而用一般现在时或一般过去时代替。这些动词包括：

go, come, arrive, leave, start, sail, join, understand, find, appear 等。但一些表示方向及变化的瞬间动词可用进行时或现在时代替将要发生的动作，如：

We leave (are leaving) for California the day after tomorrow.

我们（计划）后天动身去加利福尼亚州。

3) The Browns are living a hard life because Mr. Brown has been unemployed since \_\_\_\_\_.

A) three and a half years

B) three years and a half

C) three and a half years ago

D) three years and a half before

C 为正确答案。在有由 since 引出的时间状语的句子中，谓语动词一般要用现在完成时。since 后面要跟时间的一点，而 3 年半是一段时间，故要在其后加上 ago，变为“自从 3 年半以前”。当然，如果 since 下面也划线，就可将其改为 for，因为 for 可跟一段时间。

4) \_\_\_\_\_ four years since John left school.

A) They have been      B) It is

C) It was                D) Those are

B) 为正确答案。这是一个固定句型，本句亦可说成“Four years have passed since John left school.”或“It has been four years since John left school.”。

5) The car \_\_\_\_\_ at the present speed until it reaches the foot of the mountain at about ten o'clock tonight.

A) has gone            B) has not gone

C) will be going      D) has been going

C) 为正确答案。有时我们常用将来进行时代替一般将来时表示预料即将发生或肯定发生的事，也可表示某件事已经决定了。本句表示：“这辆汽车将以目前的速度，直到今晚 10 点左右到山脚下为止。”当然，本句完全可以用一般将来时“will go”。

6) Come and see me whenever \_\_\_\_\_.

A) you are convenient

B) you will be convenient

C) it is convenient to you

D) it will be convenient to you

C) 为正确答案。在以 if, as soon as, as long as, when 等引导的状语从句中，一般要用现在时代替将来时。故本题 A、B、D 不对，其中“convenient”（方便的）的主语不能是人。如果 when 等引出的是名词从句，则应该用将来时，如：I don't know when he will come.

“be about to”与“be going to”意思相近，表示计划好的马上要发

生的事。另外，“be+to+动词原形”也可表示打算做的事，但后者还可表示责任、意向和可能性，如：

“You are to follow the doctor's advice.” (你应遵从医嘱)；

“No shelter was to be seen.” (找不到避难处)。

### 第三节 练习试题

1. Those who'd like to visit the exhibition\_\_\_\_\_ your names here.  
A) are signing      B) to sign  
C) sign              D) are signed
2. “Have those old buildings been pulled down?” “\_\_\_\_\_.”  
A) Not              B) Not so  
C) Not yet          D) Not already
3. “Do you stay at home watching TV with your parents in the evening?” “\_\_\_\_\_.”  
A) No, always      B) No always  
C) Not always      D) Always not
4. I had scarcely locked the door when the key \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) breaks          B) was breaking  
C) broke            D) had broken
5. The metal bar was supposed \_\_\_\_\_ to the right size.  
A) to be cut down      B) to have cut down  
C) to have been cut down      D) to cut down
6. The task is extremely difficult. If no one \_\_\_\_\_ able to do it, we will have to find somebody else.  
A) were            B) was  
C) is                D) would
7. Smith is to study medicine as soon as he \_\_\_\_\_ military service.  
A) will finish          B) has finished  
C) finish              D) would finish
8. At this time tomorrow we \_\_\_\_\_ for you in the office.  
A) shall have waited      B) wait  
C) shall be waiting      D) will waiting
9. There's no running away from the facts; they just have to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) face up            B) be faced up  
C) facing up to      D) be faced up to
10. When he was in the plastic plant, he \_\_\_\_\_ together with the workers.  
A) has worked          B) had worked  
C) had been worked      D) used to work
11. By the end of this month, the generating set \_\_\_\_\_ for

- a whole year.
- A) will run            B) has run  
C) runs                D) will have been running
12. "Did you write to Grace last summer?"  
"No, but I'll \_\_\_\_\_ her over Christmas vacation."  
A) be seen            B) be seeing  
C) have seen        D) have been seeing
13. Once you \_\_\_\_\_ that brand of whisky, you will never want to drink any other.  
A) drunk              B) have drunk  
C) will drink        D) drank
14. You never told us why you were late for the last meeting, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A) weren't you        B) didn't you  
C) had you            D) did you

### 练习试题答案

- |      |      |      |      |       |       |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 3. C | 5. A | 7. B | 9. D  | 11. D | 13. B |
| 2. C | 4. C | 6. C | 8. C | 10. D | 12. B | 14. D |

## 第四节 语 态

### 一、被动语态的构成

英语中只有及物动词才能构成被动语态，即“be+-ED 分词”，随时态的不同，“be”发生相应的变化，下表是 be 在英语八种时态中的变化形式：

When overall exports exceed imports, a country \_\_\_\_\_ to have a trade surplus.

- A) said    B) is said  
C) says    D) is saying

B)为正确答案。被动语态的构成为“be+-ED 分词”，所以应选 B) is said。  
The advantages of computerized typing and editing are now being \_\_\_\_\_ to all the written languages of the world.

- A) extended    B) extending  
C) extends     D) extendness

A)为正确答案。本句为现在进行时的被动语态，故其构成为“am/is/are being+-ED 分词”。

When a spinning ball bounces, some of the energy contained in its rotation \_\_\_\_\_ to its energy of forward motion.

- A) can transfer        B) can be transferred  
C) could transfer      D) could be transferred

B)为正确答案。本题为含有情态动词的被动态的构成，此类题在考试中出现极频。以“can”和“do”为例，其被动态构成为：“can be done”(一般现



在时)，“could be done”(一般过去时)“could have been done”(完成时)，本句讲的是普遍现象，所以B)是正确答案。

The seating of musicians in an orchestra is arranged \_\_\_\_\_ to produce the desired blend of sounds from the various musical sections.]

- A) the conductor of      B) from the conductor  
C) the conductor and      D) by the conductor

D)为正确答案。被动语态的后面常出现“by+动作发出者”。

## 二、语态的选择

### 1. 被动语态，例：

Conservative philosophers argue that the very structure of society \_\_\_\_\_ by civil disobedience, while humanists stress the primacy of the individual conscience.

- A) is threatening      B) are threatening  
C) is being threatened      D) threatens

C)为正确答案。本句应用被动语态，因为“社会结构(structure of society)”本身不可能发出“威胁”这个动作，它只能受到外界的威胁，注意后面“by 短语”的提示。

Experiments in the photography of moving objects \_\_\_\_\_ in both the United States and Europe well before 1900.

- A) have been conducting      B) were conducting  
C) had been conducted      D) being conducted

C)为正确答案。“实验”(experiments)只能被人做，故只能用被动语态，符合此条件的只有(C)，而D)构成上有误。本句的时间状语为“before 1900”，因此从时态上说选C)，即应用过去完成时。

Orchestral instruments \_\_\_\_\_ under the following types: strings, woodwind, brass, and percussion.

- A) grouped      B) can group  
C) can be grouped      D) to be grouped

C)为正确答案。判断主被动语态，关键要看主语能否发出谓语动词的动作。本句的主语“乐器”显然不能自己“组合”，故用被动态。

### 2. 主动语态，例：

Mild forms of exercise can \_\_\_\_\_ some of the loss of flexibility that accompanies aging.

- A) stop      B) to stop  
C) stopping      D) be stopped

A)为正确答案。和上例相同，主语“锻炼”本身也能起到“stop...flexibility”的作用，故应选主动态。

## 三、被动语态中的“by+动作发出者”

A letter of credit is often \_\_\_\_\_ companies to finance the movement of goods between countries.

- A) used by      B) used to  
C) using by      D) using to

A为正确答案。因为“companies(公司)”是使用“letter of credit(信用证)”的行为者，所以应用被动语态。

## 第五节 实例与分析

- 1) The idea that learning is a lifelong process \_\_\_\_\_ by philosophers and educationalists throughout the centuries.

A) expresses                      B) expressed  
C) has expressed                D) has been expressed

D) has been expressed 为正确答案，空档后面的介词“by”引出的短语更给了我们暗示要使用被动语态。

- 2) To understand the situation completely requires more thought than \_\_\_\_\_ thus far.

A) has given                      B) hve given  
C) has been given               D) have been given

C)为正确答案。注意，这里 than 后的从句省略了主语，而只剩下谓语部分。

- 3) If it doesn't rain within the next few weeks, the crops will have to be watered if they are \_\_\_\_\_.

A) will survive                B) to be survived  
C) to survive                   D) survived

C)为正确答案。英语中只有及物动词才有被动语态。survive 在当“活下来”讲时为不及物动词，故没有被动语态。它作及物动词意为“比...活得长，幸免于”，如：“He survived his wife for many years.”（他在妻子去世后活了许多年）；“The crops survived the drought.”

（庄稼未被旱死）。另外，诸如 happenoccur, take place, break out 等不及物动词或短语以及诸如 result from（缘于），belong to, consist of 等习惯上只用主动语态的短语都不用于被动语态。

- 4) The electric shaver \_\_\_\_\_ before it can be used.

A) needs repairing              B) should be in repair  
C) has to be repairable        D) must repair

A)为正确答案。动词“need”加“v-ing”可以表示被动，相当于“needs to be repaired”。这类动词还有 want, desire, deserve, bear, 以及“be worth”等。如：“The film is not worth seeing twice.”；“Your composition reads well.”有少数动词的进行时也可表示被动，这类动词有 print, bind, cook 等，如：“The book is printing.”

## 第六节 练习试题

1. No decsion has been made about that matter yet. We \_\_\_\_\_ it.

A) still consider                B) are still considered  
C) still considered              D) are still considering

2. Hurry up, or the tickets \_\_\_\_\_ out by the time we get there.

A) will have been sold        B) will sell

- C) have sold                      D) have been sold
3. The machine starts the second the button \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) will be pressed    B) was pressed  
 C) is pressed            D) presses
4. Mary is one of the brightest students who \_\_\_\_\_ from New York University.  
 A) is graduated        B) have graduated  
 C) has graduated      D) are graduated
5. It's difficult to please him because he is \_\_\_\_\_ finding fault with others.  
 A) now                  B) forever  
 C) sometimes        D) absolutely
6. No matter whatever \_\_\_\_\_, let me know immediately.  
 A) is happened            B) is happening  
 C) will be happened      D) happens
7. The cloth won't bear \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) to wash              B) washing  
 C) to washing        D) for washing
8. "Your daughter has two children, doesn't she?"  
 A) did marriage        B) was married  
 C) had married        D) got married
9. Upon your graduation from school, how well will you \_\_\_\_\_ for the job that lies ahead?  
 A) prepare              B) prepared  
 C) be prepared        D) are prepared
10. My pictures \_\_\_\_\_ until next week.  
 A) won't develop        B) aren't developing  
 C) don't develop        D) won't be developed
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ that she would come to see me; but she didn't come.  
 A) expect                B) was expected  
 C) have expected        D) had expected
12. Gregory told Mary that he \_\_\_\_\_ what he was doing during the vacation.  
 A) had just been asked    B) had just asked  
 C) was just asked        D) just asked
13. Are all telephone numbers \_\_\_\_\_ in the directory?  
 A) list                  B) listed  
 C) listing                D) being listed
14. I'll take down your name and address in case you \_\_\_\_\_ as a witness.  
 A) are needed        B) will be needed  
 C) need                D) will need
15. If one \_\_\_\_\_ by pride, one will reject useful advice and

friendly assistance.

- A) overcomes                      B) is overcome  
C) has been overcome      D) overcame
16. Nutritionists \_\_\_\_\_ goat milk to be rich, nourishing, and readily digested.  
A) consider                      B) is considered  
C) are considered      D) considering
17. Volcanoes \_\_\_\_\_ as active, dormant, or extinct.  
A) described                      B) are described  
C) being described      D) which are described
18. An understanding of phonics makes it possible to reconstruct the sounds of many words that are \_\_\_\_\_ by sight.  
A) not recognized      B) recognize no  
C) nor recognition      D) recognizes none
19. Scholars \_\_\_\_\_ about 3000 spoken languages.  
A) were counted      B) have counted  
C) counted them      D) who counted
20. Pluto, the outermost planet of the solar system, \_\_\_\_\_ photographically in March 1930.  
A) discovered      B) was discovered  
C) by discovery      D) when discovered
21. Ground plans and contour ( 等高线 ) map of the Earth \_\_\_\_\_ from aerial photographs.  
A) can be drawn      B) can draw  
C) to draw                      D) drawn
22. The values of a people, their customs, and their perceptions of the world \_\_\_\_\_ their language.  
A) are influenced      B) be influenced  
C) influencing                      D) influence
23. The scientific study of the motion of bodies and the action of forces that change or cause motion \_\_\_\_\_ dynamics.  
A) call                      B) is called  
C) is calling      D) called
24. Ellis Haizlip began stage career in Washington, D.C. \_\_\_\_\_ supervised the Howard University Players during their summer season.  
A) he was                      B) where he was  
C) was where he      D) where he
25. Colorful posters were \_\_\_\_\_ in San Francisco in the 1960s to publicize rock shows.  
A) print                      B) prints  
C) printed      D) printing
26. The southern tip of Florida would be tropical evergreen forest

- and swamp if it \_\_\_\_\_ undisturbed.  
 A) left            B) were left  
 C) leaves        D) is leaving
27. In 1958 Marian Anderson \_\_\_\_\_ her country as a United Nations delegate.  
 A) served        B) was served  
 C) to serve      D) serving
28. The tenor drum (次中音鼓) is used primarily in military bands and is normally \_\_\_\_\_ with small felt sticks.  
 A) play            B) played  
 C) to play        D) playing
29. The artist Scipio Moorhead \_\_\_\_\_ primarily in the poetry of Phillis Wheatley.  
 A) is remembered                      B) being remembered  
 C) that it is remembered              D) remembered
30. The importance of mythology within a culture \_\_\_\_\_ in the status of storytellers.  
 A) as reflected      B) reflected  
 C) is reflected      D) reflected there

#### 练习试题答案

- |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. D)  | 3. C)  | 5. B)  | 7. B)  | 9. C)  |
| 2. A)  | 4. B)  | 6. D)  | 8. D)  | 10. D) |
| 11. D) | 15. B) | 19. B) | 23. B) | 27. A) |
| 12. A) | 16. A) | 20. B) | 24. D) | 28. B) |
| 13. B) | 17. B) | 21. A) | 25. C) | 29. A) |
| 14. A) | 18. A) | 22. D) | 26. B) | 30. C) |

## 第九章 代 词

### 第一节 概 述

#### 一、人称代词

1. 主格人称代词. 主格人称代词即在句中充当主语的代词, 例如:  
Archibald Motley's artistic talent was apparent by the time \_\_\_\_\_ enrolled in high school.

- A) him      B) his  
C) he's      D) he

D) 为正确答案。此处却需要作主语的人称代词, 应为主格 he。Unlike road vehicles, Hovercrafts have no physical contact with the surface over which \_\_\_\_\_ travel.

- A) their      B) they  
C) them      D) they're

B 为正确答案。空格处作定语从句中的主语, 谓语为 travel。

2. 宾格人称代词. 宾格人称代词即在句中充当宾语 (含介词宾语) 的代词, 如:

Most of \_\_\_\_\_ know that conductors direct their orchestras with a baton, but how many are aware that they also direct with their faces, hands, and shoulders?

- A) us      B) we      C) our      D) we're

A) 为正确答案。因为前面是介词 of, 故用宾格 us 作其宾语。

#### 二、反身代词

主语与宾语为同一人或物时, 要用反身代词, 反身代词也可放在名词或代词 (主格) 后面 (也可放在句尾) 起强调作用, 例如:

Various animals have shells that keep \_\_\_\_\_ from growing beyond a certain size.

- A) themselves      B) them  
C) their      D) they

空白处明显指代 animals, 而它前面的主语 that 却指代 shells, 由于主语与宾语不是同一物, 故不能 A) 项的用反身代词, 应为宾格 them。

所以 B) 为正确答案。又如:

Benjamin Banneker's attitude in mathematics and knowledge of astronomy enabled \_\_\_\_\_ to predict the solar eclipse of 1789.

- A) himself      B) he  
C) him      D) his

C) 为正确答案。本句的主语为 aptitude, 而非 Benjamin Banneker (在此处作 aptitude 的定语), 而定语却指上文提到的人名, 由于主语与宾语并非指同一人, 应改用宾格 him。

Plants rid \_\_\_\_\_ of excess water through transpiration, the evaporation of extra moisture from their leaves.

- A) them      B) they  
C) themselves      D) their

C)为正确答案。空白处指主语 plants, rid 是及物动词, 由于主语与宾语指同一物, 故应使用反身代词 themselves。

### 三、物主代词

物主代词分形容词性和名词性物主代词, 由于后者在历届考试中尚未出现过, 故本章只涉及形容词性物主代词。形容词性物主代词只能在句中作定语, 修饰名词。例如:

Inventor Granville Woods received \_\_\_\_\_ first patent on January 3rd, 1984, for a steam boiler furnace.

- A) him      B) his  
C) he        D) himself

B)为正确答案。及物动词 received 后面已有宾语“first patent”, 空白处缺定语, 应用 his。

Jackir McLean's recordings have shown that he is one of the few jazz musicians \_\_\_\_\_ style of playing has kept pace with the evolution of modern jazz.

- A) which      B) who  
C) whose      D) that

C)为正确答案。本句是一个定语从句, 从句中已有主语 style, 空白处应用所有格形式 whose, 修饰 style 作其定语, whose 相当于 his。

Dolphins are warm—bodied; that is, \_\_\_\_\_ body temperature always stays about the same, regardless of the surroundings.

- A) their      B) they  
C) its        D) it's

A 为正确答案。空白处显然指代 dolphins, 而 dolphins 是复数, 故应改为 their, 以便使代词与被指代成分在数上一致。

Although adult education in the United States began in colonial times, \_\_\_\_\_ chief growth has taken place since the 1920's.

- A) its              B) so it  
C) but its        D) it is

A)为正确答案。物主代词 its 修饰 chief growth, C) 不对, 因为 although 已经包含了“尽管...但是”的意思, 再用 but 表转折意思重复。

### 四、不定代词

不定代词主要集中在下面几个(对)常用词:

1. every (每一个), every 只作为定语使用, 即必须在其后加上单数可数名词构成名词短语, 它不可与 everyone(每一个)混淆, everyone 相当于名词, 它不可修饰其他名词, 只作主语或宾语, 例如:

\_\_\_\_\_ knows that hospitals are institutions where the sick are treated, but how many realize that they were once homes for the indigent and the friendless?

- A) Every              B) Each  
C) everyone        D) one

C)为正确答案。every 和 each 不可单独充当句子成分, one 为主语时应加上一个由 who 引导的定语从句。这里 C) everyone 为正确答案。

\_\_\_\_\_ child in the United States must receive some form of

educational instruction.

- A) Everyone      B) Everybody  
C) Every          D) One

C)为正确答案。Every, 修饰 child。

2. much 和 many 分别修饰不可数名词和可数名词, 可作为代词和形容词使用, 例如:

Food seasoning plays an important role in the cooking customs of \_\_\_\_\_ cultures in the world.

- A) much      B) little  
C) every      D) many

D 为正确答案。因为被修饰词 cultures 为可数名词, 故其修饰语应用 many。

The general sales tax has been a major source of income for state governments, \_\_\_\_\_ of which derive more than half of their budgets from it.

- A) much      B) one      C) every      D) many

D 为正确答案。因为空白处所指代的是可数名词 governments(复数), many 在本句中为代词, 作非限定性定语从句的主语。

Data received from two spacecraft indicate that there is \_\_\_\_\_ evidence that huge thunderstorms are now occurring around the equator of the planet Saturn.

- A) much      B) little      C) every      D) many

A)为正确答案。因为 evidence(证据, 迹象)为不可数名词, 故应用 much 来修饰。

3. 其他常考的几个(对)代词:

(1) some 和 any 是表示不定数量的代词, 相当于汉语的“一些”, 这两词作定语可修饰可数名词复数或不可数名词, 其中 some 多用于肯定句, 而 any 则用于疑问句和否定句中, 其中 any 在否定句中相当于汉语中的“任何”。但有些表示请求、建议或反问等的疑问句中要用 some, 例:

Historians have never reached \_\_\_\_\_ general agreement about the precise causes of the Civil War in the United States.

- A) any      B) some      C) few      D) anyone

A)为正确答案。因为本句为否定句, (否定副词 never), 应该用 any, 此处表示“(没有达成过)任何共识”。

(2) another 和 other 分别表示“另外的一个”(an+other)和“另外的”“其余的”意思, 可以用作定语修饰名词或单独作主语与宾语, 其中前者只用来修饰或指代单数可数名词, 后者则单复数名词均可, 二者不能相互混淆, 例:

Lizards lack the built-in body temperature control many \_\_\_\_\_ creatures possess.

- A) another      B) other      C) each other      D) any another

B 为正确答案。other 用来修饰可数复数名词 creatures。本句是一个省略了关系代词 that(或 which)的定语从句, control 为名词作主句



中及物动词(谓语)lack 的宾语,同时又受其后面定语从句的修饰。

(3)one...another 和 one...the other,两者都表示“一个...另一个”的意思,所不同的是,前者中的 another 表示多个(三者以上)之中的“另一个”,“又一个”的意思,而后者中的 the other 则表示两者之中剩下的那一个,例:

Though Art Tatum was totally blind in one eye and had only slight vision in\_\_\_\_\_,he became an internationally renowned jazz musician.

A)another B)others C)one another D)the other

D 为正确答案。因为此处表示两者之中的另一个,Art Tatum 为人的名字,他只有两只眼睛,故提到“另一只”时应用 the other。(4)few 和 little,两者分别为 many 和 much 的反义词,表示“少,很少”的意思,有否定含义,即等于“几乎没有”,如若表示肯定的含义,则应在 little 和 few 前加不定冠词“a”,即变为“a few”和“a little”,例:

Because they are generally taken simply to obtain a recognizable and relatively clear image,most non-professional photographs demand\_\_\_\_\_equipment.

A)little B)few  
C)less D)more

A)为正确答案。因为 equipment 为不可数名词,故其修饰语应用 little, few 后面只接可数复数名词。

(5)a great deal (of)(大量)只作为限定语修饰不可数名词或在句中指代不可数名词作主语或宾语,例:

\_\_\_\_\_of gift-giving, barter, buying and selling goes on among the Narvjos.

A)A great deal B)A great many C)Much greater D)Many

A)为正确答案。空白后为不可数名词“gift-giving, barter, buying”,填“a great deal of”再好不过,其余答案均不可在后接不可数名词,其中 C)后不可出现介词短语,因为 greater 为形容词,其后应有被修饰成分。

## 五、指示代词

指示代词 this, that, these 和 those 用来代替上文已提到或指示眼前的人或物,在句中可充当主语、宾语和定语,例:

Today's libraries differ greatly from\_\_\_\_\_.

A)the past B)those of the past  
C)that are past D)those past

B)为正确答案。此题中的 differ from 意为“不同于”,相比较的对象为“现代的图书馆”与“以往的图书馆”,故应选 B),用 those 代替前面提到的 libraries(复数)。

The amount of pressure caused by the weight of a column of fluid is determined by the height of \_\_\_\_\_column.

A)these B)those C)that D)this

D 为正确答案。因为此处所修饰的是单数名词 column, these 后面则应

使用可数复数名词。

## 第二节 实例与分析

- 1) Our department was monitored by two supervisors, Bill and\_\_\_\_\_.

A)me B)I C)my D)myself

A)为正确答案。确定代词的主、宾格应以其在句中的成分为依据。例中的空白处与 Bill 并列，共同作介词“by”的宾语，故应改用宾格“me”，但此句若改为：Two Supervisors monitored our department, Bill and I.那么“Bill and I”就变为作主语“Two srpervisors”的同位语，用主格完全正确。

- 2) It was\_\_\_\_\_who came running into the classroom with the news.

A)he B)himself C)him D)his

A)为正确答案。例中空白处之所以为正确答案，是因为空白处是作后面从名“who.....news”的主语(由“who”指代)，若该句变为：It was him that the teacher criticized.其中的“him”就变为在后面的从句中作宾语(由“that”指代，从句主语为 the teacher)，应该用宾格。

- 3) Some people make more money than\_\_\_\_\_teachers, but few gain as much satisfaction from their work.

A)we B)us C)our D)their

例中空白处在比较状语从句中作主语(与“some people”相比)，该句说完整为：Some people make more money than we teachers make, 所以应该为“we”，以便和“teachers”一起作主语。

- 4) Various animals have shells that keep\_\_\_\_\_from growing beyond a certain size.

A)them B)themselves C)themselves D)they

A)为正确答案。使用反身代词的前提是主语和宾语(含介词宾语)是同一人或物。例中空白处在此处显然指代“animals”，但它前面的主语“that”却代“shells”(壳)，由于主语与宾语不同，故不可用反身代词，应该为宾格“them”。

- 5) Plants rid \_\_\_\_\_of excess water through transpiration, the evaporation of extramoisture from their leaves.

A)them B)their C)themselves D)they

C)为正确答案。例空白处指主语“plants”，由于“rid”为及物动词，且主语和宾语指同一物，故应用反身代词。

- 6) Even if they are on sale, these refrigerators are equal in price to, if not more expensive than, \_\_\_\_\_at the other store.

A)anyone B)the others C)that D)the ones

D)为正确答案。one 是个不定代词，它可代替由不定冠词修饰的名词或由 some 或 any 修饰的多数名词。

- 7) A good writer is\_\_\_\_\_who can express the commonplace in an uncommon way.

A)that B)he C)one D)this

C 为正确答案。理由同上。

8)Alone in a deserted house, he was so busy with his research work that he felt \_\_\_\_\_ lonely.

A)nothing but B)anything but  
C)all but D)everything but

B)为正确答案。

9)He is\_\_\_\_\_of an actor.

a)anybody b)anyone c)somebody d)something

d)为正确答案。

不定词有许多习惯搭配，表示特定的含义，重要的有：

1.nothing but：表示“只不过，就是，只有”，例：

He is nothing but a singer.他只不过是个唱歌的。

Nothing but a miracle can save us.只有奇迹才能救我们。

2.anything but：表示“根本不，并不”，例：

She is anything but beautiful.她并不美。

John is anything but a liar.约翰决不是个骗子。

3.something of.表示“略有”，例：

He has seen something of life.他略有阅历。

I'm something of a cook.我略懂烹调。

(试比较)

He is not much of a scholar.他算不上个很好(高明)的学者。

4.none other than：表示“就是”，例：

The new arrival was none other than the President.刚到的那人就是总统本人。

我们要注意 none other than 与 other than 的区别,后者表示“与……不同”，例：

I do not wish him other than he is.我不希望他改变现状。

The truth is quite other than what we think.事实与我们所想的不一樣。

5.“none”有时可作副词，表示“一点也不”，例：

We did the work none too well.我们活干得一点也不好。

6.有些不定词同时也是形容词，或有其他的含义，如：

He is all attention, and she is all eyes.他十分留意，她也注意力集中。

Everybody who is anybody(somebody) at all will be at the dance.  
(句中的“anybody(somebody)”在此当“大人物，重要人物”讲。)

10)They lost their way in the forest, and \_\_\_\_\_ made matters worse was that night began to fall.

A)that B)it C)what D)which

C)为正确答案。

11)They always give the vacant seats to \_\_\_\_\_ comes first.

A)who B)whom C)whoever D)whomever

C)为正确答案。

“ what ”兼具先行词和关系代名词的性质 ,即 what=the thing (things) that ,例中的 what 等于 “ the thing that ” , “ what made matters worse ” 在句中充当第 2 个分句的主语 ,而 “ what ” 是主语从句 “ what..... ” 中的主语。试比较 : Students that are encouraged to study at home will improve their classroom performance.  
上例中的“ that ”不可换为“ what ” ,因“ that ”前有先行词“ students ”。关系代名词后加上 “ -ever ” ,即 whoever, whichever, whatever 等 ,叫复合关系代词。它们起强调作用 ,都兼具先行词和关系词的作用。  
例 2 中的 “ whoever ” 等于 “ the people who ” 或 “ those who ” 此题不可选 A “ who ” ,因为 who 在该句中是关系代词 ,它前面没先行词可指代 ,故不正确。

### 第三节 练习试题

1. \_\_\_\_\_subject we talked about, it seemed that he was an ex-pert at it.  
A)What B)Whatever C)Any D)Another
2. \_\_\_\_\_ it is you've found, you must give it back to the person it belongs to.  
A)That B)Because C)Whatever D)However
3. The man over there is \_\_\_\_\_ our principal.  
A)no other but B)no other than C)no one than D)none other than
4. If we continue to argue over minor points, we won't get \_\_\_\_\_ near a solution.  
A)somewhere B)nowhere C)anywhere D)elsewhere
5. The size of the audience, \_\_\_\_\_ we had expected, was well over one thousand.  
A)whom B)who C)as D)that
6. Lots of empty bottles were found under the old man's bed. He must have done nothing but \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)drink B)to drink C)drinking D)drunk
7. Can you break a five-pound note? I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ with me.  
A)nothing small B)anything smaller  
C)something smaller D)something small
8. In some markets there may be only one seller. \_\_\_\_\_ is called a monopoly.  
A)Situation as this B)Such kinds of situation  
C)Such a situation D)A situation of this
9. I have been to the doctor's about my headache. He says there is \_\_\_\_\_ but I must lie up for a few days.  
A)something serious B)anything serious  
C)not serious D)nothing serious
10. Although \_\_\_\_\_ happened in that developed country sounds

- like science fiction, it could occur elsewhere in the world.  
 A)which B)what C)how D)it
11. I am sure that \_\_\_\_\_ you said is wrong.  
 A)which B)all C)this D)what
12. I will give this dictionary to \_\_\_\_\_ wants to have it.  
 A)whomever B)someone C)whoever D)anyone
13. He is \_\_\_\_\_ to speak the truth.  
 A)too much of a coward B)too much a coward  
 C)so much a coward D)so much of a coward
14. Water will continue to be \_\_\_\_\_ it is today—next in importance to oxygen.  
 A)how B)which C)as D)what
15. \_\_\_\_\_ would be a fairly long speech in a play is often presented as a recitative(宣叙部) in opera.  
 A)That B)There C)It D)What
16. Today's libraries are greatly different from \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)those of the past B)the past C)that are past  
 D)those past
17. I want to know \_\_\_\_\_ of the two tasks is more urgent.  
 A)whose B)which C)that D)what
18. For \_\_\_\_\_ interested in nature, the club offers hikes and overnight camping each week during the summer.  
 A)that B)those C)like that of D)these
19. Though he talked like a man of sense, his actions were \_\_\_\_\_ of a fool.  
 A)that B)those C)like that of D)these
20. China today is no longer \_\_\_\_\_ she was a few years ago.  
 A)nothing B)something C)what D)like

### 练习试题答案

- |      |      |       |       |       |
|------|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 5. C | 9. D  | 13. A | 17. B |
| 2. C | 6. A | 10. B | 14. D | 18. B |
| 3. D | 7. B | 11. D | 15. D | 19. B |
| 4. C | 8. C | 12. C | 16. A | 20. C |

## 第十章 连接词与从句

### 第一节 连词的用法

做这一部分题时，我们必须弄清连词前后的关系，即连词前后部分在意义上是并列关系还是从属关系；是顺从还是转折等。下面我们就常考的连词举例说明：

after 在.....之后

You will probably discover many others ~~a f t~~ ~~you~~ have tried these. 试做完这些之后你可能会发现很多其他东西。

Chichester did it all by himself, even ~~a f t~~ ~~the~~ main steering device had been damaged by gales(大风). 甚至在主要的掌舵装置都被大风弄坏之后，全由基切斯特驾驶着这只船。

Queen Elizabeth knighted him with the very sword that Queen Elizabeth I had used almost 400 years earlier to knight Sir Francis Drake ~~a f t~~ ~~he~~ had sailed round the world for the first time. 伊丽莎白二世就是用这把剑封他为爵士的。弗朗西斯·德雷克第一次环球航行之后，伊丽莎白一世在四百年前就曾经用它封弗朗西斯·德雷克爵士的。

~~A f t~~ ~~le~~ made observations for a week, Mr. Hobbs asked me for an oral report of my findings. 我观察一周后，侯伯斯先生要我口叙一下我发现的问题。

although(=though) 虽然.....但是

And ~~a l t h~~ ~~you may~~ not like it, if she chooses your doorway as her place to sleep in the night, it is as morally hard to turn her away as it is a lost dog. 虽然你未必喜欢，但如果她选中你的门郎作为她夜间栖息之地，从道义上来讲，你就很难将她赶走，就像你很难赶走一条丧家之犬一样。

One quasi bag lady spends about eight hours every day at the foot of the main escalator in a railroad station, ~~a l t h~~ ~~she~~ ~~g h~~ rents a room in a cheap hotel in the neighbourhood. 有位准流浪女士尽管在附近一家便宜旅馆里租有一间房，她还是每天在火车站中央自动楼梯下呆八小时。

~~A l t h~~ ~~de~~ ~~f~~ ~~er~~ ~~son~~ lived more than 200 years ago, there is much that we can learn from him today. 虽然杰斐逊生活在两百年以前，但今天我们仍能从他那里学到很多东西。

~~A l t h~~ ~~o~~ ~~si~~ ~~gn~~ ~~sh~~ of dishonesty in school, business, and government seem much more numerous in recent years than in the past, could it be that we are getting better at revealing such dishonesty? 虽然学校、商场和政府中的作弊和欺诈行为近年来比过去多得多，但是不是由于我们越来越善于揭露这类不诚实行为的缘故呢？

~~A l t h~~ ~~o~~ ~~the~~ ~~Re~~ ~~p~~ ~~u~~ ~~b~~ ~~l~~ ~~i~~ ~~c~~ may have been born in the East, it had spent most of its time and energies since then moving west.

虽然(美利坚)共和国诞生于东部，但从那时西移，它已耗尽了其时间和精力。

and 和，并且，可是，所以

It's important to set aside time for relaxation, hobbies, and entertainment as well. 还要留出时间进行休息，发展自己的爱好和娱乐活动。

Later when you begin to read you will recognize less important material and you may skip some of these portions. 之后，在阅读时，你就会知道哪些内容是不重要的，这样就可跳过这些不重要的部分。

as 怎样；像；如；当……时候

After all, eighty was a special birthday, another decade lived or endured just as you chose to look at it. 不管怎么说，八十大寿毕竟非同一般——你又活了十年，或者说又熬过了十年，是活是熬，全在于你怎么看了。

A different form of reading might also be done, as it was in the past: reading aloud. 也可以用不同的方式阅读，如像过去一样——朗读。

Sam set out to improve efficiency at the shirt factory but, as we find out later in this unit, his plans turned out not quite as he had expected. 萨姆着手提高衬衫厂的效率了，但正如我们将在单元后半部分发现的，他的计划实施结果跟他原先预料的并不完全一样。

Many educators feel that as students gain confidence in themselves and their abilities, they are less likely to cheat. 很多教育学家认为，当学生对自己和自己的能力有了信心以后，他们就不大可能作弊了。

Yet, when anything went wrong with my car I hastened to him with it, watched him anxiously as he explored its vitals, and listened to his pronouncements as though they were divine oracles—and he always fixed my car. 然而，每当我的汽车出了毛病，我总是急急忙忙去找他，焦急地注视着他检查汽车的主要部位，恭听着他的见解，仿佛聆听神谕一般——而他总能把我的汽车修好。

as...as 和……一样，与……几乎一样

She paused a moment and looked at the boy standing awkwardly as near the door as he could be and still be inside the house. 她停了一会儿，看了看那个男孩，只见他尽量靠近门口站，但仍让自己立在房内，样子很尴尬。

He has to feel that he's as good as and probably better than any other surgeon in the world. 他必须这样认为：他跟世上的所有外科大夫一样出色，或许比他们都强。

If what researchers are saying is true, a life lived without fantasies and daydreams isn't as rich and rewarding as life can

be.如果研究人员所说的是真的，那么没有想入非非、白日做梦的生活就不可能是丰富多彩和富有成就的。

as far as 就.....而言；只要

What does this mean as far as our flyiny saucer program is concerned? 就我们的飞碟计划来说这意为着什么？

As far as I could see, your behavior is unjustifitable.就我看来，你的行为是不合情理的。

He was content to go as far as he could.只要他能去，他是乐意去的。

They should be concentrated in one place as far as this is reasonable.只要合理，他们应该被召集在一块。

as if 好像

After succeeding in sailing round Cape Horn, Chichester sent the following radio message to London: "I feel as if I had wakened from a nightmare." 他胜利地航海到好望角之后，基切斯特向伦敦发出如下电文：“我感觉好像从恶梦中醒来。”

He jumped back as if he had been stung, and the blood rushed into his wrinkled face.他向后一跳，仿佛被什么东西螫了一下似地，他那张布满皱纹的脸顿时涨得通红。

He felt awkward and almost as if he alone were responsible for what happened.他感到很尴尬，好像他自己对发生的一切负责。

as long as 只要

But it is now thought that this is not so, and as long as the brain is given plenty of exercise it keeps its power.但现在人们认为，情况并非如此。只要大脑给予充分运用，它就会保持其机能。

I don't care, as long as she lets me be with her too.只要她能让我也能和她在一起，我不在乎。

as soon as 一.....就

Go over your notes as soon as you can after class.课后要及时复习笔记。

Yes, but we shall proceed as soon as the Grubstart gives us the added funds.是的，但俟格拉布贷款基会把追加的资金一拿给我们，我们就会立即实施这一计划。

as well(as) 也，以及，还；和；不仅

It's important to set aside time for relaxation, hobbies, and entertainment as well.还要留出时间进行休息，发展自己的爱好和娱乐活动。

Skimming helps double your reading speed and improves your comprehension as well.略读使你的阅读速度快一倍同时也提高你的理解力。

Review important points mentioned in class as well as points you remain confused about.复习课上讲的重点，还要看看你哪些不懂的地方。



For the first time Venusian scientists managed to land a satellite on the planet Earth, and it has been sending back signals as well as photographs ever since.金星上的科学家首次把一颗卫星成功地送上了地球，此后卫星便不断地发回信号和照片。

besides 除了.....之外

But teaching offers something besides money and power : it offers love.但教学还会带来钱和权力之外的东西：那便是爱。Jefferson believed that a free man obtains knowledge from many sources besides books and that personal investigation is important.杰弗逊认为：一个自由人除了书之外还可从其他地方获取知识，并且个人调查研究很重要。

both...and... 和；不但.....而且；两者都.....

Furthermore, it(weekly schedule)will enable you to plan your activities so that you have adequate time for both work and play.而且，它(每周日程安排)能帮你安排你的一切活动，使你有充足的时间学习和娱乐。

What makes it rather disturbing was the arbitrary circumstances both of my arrest and my subsequent fate in court.这次经历令人可恼之处在于围绕着我的被捕以及随后法庭上审讯而出现的种种武断专横的情况。

Yet, as we shall see later, almost miraculous changes have occurred both in grades of students, and in the earning capacity of salesmen —— when they were prevailed upon to change their self—images.然而，当他们被说服改变他们的自我形象后，正如我们后边将看到的，学生的成绩和推销员的挣钱能力发生了几乎奇迹般的变化。

either...or 或者.....或者；非此.....即彼

If a scientist holds an idea to be true and finds any counter evidence whatever, the idea is either modified or abandoned.如果科学家一直认为一种观点是正确的，而他又发现任何相反的根据，这种观点或者被更正或者放弃。

even if (=even though) 尽管；即使

Myra wouldn't forget her mother's birthday, even if sh seldom wrote at other times.迈拉尽管在别的时候绝少写信，可母亲的生日她是不会忘记的。

I knew that even if the case was one in which it was impossible to anticipate the problem in advance, I could handle whatever I found.我知道即使无法提前预测到这一问题，不管遇到什么我都会处理好的。

The man who conceives himself to be a “ failure type person ” will find some way to fail, in spite of all his good intentions, or his will power, even if opportunity is literally dumped in his lap.那些认为自己是“ 失败型的人 ” 总会失败的，不管他有目的还是意志，即使机会真的来到他身边。

Retirement often brings many problems surrounding the "What do I do with myself?" question, even though there may be no financial cares.即使没有经济上的顾虑,退休也会经常带来诸如“我自己怎么办?”的问题。

however 然而,但是

So teaching gives me pace, and variety, and challenge, and the opportunity to keep on learning. I have left out, however, the most important reasons why I teach.所说,教学使我的工作进程有了规律,使我的生活变得丰富多采,教学向我提出挑战,也给了我不断学习的机会。不过,我要教书的最重要的几个原因还没有讲到呢。

in case 万一

I shall stay in the hotel all day in case Mary comes.我要整天呆在旅馆,以防玛丽要来。

Take more clothes in case the weather is cold.多带点衣服以防天气冷。

In case she arrives before I come back, ask her to wait for me.万一在我回来之前她来了,让她等我。

In case I forget it, please remind me about it.万一我忘了,请提醒我。

lest 唯恐(从句中谓语多由 should 构成,有时用动词原形)

She began to be worried lest he should have met with some accident.她开始不安起来,唯恐他发生什么事。

He was watching me or something for an hour or two, drawing back the curtain so little lest I catch him, but I saw his face, and I think I can see now the anxiety upon it, the worried impatience.我看见他正从窗口朝外张望。有一两个钟头,他大概一直在留神我的动静;他只把窗帘掀开一点儿,生怕我发现他,但我还是看到了他的脸。我觉得现在我还能看到他脸上的忧虑神情,那种担心而且焦急的神情。

neither...nor 即不.....也不(可连接两个主语、宾语、表语、谓语和状语)

But neither the nursery nor the motel my parents bought later had provided enough income to send my sister and me to college.然而,无论是托儿所还是我父母后来购买的汽车旅馆都不能提供足够的收入供我妹妹和我上大学。

I have neither property nor money.我即没有什么家当也没有钱。

There will be neither rest nor tranquility in America until the Negro is granted his citizenship rights.直到黑人被赋予公民权美国才会有歇息和安。

She neither ate nor drank.她不吃也不喝。

Tom just came at the right time, neither too early nor too late.汤姆来得正是时候,不早也不晚。

nevertheless 然而;尽管如此,仍就

Nevertheless, perhaps people should not be spending so much of

their time in front of the TV.然而,或许人们不应花那么多的时间看电视。

There wasn't any news, nevertheless, she went on hoping.尽管没有任何消息,但她仍抱有希望。

no matter 不管怎样(后接疑问词)

For me, teaching is a red-eye, sweaty-palm, sinking-stomach profession.Red-eye, because I never feel ready to teach no matter how late I stay up preparing.对我来说,教书是个会令人熬红眼睛、手掌出汗、精神沮丧的职业。说熬红眼睛,这是因为我眼上无论备课备到多晚,总觉得备得还不充分。

I go out a lot because of my teeth.You know how it is : you pick up something in a restaurant and your teeth turn rotten, no matter how careful you are.我因牙齿坏了,经常出去。你知道这是怎么回事:只要你在饭馆里拣东西吃,牙齿就会被搞坏,你再当心都没有用。

no sooner...than 一.....就(以 No sooner 开头的句子要倒装)

The sun had no sooner started to shine than it was clouded over again.太阳一出来就被云遮上了。

No sooner had he gone to bed than the telephone rang once more.他还没到床上电话又响起来了。

not only...but(also) 不但.....而且

We will not only bring joy into other people's lives, but also, very often, add happiness into our own.我们不仅要给别人的生活带来欢乐,而且经常给我们自己的生活增添幸福。

now that 既然

The Russians might come in a few hours and kill them all——though most of them were already thinking of how they could escape—but in the meantime, for a brief spell, now that the Fuehrer's strict control of their lives was over, they would seek pleasure where and how they could find it.俄国人说不定几小时之内就要打进来,将他们统统杀掉——尽管他们中间大部分人已在考虑如何逃命——但此时此刻,既然元首对他们生活的严格控制已经结束,虽是短暂的片刻,他们也要及时行乐。

or else 否则;要不(就是)

You must go there at once or else you can not be able to come back in time.你必须马上去,否则你就赶不回来了。

My brother couldn't concentrate upon his guide books for matriculation of postgraduate very long, he was too tired, —or else too sleepy.我哥哥不能集中精力看他的考研书,他太累了——要不就是太瞌睡了。

provided (=providing) 以.....为条件,只要

She could go with us provided that she arrives in time.她如及时赶到,就会和我们一起去。

I'll go to the U.S.A, provided I have enough money.只要我有

足够的钱我就去美国。

scarcely...when 一.....就(scarcely 在句首句子要倒装)

Scarcely had he gone out when it began to rain heavily. 他还没去天就下起了大雨。

so...that 如此.....以致

He speaks quickly, the tone of his voice so commanding that it silences everyone.

他说得很快，他的声调是如此的威严使大家哑口无言。

With this(what he says)he strikes out, smashing his fist into WEISS's face in a blow so unexpected and so wild that WEISS, totally unprepared, is knocked down against the wall. 话音刚落，他便冷不防拔出拳头朝韦斯脸上猛地挥去，韦斯猝不及防，被打倒在墙脚。

so that 以便；以致

Furthermore, it(weekly schedule)will enable you to plan your activities so that you have adequate time for both work and play. 而且，它(每周日程安排)能帮你安排你的一切活动，使你有充足的时间学习和娱乐。

He could see that she had been patient all her life, so that now, after years of it, her lips were set in a gentle and saintly smile. 他看得出，她一生都很有耐心，经过多年的忍耐后，现在她的嘴边总挂着一丝温柔、圣洁的微笑。

He believed in simplicity so much so that he used only a safety razor and water to shave. 他信奉简朴，甚至于只用一把保安剃刀和水刮胡子。

I was looking for a temporary job so that I could save up some money to go travelling. 我在找一份暂时的工作，以便能攒点钱去旅行。

unless 除非，如果不

Unless are very careful, we can't do our work well. 如果不仔细的话，我们就不会把工作做好。

But he won't be much longer unless he has the medicines on that list. 但他不能活多久，除非有这单子上的药。

whenever 无论何时

He had a habit of telling me jokes whenever he saw me. 他有个习惯，每次见到我都要跟我讲些笑话。

I heard the story many times as a child, whenever my family visited Aunt Bettie in the old house in Berryville, Virginia. 她的轶事，在我还小的时候就听过多遍。每逢我们一家去看望她时，她都要讲讲她的故事，当时姨婆住在弗吉尼亚贝利维尔一所旧房子里。

whereas 然而，另一方面(表示对比关系)

She had never done anything for them, whereas they had done everything for her. 她从来没有为他们做过任何事，而他们为她做

了一切。

Whereas some people like rice, others like steamed-bread. 有些人喜欢吃米饭, 有些人喜欢吃馒头。

wherever 不论何处

He sat a little while somewhere, had something to eat at one of these places, then went wherever he had to go. 他在什么地方坐了一会, 在一个地儿吃了点东西, 然后去他该去的任何地方。

Wherever he goes, I will follow, and I don't care what will happen. 不管他到哪儿, 我都要跟着, 我不管会发生什么事。

## 第二节 实例与分析

1) am interested in\_\_\_\_\_you have told me.

- A)which    B)all that  
C)all what    D)that

B 为正确答案。定语从句前必须有先行词,第 1 例空白后不能填 which 或 that, 因为它们引导的定语从句前没有先行词; 选项 C “all what” 也不正确, 因为 what 兼具先行词和关系词作用, 若去掉 all, 空白处只填 what 就对了; 选项 B 中的 all 为代词, 作介词 in 的宾语, “that you...me” 作定语从句修饰 “all”。

2)You are just the same as you were the day\_\_\_\_\_I first met you.

- A)that    B)which  
C)when    D)how

C 为正确答案。关系代词一定要在从句中充当某种成分, 如例中若空白处填入 which 或 that, 指代 the day, 那么它在从句中就没有了相应的位置, 因为从句中主、谓、宾齐全。填入关系副词 when 后, 它就可以在从句中充当状语, 相当于 “on the day”。

3)The minister was the person\_\_\_\_\_.

- A)in whose honor the state dinner was given  
B)whom the state dinner was given in honor  
C)for him the state dinner was given honor  
D)whose honor the state dinner was given

A 为正确答案。例中的先行词为 the person, 它在后面从句中只有充当 honor 的定语, 故用关系词 whose 连接, 类似这样的句还有:

The minister was the person whose daughter was a translator.

The minister is now in the city where the accident occurred.

The minister is the person about whom we often talked.

4)Many species can communicate an amazing amount of information via sound, information\_\_\_\_\_both the life of an individual and the continued existence of the species may depend.

- A)which    B)on which  
C)where    D)why

例中的空白处应指代 information, 但它在从句中没有相应位置, 因

为 depend 是不及物动词 ,在 which 前加上 on 后 ,which 就可作“ depend on ” 宾语。

- 5)The new hotel has erected a beautiful building with recreation areas and conference facilities on the top floor\_\_\_\_\_the finest view of the city can be obtained.

A)in which     B)what  
C)that     D)where

D)为正确答案。如果选 A) , “ in which ” 中的 which 指代 floor , 但 “ in floor ” 讲不通 , 改为 “ from which ” 或 “ on which ” 都可以 , 但不如用 where , 作从句中的状语。

- 6)Not wanting to inconvenience anybody, I tried to get to the meeting early, but because of a traffic jam\_\_\_\_\_I was late.

A)in which     B)which  
C)that     D)where

A)为正确答案。B)项是不对的 , 只有 which 前加上 in 后 , which 就可作 in 的宾语 , 从句变为 : I was caught in a traffic jam. 因此 , 是否需要介词 , 以及需要哪个介词 , 要看上下文而定。

- 7)He studied hard at school when he was young\_\_\_\_\_contributes to his success in later life.

A)which     B)therefore  
C)where     D)so that

A)为正确答案。本例是由 which 引导的非限定性定语从句 ( 一般不用 that ) , which 指代上面的句子 , 也就是说 , 上面的句子是它的先行词。选项 C “ which ” 前没有先行词 , D “ so that ” 为连词 , 后面的句子没有主语。

- 8)\_\_\_\_\_is inconceivable that the boy might have stolen the money and fled.

A)He     B)This  
C)There     D)It

D)为正确答案。

上例为主语从句 , 主语从句分三种 ;

1. 由 “ what ” 等代词引起的主语从句 :

What I am interested in is collecting stamps and playing chess.  
( “ what...in ” 是句子的主语 , “ what ” 本身充当主语从句的介词(in) 宾语。 )

2. 由连词 “ that ” 引起的主语从句 :

That technological progress helps to relieve scarcities is a fact accepted by economists.

( “ That...scarcities ” 是本句主语 , that 本身无意义。 )

由于主语过长 , 更多的情况下 , 本句说成 :

It is a fact accepted by economists that technological ... scarcities. ( “ it ” 充当逻辑主语。 )

3. 由其他连接代词或副词引导的主语从句 :

How some animals find their way home is not known.

本句中的“how”不可换为“that”。当句子为肯定性陈述时，主语从句应由“that”引导；反之，非肯定性结论由疑问代词或副词及whether引导，试比较：

That Betty Ross made the first United States flag is widely believed.

When(How, why, where)Betty Ross made the first United States flag is still a mystery.

9)\_\_\_\_\_is no reason for discharging her.

- A)Beause she was a few monutes late
- B)Owing to a few minutes being late
- C)The fact that she was a few minutes late
- D)Being a few minutes late

C)为正确答案。本例为同位语从句，原句主干为：The fact is no reason for discjarging her. “that she...late”是一个从句，作fact的同位语，即是fact的具体内容。跟同位语从句的名词主要有：fact, theory, reason, doubt等。

10)It is because she is too inexperienced\_\_\_\_\_she does not know how to deal with the situation.

- A)so
- B)that
- C)so that
- D)therefore

B)为正确答案。

上例为“it...that(who)”强调句型，再如：

It is in the garden that I saw him. (强调状语)

It is him that I saw. (强调宾语)

It is I who saw him. (强调主语)

It is yesterday that I saw him. (强调时间状语)

11)\_\_\_\_\_we have all the materials ready, we should begin the new task at once.

- A)Since that
- B)Since now
- C)By now
- D)Now that

D)为正确答案。本例中的“now that”是连词，表示“既然”，相当于“since”。

12)Advertising is distinguished from other forms of communication\_\_\_\_\_the advertiser pays for the message to be delivered.

- A)in that
- B)in which
- C)in order that
- D)in the way

A)为正确答案。本例中的“in that”相当于“since”或“because”，又如：The higher income tax is harmful in that it may discourage people from trying to earn more.

13)What\_\_\_\_\_it rains while we are a long way from shelter?

- A)for
- B)if
- C)with
- D)time

B)为正确答案。本例中的“what if”可译为“万一...怎么办”，原

句意为：

万一天下雨而我们又离避雨的地方远怎么办？

### 第三节 练习试题

1. One should never lose one's heart when \_\_\_\_\_ with temporary difficulties.  
A) to confront      B) confronted  
C) confronting      D) confront
2. \_\_\_\_\_ we have finished the course, we shall start doing more revision work.  
A) For now      B) Since that  
C) Now that      D) By now
3. I have no doubt \_\_\_\_\_ he will overcome all his difficulties.  
A) whether      B) when  
C) that      D) if
4. The engineers are going through with their highway project, \_\_\_\_\_ the expenses have risen.  
A) even though      B) just because  
C) now that      D) as though
5. Write clearly \_\_\_\_\_ your teacher can understand you correctly.  
A) since      B) for  
C) because      D) so that
6. She can hardly avoid making mistakes in her homework, \_\_\_\_\_ hard she tries.  
A) for      B) as  
C) how      D) however
7. Henry forgot to bring his admission card with him. \_\_\_\_\_, he was allowed into the hall to take the examination.  
A) Moreover      B) Certainly  
C) Consequently      D) Nevertheless
8. Someone must have left tap on, \_\_\_\_\_ the water was running over and flooding the bathroom.  
A) therefore      B) for  
C) nevertheless      D) moreover
9. \_\_\_\_\_ born in Chicago, the author is most famous for his stories about New York City.  
A) Although      B) Since  
C) As      D) When
10. Give me your telephone number \_\_\_\_\_ I need your help.  
A) whether      B) unless  
C) so that      D) in case
11. There are two spare rooms in the building, neither of \_\_\_\_\_ has been provided with modern facilities.



- A)it      B)which  
C)them      D)this
- 12.Helen listened carefully\_\_\_\_\_she might discover exactly what John wanted.  
A)so as that      B)in case  
C)providing      D)in order that
- 13.Dress warmly,\_\_\_\_\_you'll catch cold.  
A)on the contrary      B)or rather  
C)or else      D)in no way
- 14.All\_\_\_\_\_is reasonable is not necessarily practicable.  
A)what      B)which  
C)that      D)who
- 15.The child was\_\_\_\_\_immediately after supper.  
A)so tired that he went to bed  
B)enough tired to go to bed  
C)too tired to go to bed  
D)very tired, he went to bed
- 16.If that idea was wrong, the project is bound to fail,\_\_\_\_\_good all the other ideas might be.  
A)whatever      B)though  
C)whatsoever      D)however
- 17.Humble\_\_\_\_\_it may be, there is no place like home, wherever he may go.  
A)although      B)as  
C)how      D)that
- 18.Take an umbrella with you in case of\_\_\_\_\_.  
A)it rains      B)the rain  
C)rain      D)raining
- 19.\_\_\_\_\_you understand this rule, you will have no further difficulty.  
A)Only      B)That  
C)Though      D)Unless
- 20.There was a teapot fashioned like a China duck out of \_\_\_\_\_open mouth the tea was supposed to come.  
A)which      B)its  
C)that      D)whose
- 21.\_\_\_\_\_on a clear day, far from the city crowds, the mountains give him a sense of infinite peace.  
A)If walking      B)While walking  
C)Walking      D)When one is walking
- 22.\_\_\_\_\_you return those books to the library immediately you will have to pay a fine.  
A)Until      B)Unless  
C)If      D)Provided

23. \_\_\_\_\_ the 1500's \_\_\_\_\_ the first European explored the coast of California.  
 A) It was not until/then      B) It is not until/when  
 C) It is until/that              D) It was not until/that
24. In case the house \_\_\_\_\_ down, we'll get the insurance money.  
 A) will burn      B) would burn  
 C) burns          D) burn
25. I don't think she'll be upset, but I'll see her in case \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) she'll          B) she is  
 C) she does      D) she would
26. The philosophy of science is as old as science itself \_\_\_\_\_ there have always been scientists who reflected on the process of inquiry.  
 A) why      B) for  
 C) even      D) that
27. Research into the dynamics of storms is directed toward improving the ability to predict these events \_\_\_\_\_ to minimize damage and avoid loss of life.  
 A) and thus      B) so  
 C) however      D) because
28. \_\_\_\_\_ the size or nature of a business, its main goal is to earn a profit.  
 A) Whatever      B) Of  
 C) Whereas      D) Because
29. Until the ninth century, written records were not actually separated, \_\_\_\_\_ in some literary writing, dots or points were used to indicate divisions.  
 A) in spite of      B) contrary  
 C) contrast to      D) but
30. Human behavior is mostly a product of learning, \_\_\_\_\_ the behavior of animals depends mainly on instinct.  
 A) whereas      B) so  
 C) unless          D) that
31. It's true that the old road is less direct and a bit longer. We won't take the new one, \_\_\_\_\_, because we don't feel as safe on it.  
 A) somehow      B) though  
 C) therefore      D) otherwise

#### 练习试题答案

- |      |       |       |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 8. B  | 14. C | 20. D | 26. B |
| 2. C | 9. A  | 15. A | 21. D | 27. A |
| 3. C | 10. D | 16. D | 22. B | 28. A |

4.A	11.B	17.B	23.D	29.D
5.D	12.D	18.C	24.C	30.A
6.D	13.C	19.A	25.B	31.B
7.D				

## 第十一章 前后呼应

前后呼应是英语的重要规则之一，也是初学者容易忽视的方面，因此考研把此类考题摆在了相当重要的位置。

### 第一节 限定词和被限定词间的呼应

这类题主要是关于修饰词（表示数目、多少的限定词）与被修饰词（名词）在数上的一致。

#### 一、冠词与所修饰名词间的一致

Like some other running birds, the gander (雄鹅) lacks a back toe and has a three-toed\_\_\_\_\_.

- A) feet      B) foots  
C) foot      D) feets

C)为正确答案。feet(脚)是名词foot的复数形式，但因其前面有只修饰单数可数名词的冠词a，所以应把feet改为foot，“a three-toed foot”意为“一只三个脚趾的脚”。

#### 二、数词与所饰名词间的一致

Even though Great Bear Lake in Canada is one of North America's deepest lakes, it is icebound for eight\_\_\_\_\_of the year.

- A) month      B) months  
C) monthes      D) menth

B)为正确答案。因为空白处前边有eight，所以用名词的复数形式，使数词和名词间保持数的呼应。

#### 三、不定代词与所饰名词间的一致

Electing honest and competent individuals to public office is really the responsibility of every\_\_\_\_\_in a democratic society.

- A) peoples      B) people  
C) person      D) men

C)为正确答案。空白处前面有不定代词every(每一个)，它只能修饰单数可数名词，而peoples(人、人们)是一个集体名词，表示两个或两个以上的“人”，如果它表示单数则意为“民族”，在表示此意时可以有复数形式poples，所以排除A)和B)。D)项也是复数，也应排除。答案只能是C)，这样才能和修饰词间一致。

#### 四、指示代词与所代名词间的一致，如：

The amount of pressure caused by the weight of a column of fluid is determined by the height of\_\_\_\_\_column.

- A) these      B) this  
C) those      D) whose

B)为正确答案。these(这些)只能修饰复数名词，但其后面的名词column(圆柱、柱状物)是单数形式，所以A)和C)都是错的。D)是用来引导从句的，也不对。为了保持一致，应该选B)项。

#### 五、其他表示数量、大小的限定词与所饰名词间的一致，例：

First incorporated in 1871, Dallas, Texas, had become the seventh

largest\_\_\_\_\_in the United States by 1976.

A)cities            B)a city

C)of cities        D)city

D)为正确答案。空白处前面有限定词为 the seventh largest (第7个最大的), 所以应改为单数 city。

## 第二节 主语和谓语间的呼应

### 一、谓语用单数的情况

1.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{名词单数} \\ \text{不可数名词} \end{array} \right\} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{介词+复数名词} \\ \text{插入语, 如 together with ...} \end{array} \right\}$  由于主语是单数名词, 其谓语也要用单数形式

2. 动词不定式、-ING 或分句作主语, 其谓语动词用单数形式

3. 抽象名词作主语或单数可数名词作主语时, 谓语动词用单数形式

4. 主语前由“each, every, no”等词修饰或“neither, each”作主语时, 采用单数动词[注意: “many a (an, another)+单数名词”作主语时虽然表示复数的概念但其谓语动词也要用单数形式]

5. 表示时间、距离和钱额等复数名词表示一个整体概念时, 谓语动词用单数形式

6. 以-ics 结尾的复形名词指一门学科, 如 politics(政治学), mathematics(数学), mumps(腮腺炎), statistics(统计学), acoustics(会计学), linguistics(语言学)等, 谓语动词用单数形式

7. 主语为“单数名词+with(as well as, together with, along with, accompanied by, including, except, but, besides)等短语的, 动词与前面的主语保持一致, 即谓语动词单数

8. one of (a pair of, a part of)+复数名词, 其谓语用单数名词

9. neither+不带冠词、物主代词或指示代词的单数名词, 谓语用单数; neither of+复数名词, 谓语动词用单数(在非正式场合用动词复数)

10. percent 表示抽象概念, 即使后面接复数名词, 其谓语也要用单数。

### 二、谓语用复数的情况

1. 主语是表示复数的名词或代词时, 谓语动词用相应的动词复数形式

2. 从句中的谓语动词应和从句中主语呼应

3. 名词复数+  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{介词短语} \\ \text{定语从句} \\ \text{+of+单数名词} \end{array} \right\}$  由于主语是复数名词, 其谓语动词要用复数形式

### 三、对等连词前后的一致

由 and, or but, than, both...and, either...or, rather than 等对等连接词连接起来的成分彼此间在形式上应力求保持一致。具体有以下几个方面。

1. 数的平行 对等连词接连起的名词在单复数形式上通常一致 and 和 both... and 连接两个单数名词，谓语动词用复数形式，either...or 连接两个单数名词，谓语动词用单数形式。

Both the male and the female\_\_\_\_\_working in the field.

- A)be      B)are  
C)is      D)bieng

B 为正确答案。

2. 时态的平行：在同一时间背景下，对等连词所连接的动词应采用一致的时态。

A line segment, which is part of a straight line, begins at one point\_\_\_\_\_at another.

- A)ending      B)by ending  
C)the end is      D)and ends

D 为正确答案。

Gravity not only causes bodies to fall\_\_\_\_\_their speed.

- A)and to increase      B)but also increase  
C)and increases      D)but also increases

D 为正确答案。

25)Nearly all trees have seeds that fall to the earth, take root, and eventually\_\_\_\_\_.

- A)generate new seeds      B)new seeds generated  
C)by generating new seeds      D)new seeds generated

A 为正确答案。

3. 对等连词所连接的各成分应在词性和形式上的呼应

The purpose of the research had a more important meaning for them than\_\_\_\_\_.

- A)ours      B)with us  
C)for ours is had      D)it did for us

D 为正确答案。

Metgods of flood control focus on preventing rivers from rising and\_\_\_\_\_.

- A)keep them within their banks  
B)to keep them within their banks  
C)keeping them within their banks  
D)being kept them within their banks

C 为正确答案。

4. 排列位置的平行，对等连词前后成分的位置应呼应

A widespread species, roundworms even thrive on the peaks of mountains and\_\_\_\_\_.

- A)at the bottoms of the oceans  
B)there are the bottoms of the oceans  
C)the bottoms of the oceans do  
D)which the bottoms of the oceans

D 为正确答案。

#### 四、关于几对容易混淆词组的用法

1. { “ a number of+复数名词 ” 作主语谓语动词用复数形式  
“ the number of+复数名词 ” 作主语谓语动词须用单数形式
2. { “ an average(total)of  
+复数名词 ” 作主语谓语动词用复数形式  
“ the average(total) of  
+复数名词 ” 作主语谓语动词须用单数形式
3. { “ a lot(mass, heap 等)of  
+复数名词 ” 作主语谓语动词用单数形式  
“ a lot(mass, heap 等)of  
+不可数名词 ” 作主语谓语动词须用单数形式
4. { “ these(those)kinds of+名词 ”  
作主语谓语动词用复数形式  
“ this(that)kind (sort) of  
+名词 ” 作主语谓语动词须用单数形式
5. { “ what kinds of+单数名词 ” 作主语谓语动词用复数形式  
“ what kind of+单数名词 ” 作主语谓语动词须用单数形式
6. { “ the rest of+复数名词 ” 作主语谓语动词用复数形式  
“ the rest of+单数 (不可数) 名词 ”  
作主语谓语动词须用单数形式
7. { “ 分数+of+复数名词 ” 作主语谓语动词用复数形式  
“ 分数+of+单数 (不可数) 名词 ”  
作主语谓语动词须用单数形式
8. { “ most of+复数名词 ” 作主语谓语动词用复数形式  
“ most of+单数 (不可数) 名词 ”  
作主语谓语动词须用单数形式
9. { “ pldnty of+复数名词 ” 作主语谓语动词用复数形式  
“ plenty of+单数 (不可数) 名词 ”  
作主语谓语动词须用单数形式

The book contained a large\_\_\_\_\_of information.

- A)deal      B)amount  
C)number    D)sum

B)为正确答案。限定词应和被限定成分间保持一致。下列限定词后只接复数(可数)名词 several, many, (a)few, fewer, fewest, a large(great/good) number of; 下列限定词后只接不可数名词: much, (a)little, less, leas, a great deal/amount of; 此外, every 和 each 后只接单数名词。

#### 第三节 并列主语与动词的呼应

一、谓语动词用单数: 当“名词+and+名词”结构表示一种事物或一种概念时, 谓语动词用单数

A writer and educator has visited our school. 一位作家兼教育学家参观了我们的学校。

Bread and butter is nutritious. 面包黄油很有营养。

Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy. 早睡早起使人健康。

二、在“名(代)词+or (nor, not only...but also 等)+名(代)词”结构后的动词一般与 or 后的名(代)词呼应

Not only he but also I am surprised. /One or two days are enough to see the city. /Either I or he is in the wrong. /Are you or he to blame?

#### 第四节 练习试题

1. Eggs, though nourishing, have\_\_\_\_\_of fat content.  
A) large number      B) a large number  
C) the high amount      D) a high amount
2. If law and order\_\_\_\_\_not preserved, neither the citizen nor his property is safe.  
A) is      B) are  
C) was      D) were
3. Whether or not the new plan will yield any positive results\_\_\_\_\_to be seen.  
A) remain      B) remains  
C) is remained      D) have remained
4. “Where should I send my application?”  
“the Personnel Office is the place\_\_\_\_\_”  
A) to sent it      B) sent it to  
C) to send it to      D) for sending it
5. \_\_\_\_\_to the Beijing Zoo.  
A) All but he and I are going  
B) All but him and me are going  
C) All but he and I am going  
D) All but him and I are going
6. The amount of money spent on cosmetics, according to some authorities, has exceeded\_\_\_\_\_spent on public health.  
A) one      B) those  
C) it      D) that
7. The culture and customs of America are more like\_\_\_\_\_of England than any other country.  
A) that      B) what  
C) which      D) those
8. Walking briskly for thirty minutes will burn as many calories as \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) to run for fifteen minutes  
B) running for fifteen minutes  
C) you run for fifteen minutes



- D) fifteen-minute walking
9. Sound travels \_\_\_\_\_ air.  
A) faster through water than through  
B) faster than through water and  
C) through water faster and  
D) where it is faster through water than through
10. A widespread species, roundworms even thrive on the peaks of mountains and \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) at the bottoms of the oceans  
B) there are the bottoms of the oceans  
C) the bottoms of the oceans do  
D) which the bottoms of the oceans
11. A well-rounded musician should be able to play music, arrange music, and \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) also composing music      B) to compose music  
C) compose music              D) composes music
12. To balance the budget and \_\_\_\_\_ are two goals of the elected official.  
A) providing jobs      B) government provides jobs  
C) to provide jobs      D) jobs are got
13. She invited all \_\_\_\_\_ who had been in her class last term.  
A) that      B) those  
C) one      D) ones
14. The replacement of shops such as the grocer's and chemist's by cafes \_\_\_\_\_ the housewives with insufficient facilities for shopping.  
A) leave              B) has left  
C) have left      D) is leaving
15. A line segment, which is part of a straight line, begins at one point \_\_\_\_\_ at another.  
A) ending              B) by ending  
C) the end is      D) and ends
16. He preferred to write the letter by hand \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) to typing it      B) than type it  
C) to type it      D) rather than type it
17. Gravity not only causes bodies to fall \_\_\_\_\_ their speed.  
A) and to increase      C) and increases  
B) but also increase      D) but also increases
18. Nearly all trees have seeds that fall to the earth, take root, and eventually \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) generate new seeds      B) new seeds generated  
C) by generating new seeds      D) new seeds generated there
19. The opening section of a sonata is the longest and \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) introduces its principal theme

- B) its principal theme introduced  
 C) being introduced its principal theme  
 D) its principal theme introducing
20. The welfare department, as well as the other social services, will have \_\_\_\_\_ budget cut.  
 A) their      B) his  
 C) its        D) our
21. Guava fruit is round or \_\_\_\_\_ and about the size of a hen's egg.  
 A) shape of a pear      B) shaped pear  
 C) pear-shaped        D) pear in shape
22. The purpose of the research had a more important meaning for them than \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) ours                      B) with us  
 C) for ours it had      D) it did for us
23. Methods of flood control focus on preventing rivers from rising and \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) keep them within their banks  
 B) to keep them within their banks  
 C) keeping them within their banks  
 D) being kept them within their banks
24. Western Nebraska generally receives less snow than Eastern Nebraska \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) does      B) can  
 C) is        D) has
25. The first performers in films are figures \_\_\_\_\_ than of life.  
 A) mostly legend      B) legendarily more  
 C) more of legend      D) more legendary

#### 练习试题答案

- |      |       |       |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. D | 6. D  | 11. C | 16. D | 21. C |
| 2. A | 7. D  | 12. C | 17. D | 22. D |
| 3. B | 8. B  | 13. B | 18. A | 23. C |
| 4. C | 9. A  | 14. B | 19. A | 24. A |
| 5. A | 10. A | 15. D | 20. C | 25. C |

## 第十二章 倒装句

英语句子的一般语序为“主语部分+谓语部分”。如果把谓语放到主语前面，我们称之为倒装。倒装分为完全倒装和部分倒装。把谓语部分完全放到主语前称为完全倒装；把助动词或情态动词放在主语之前，我们称之为部分倒装。倒装有多种原因，如：在问句中（Where did he go?），在 there+be 结构里，在以 here（这里）（Here is another one.），there（那里）（There is a dog at the door.）等副词开头的某些句子里，在祝愿句里（Long live paece!），在有些感叹句中（Here comes he bus!）。还有主语部分较长时需要倒装，强调句子的某一成分时需要倒装等等。我们在这里只讨论考研中经常考的倒装情况：

### 第一节 关于倒装的几种情况

一、代词 neither, nor, no more, 用于后面分句句首，但前面分句必须是否定句，且后面分句不仅用倒装结构，而且动词（包括助动词）必须和前句保持一致。so 作句首的分句前面须是肯定句。

否定形式：neither (nor)+be, have, 助动词或情态动词+主语；肯定形式：so+be, have, 助动词或情态动词+主语。如：

He can't speak German, (and) neither can I. 他不会说德语，我也不会。

You haven't finished reading it, no more have I. 你没看完，我也一样（没看完）。

She is a bit nervous, (and) so am I. 他有点紧张，我也是。

Wood doesn't conduct electricity, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) so doesn't rubber      B) also doesn't rubber  
C) nor does rubber      D) nor rubber does

C)为正确答案。

They have all got up, and \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) Jack has too      B) so has Jack  
C) Jack hasn't      D) also has Jack

B)为正确答案。

但 than 和 as 后面的句子倒装一般较少见，例如：

John plays tennis better than Tom (does).

John plays tennis better than does Tom.

John plays tennis as well as Tom (does).

John plays tennis as well as does Tom.

Air occupies space as any other fluid does.

Air occupies space as does any other fluid.

二、虚拟结构中的条件从句省去 if 时，were, had 和 should 要移至主语之前。（见第四章“虚拟语气”第二节）

三、在状语置于句首时，有“状语+倒装结构”，主要有以下几种情况：

### 1. 某些副词+倒装结构

only 位于句子的开头，如果 only 修饰介词短语或状语从句，那么句子应倒装，如：

Only by working hard can we make substantial contribution to scientific discovery.

我们只有努力才能对科学发现作出重大贡献。

Only after we have lost our health will we begin to realize its value.

只有失去健康后我们才会开始意识到它的价值。

如果 only 修饰的是句子的主语，则不必用倒装句，如：

Only he managed to pass the exam. 只有他设法通过了考试。

此外，以 so+形容词，then，often 等开头的句子也要主谓倒装，如：

Often did we ask her not to be late for school.

So elaborately carved is the tombstone. 墓碑雕刻得如此细致。

Then did I throw myself into the chair, exhausted. 这时我累极了，一屁股坐到椅子上。

He works so diligently that he often forgets to eat and sleep.

So diligently does he work that he often forgets to eat and sleep.

She felt so embarrassed that she could not say a word.

So embarrassed did she feel that she could not say a word.

Only when you have acquired a good knowledge of grammar \_\_\_\_\_ write correctly.

A) you will      B) you can

C) can you      D) can't you

答案：C.

Only in recent years \_\_\_\_\_ begun to realize that wild dogs, kept within bounds, often do more good than harm.

A) people have      B) since people

C) have people      D) people who have

答案：C.

### 2. 介词短语+倒装结构

以下列否定意义的短语作句首的句子应用倒装语序：under no circumstances, on no account, in no way, at no point, at no time, in no sense, 这些短语都表示“绝不”，如：

On no account my reference books be removed from the library.  
绝不可将参考书带出图书馆。

At no time shall a student cheat at his exam. 学生任何时候都不允许考试作弊。

此外，以 not until, not only(与 but also 连用) 开头的句子也应倒装，如：

Not until midnight did it stop raining. 直到午夜雨才停。

Not only was he a first-rate mathematician, but he also excelled at chess.

他不仅是一流的数学家，且精通棋艺。  
上述短语若用于句子中间，则不必用倒装。

### 3. 以表示否定的词语在句首+倒装结构

以否定副词开的句子在大多数情况下应将主谓语序倒装。常见的否定副词有：little, never, seldom, nowhere, rarely, not once, seldom, scarcely, no sooner, not only 等。例：

He little knows what may happen.

Little does he know what may happen.

I shall never forget the help you gave me.

Never shall I forget the help you gave me.

We have seldom met her recently.

Seldom have we met her recently.

You can nowhere on the globe find a better place.

Nowhere on the globe can you find a better place.

The temperature here rarely goes above forty.

Rarely does the temperature here go above forty.否定副词如果只是限定句子主语而非修饰全句，则子不必倒装，例如：

Hardly anyone has seen a man who eats ants.

此外，某些否定词，如 no、not，修饰主语时是形容词，句子也不必倒装，例：

No survivor has yet been found.

Not all that glitters is gold.

但当“not a / many a +名词”位于句首时，要用倒装语序，如：

Not a word did he say at the meeting.会上他一句话也没说。

Many a time has the manager emphasized this point.经理多次强调这一点。

barely / hardly / scarcely...when / before 及 no sooner+than 位于句首时，为固定的倒装结构，表示一件事紧接着另一件事发生，相当于汉语的“一……就……”。

\_\_\_\_\_ to speak when the audience interrupted him.

A) Hardly had he begun      B) No sooner had he begun

C) Not until he began      D) Scarcely did he begin

答案 A.

Scarcely had they settled themselves in their seats in the theatre  
\_\_\_\_\_ the curtain went up.

A) than      B) when

C) before      D) as soon as

答案：B.

例 2 试题本身有误，因为选项 B、C 都正确，也就是说，barely, hardly 和 scarcely 既可与 when 也可以与 before 搭配。no sooner 则必须和 than 搭配。时态上，主句一般用过去完成时而从句（when, before 或 than 引导）用过去时，但表示一般情况时，主句也可用现在完成时，从句用一般现在时。例：

Scarcely has a forgnier set foot in the United States before

they ask him what he thinks of the country.

外国人刚去美国，他们就会问他对该国的看法。

No sooner had I left the house than it began to rain.我刚离开屋子天就下起雨来。

上述句中，若 barely, hardly, scarcely, no sooner 用于句中，则不必倒装，例：

I had no sooner left the house than it began to rain.

下面一些倒装句也应引起考生足够的重视：

An old house stood at the side of the hill.

At the side of the hill stood an old house.

(本句是为了保持句子平衡，避免主语过长。)

The measure our company took to prevent loss was absurd.

Absurd was the measure our company took to prevent loss.

Those who suffer are blessed.

Blessed are those who suffer.

(上两例用来强调主语补足语。)

四、正式文体中，为了强调从句中的某个成分(通常为补语或状语)，可将其放在句首，从句由连词 as 引导，但这时不用倒装。

Difficult as the task was, they managed to accomplish it in time.

尽管任务艰巨，他们仍设法按时完成了。

Try as you will, you won't be able to succeed.

尽管你愿意试试，但不会成功。

\_\_\_\_\_, he does get irritated with her sometimes.

A) As he likes her much

B) Much though he likes her

C) Though much he likes her

D) Much as he likes her.

D)为正确答案。本题中选项 A) 在语法上正确，但从逻辑上讲不通。如果 as 表原因，那么前后句意思矛盾，B) 中的 though (包括 although) 不能用于含有倒装结构的强调句中；选项 C 如果改成“Though he likes her much”就对了。选项 D 正确，从句表让步，意思为：尽管他非常喜欢她，可有时也被她惹得发怒。

Tired \_\_\_\_\_ he was, we decided not to disturb him.

A) though      B) although

C) as          D) like

C)为正确答案。本句中从句表示原因，可译为：由于他累了，我们决定不去打扰他。

## 第二节 练习试题

1. Only when you have obtained sufficient data \_\_\_\_\_ come to a sound conclusion.

A) can you      B) would you

C) you will      D) you can

2. \_\_\_\_\_ do we go for picnics.  
A) Certainly      B) sometimes  
C) Seldom          D) Once
3. Humble \_\_\_\_\_ it may be , there is no place like home.  
A) although      B) as  
C) how            D) that
4. If you don't agree to our plan, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) neither they will      B) so won't they  
C) neither will they      D) so they won't neither
5. Hardly had he finished his speech \_\_\_\_\_ the audience started cheering.  
A) and            B) when  
C) than          D) as
6. \_\_\_\_\_ France Viuard an excellent political speaker but she was also among the first members of the populist party.  
A) Not only      B) If only  
C) Only            D) Not only was
7. So little \_\_\_\_\_ about mathematics that the lecture was completely beyond me.  
A) I know            B) I knew  
C) do I know      D) did I know
8. \_\_\_\_\_ a partial answer.  
A) Will be found in this chapter  
B) In this chapter found will be  
C) In this chapter will be found  
D) This chapter will be found in
9. Only after a baby seal is pushed into the sea by its mother \_\_\_\_\_ to swim.  
A) how will it learn      B) it will learn how  
C) will it learn how      D) and it learns how
10. \_\_\_\_\_ was the Erie Canal an engineering triumph, it quickly proved a financial success as well.  
A) Not only      B) Only  
C) It                D) Neither
11. \_\_\_\_\_ received law degrees as today.  
A) Never so many women have  
B) Never have so many women  
C) The women aren't ever  
D) Women who have never
12. \_\_\_\_\_ that they made it into a film.  
A) So great was the success of the book  
B) So the success of the book was great  
C) Was the success of the book so great  
D) So great the success of the book was

13. So involved with their computers \_\_\_\_\_ that leaders at summer computer camps often have to force them to break for sports and games.  
A) the children become                      B) become the children  
C) the children do become                  D) do the children become
14. Not \_\_\_\_\_ on dry land.  
A) are all valleys              B) valleys all are  
C) valleys are all              D) all valleys are
15. Not until the late 1870's \_\_\_\_\_ an outlet for her talents and sympathies in charitable work.  
A) that Anna Hallowell found  
B) did Anna Hallowell find  
C) when did Anna Hallowell find  
D) when Anna Hallowell found
16. Caves and hollow trees are not the only places \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) where do bats live              B) bats live where  
C) where bats live                  D) live where bats
17. There seemed little hope that the explorer, \_\_\_\_\_ in the tropical forest, would find his way through it.  
A) to be deserted                      B) having deserted  
C) to have been deserted              D) having been deserted
18. The students expected there \_\_\_\_\_ more reviewing classes before the final exams.  
A) is                                      B) being  
C) have been                          D) to be
19. Jean did not have time to go to the concert last night because she was busy \_\_\_\_\_ for her examination.  
A) with preparing                  B) preparing  
C) to prepare                          D) to be prepared
20. Since the ground is white, it \_\_\_\_\_ last night.  
A) had snowed                      B) must have snowed  
C) must snow                          D) must be snowing
21. If you had spoken clearly, you \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) would have been understood              B) be understood  
C) can understand                                  D) can be understood
22. I have to get \_\_\_\_\_ about the subject before I write the paper.  
A) a few more informations  
B) a little more information  
C) a few more information  
D) a little more informations
23. After having gone \_\_\_\_\_ far, George did not want to turn back .  
A) enough                              B) much



C) such          D) that

24. Will you call them up and tell them we'll start as soon as the rain \_\_\_\_\_?

A) is stopping      B) will stop

C) can stop          D) stops

25. While crossing the mountain areas, all the men had guns for protection lest they \_\_\_\_\_ by the local bandits.

A) be attacked      B) must be attacked

C) were attacked    D) would be attacked

### 练习试题答案

- |      |       |       |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. D  | 11. B | 16. C | 21. A |
| 2. C | 7. D  | 12. A | 17. D | 22. B |
| 3. B | 8. C  | 13. D | 18. D | 23. D |
| 4. C | 9. C  | 14. D | 19. B | 24. D |
| 5. B | 10. A | 15. B | 20. B | 25. A |

## 第十三章 介 词

介词是英语中最难掌握的词类之一。研究生考试中有关介词搭配的考题出现频率也较高，本章主要涉及如下三个方面：考生所不太熟悉的一些介词用法及含义；介词和名词、形容词等词类的惯用搭配和介词成语。

### 第一节 介词短语用法举例

#### 1. about

- (1) Have you got a knife about you ? ( 在...身边 )
- (2) What are you about ? ( 从事于 )
- (3) Don't drop cigarette ends about (adv.). ( 到处 )
- (4) The patient is now up and about (adv.). ( 来回走动 )
- (5) How about going for a walk? ( ...如何, 怎样 )
- (6) What about having a game of tennis? ( ...怎样 )

#### 形容词+ about

- anxious about ( 对...担忧, 焦虑 )
- concerned about ( 关心 )
- crazy about ( 对...狂热, 热衷于 )
- doubtful about (of) ( 怀疑 )
- sorry about ( 遗憾 )
- particular about ( 对...讲究, 挑剔 )

#### 名词+ about

- information about (on) ( 关于...消息, 知识 )
- remark about [on] ( 评论 )

#### 2. above

- (1) The machine weighs above [over] twenty tons. ( 超过 )
- (2) His morals are above [beyond] reproach. ( 无可指责 )
- (3) We must be above telling lies. ( 超出, 不做 )
- (4) The problem is above [beyond] me. ( 超出...能力 )
- (5) A soldier should value honor above life. ( 胜于, 多于 )
- (6) Her heroism was above [beyond] all praise. ( 赞扬不尽 )
- (7) Never waste anything , but above all never waste time. ( 尤其 )
- (8) Above all , don't tell anybody about it. ( 最重要的是 )
- (9) The prize winner is now above himself. ( 兴高采烈 )

#### 3. after

- (1) After the selfish way he acted , who could love her ? ( 由于...缘故 )
- (2) A colonel comes after a general. ( 次于, 亚于 )
- (3) After all his labors , he failed. ( 尽管 )
- (4) This is a painting after Raphael. ( 模仿 )
- (5) He was a man after the expectations of his father. ( 合乎 )
- (6) What are you after ? ( 追求, 找 )

- (7) After all , we are new to the work. ( 毕竟 , 到底不管怎么说 )
- (8) One after another they came in. ( 接二连三 )
- (9) After a while , the doctor returned. ( 过了一会 )

#### 4. against

- (1) I am against your plans. ( 反对 )
- (2) Some animals store up food against winter. ( 准备 , 应付 )
- (3) The pine tree stands against our dorm. ( 正对着 )
- (4) I bought six books this month as against last month. ( 对比 )
- (5) Red flags stand out brightly against the blue sky. ( 衬托 )
- (6) A fire is a protection against cold. ( 抵御 )
- (7) The baby hit its head against the wall. ( 撞击 )
- (8) Place the ladder against the wall. ( 倚 , 靠 )

against + 名词

against the wind ( 逆风 )

against the law ( 违法 )

against reason ( 违反常理 )

against the stream ( 逆流 )

against will ( 违背自己心愿 )

形容词/名词 + against

secure against ( 安全 , 可靠 , 放心 )

shield against (n.) ( 保护 , 抵御 )

battle against (n.) ( 反对.....斗争 )

#### 5. around

- (1) The doctors worked around the clock to stem the epidemic.  
( 连续不停地 , 整天地 )
- (2) His father left him around a million dollars. ( 差不多 )
- (3) Only the few men around the dictator understood his motives.  
( 亲近某人 , 在某人身边 )
- (4) The novel is built around a strong idea. ( 根据 )

#### 6. as

- (1) The actor who appeared as Romeo was my good friend. ( 充任 , 扮演 )
- (2) Fight as men , or die as slaves ? ( 作为 , 如同 )

注 : as 主要是充当连词或副词 , 但由于其特征 , 即使用方法上与介词相似 , 故我们也将一些含有 as 的短语列出 :

as follows ( 如下 )

as yet ( 到目前为止 , 到那时为止 )

as above ( 如上 )

as for 至于 , 就.....方面来说

as if 好像 , 仿佛

as a result of ( 作为...结果 )

as soon ( 宁可 )

as such ( 作为...身份 , ...本身 )

as though 好像 , 仿佛

as to 至于，关于  
as usual (如同往常一样，照例)  
as well 也，又  
as a consequence (结果是，因此)  
as a rule (照常，照例)  
as good as (几乎等于，差不多)  
not as (so) ...as 不如.....那样

#### 7. at

- (1) The picture looks better at a distance. (指距离)
- (2) He succeeded at the third attempt. (指顺序)
- (3) The two counties are at war. (指状态)
- (4) The students marvelled at the extent of her knowledge. (表原因)
- (5) They were delighted at the idea of going to England. (表原因)
- (6) We buy articles at ¥30 and sell them at ¥35. (指价格)
- (7) The train was running at full speed. (指速度)
- (8) We did the work at his request. (依照)

at + 名词/形容词

at all (完全，根本)  
not at all (一点也不)  
at one's convenience (方便时)  
at hand (在手边，附近，即将到来)  
at intervals (不时，间隔一定时间)  
at least (至少，最低限度)  
at length (最终；详细地)  
at (the) most (至多，不超过)  
at present (目前)  
at any rate (无论如何，至少)  
at a sitting (一口气地，连续地)  
at table (吃饭)  
at no time (从不，决不)  
at times (有时)  
at will (随意)  
at (the) best (充其量，至多)  
at all costs [events] (无论如何)  
at heart (在内心，实质上)  
at large (一般，大体上；详细地；自由地)  
at leisure (闲暇)  
at a loss (困惑，不知所措)  
at once (突然；同时，一起)  
at random (随意地)  
at first sight (乍一看，初看起来)  
at stake (在危险中，利害攸关)

at a time (每次, 一次)  
at one time (同时, 曾经)  
at one's wits' end (智穷计尽, 无计可施)  
at (the) worst (在最坏的情况下)

过去分词/形容词 + at

clever at (擅长于)  
slow at (对...迟钝)  
mad at (对...恼火)  
delighted at (因...愉快)  
quick at (对...反应敏捷)  
skillful at (灵巧, 娴熟)  
annoyed at (对...生气)  
astonished at (因...惊奇)

名词 + at

attempt at (试图, 努力)  
dissatisfaction at (不满, 不平)

at + 名词 + of

at the cost of (以...为代价)  
at the mercy of (在...支配下)  
at the expense of (以...为牺牲)  
at the risk of (冒...危险)

#### 8. beyond

- (1) I will pay nothing beyond the stated price. (除了)
- (2) The problem is beyond me. (超出, 过于, 为...所不及)
- (3) We can't go beyond that point. (超越)
- (4) They stayed beyond the usual time. (晚于)

与 beyond 搭配的词主要有:

beyond compare (无可比拟)  
beyond belief (难以置信)  
beyond dispute (无可争议)  
beyond hope (无望)  
beyond doubt (无疑)

#### 9. but

anything but 除.....以外任何事物, 决不

- (1) I know him by name and not by sight. (以...方式)
- (2) We are paid by the hour. (以...为单位计算)
- (3) This table is two metres by four. (表示相乘, 宽度)
- (4) He solved the problem step by step. (表示逐个)
- (5) He will come by six. (不迟于)
- (6) I have a gun by me. (在手头, 在身边)
- (7) She is a teacher by profession. (就...来说)
- (8) The bus company raised the fare by 50%. (至...程度)
- (9) John prefers travelling by night. (在...期间)

#### 10. by

与 by 搭配的词主要有：

by accident (偶然)

by choice (出于自择)

by far (最, 显然, 很)

by heart (牢记)

by no means (决不)

by turns (轮流)

by force (强迫)

by chance (偶然, 意外)

by comparison (相比)

by hand (用手)

by all means (无论如何, 必定)

by means of (借助于, 用.....方法)

by mistake (弄错, 错误地)

by no means 决不

by the way (顺便, 另外)

little by little 逐渐地, 一点一点地

11. for

(1) I sold my car for 1 000 dollars. (以...交换)

(2) Are you for it or against it. (赞成)

(3) It is rather cold for August. (就...而论)

(4) He is tall for his age. (考虑到)

(5) For all her faults, I still love her. (尽管, 虽然)

(6) I have no ear for music. (对...有特长)

for + 名词/形容词/副词

for the better (好转, 改善)

for ever (永远)

for long (长久地)

once for all (一劳永逸, 只此一次)

for one's part (就某人而言)

for short (简称, 缩写)

for a while (一时, 暂时)

for anything (无论如何)

for good (永远)

for the moment (暂时)

for nothing (免费; 徒然)

for the present (目前)

for the time being (暂时)

word for word (逐字)

for + 名词+ of

for fear of (以免, 害怕)

for the sake of (为了...起见, 看在...的份上)

for the purpose of (为了...目的)

形容词/过去分词 + for

competent for (胜任)  
good for (有效, 适用, 胜任)  
grateful for (感激)  
indispensable for (必不可少的, 必需的)  
responsible for (对...负责)  
ripe for (成熟)  
suitable for (适合)  
thirsty for (渴望)  
eager for (渴望)  
fit for (适合)  
inadequate for (不充足, 不适当)  
liable for (对...负责)  
qualified for (胜任)  
sorry for (遗憾)  
sufficient for (足够的, 充分的)  
noted for (著名)

**名词 + for**

affection for (喜爱)  
attraction for (吸引力)  
hunger for (欲望, 渴望)  
match for (匹敌)  
preference for (偏爱)  
requirement for (要求)  
search for (搜寻)  
talent for (才能)  
use for (用途)  
ambition for (目标, 抱负)  
greed for (贪婪)  
longing for (渴望)  
passion for (爱好)  
remedy for (治疗, 补救)  
substitute for (报酬, 奖赏)  
thirst for (替代)  
weep for (渴望)  
capability for (由于...哭泣)

**12. from**

- (1) From this point of view, the answer seems right. (根据)  
(2) We must draw conclusions from the evidence. (从...中)  
(3) Thousands of Africans suffer from starvation and disease. (由于, 因为)

**形容词 + from**

absent from (缺席)  
aside from (除.....之外)  
diverse from (不同)

free from (免除)  
separate from (分开, 分离)  
distinct from (有差别)  
far from (远非, 远离)  
secure from (可靠的, 安全的)  
different from (与...不同)

**名词+from**

shelter from (躲避)  
relief from (免除)

**from+名词/形容词**

(start) from scratch (从头开始)  
from bad to worse (每况愈下)  
from start to finish (从头至尾)

### 13. in

- (1) He will be back in a few days. (过若干时间)
- (2) The boy has nothing of the hero in him. (在...之内)
- (3) Not one in ten of them could read and write. (表示比率)
- (4) They were dressed in rags. (穿着)
- (5) I lost my way in the dark. (在...状态中)
- (6) I am not in the mood for work. (在...状况中)
- (7) Mary is inferior in physique but superior in intellect. (在...方面)
- (8) The words are arranged in alphabetical order. (表示部位)
- (9) The words are arranged in alphabetical order. (以...方式)

**形容词+in**

absorbed in (专心致志于)  
competent in (胜任)  
confident in (有信心)  
rich in (富于, 盛产)  
skilled in (熟练, 有技能)  
abundant in (充裕的, 充分的)  
experienced in (在...方面有经验)  
skillful in (灵巧, 娴熟)  
successful in (在...方面成功)

**in+名词**

in advance (提前)  
in the air (在流行中, 在传播中)  
in all (总共, 共计)  
in brief (简而言之)  
in any case (无论如何, 总之)  
in charge (主管)  
in conclusion (总之)  
in danger (在危险中)  
in all directions (四面八方)



in difficulties ( 处境困难 )  
in due course ( 及时地 ; 在适当的时候 )  
in condition ( 状态好 )  
in any event ( 无论如何 )  
in force ( 有效 , 实施中 )  
in general ( 大体上 )  
in hand ( 在控制下 )  
in the least ( 一点 , 丝毫 )  
in nature ( 本质上 )  
in particular ( 尤其 ; 详细地 )  
in place ( 在适当的位置 )  
in public ( 公开地 )  
in return ( 作为回报 , 作为报答 )  
in the long run ( 最终 )  
in a sense ( 从某种意义上说 )  
in shape ( 处于良好状态 )  
in sight ( 被看到 , 在望 )  
in stock ( 现有 , 备有 )  
in sum ( 总而言之 )  
in addition ( 另外 )  
in bulk ( 散装 , 大批 )  
in no case ( 决不 )  
in common ( 共同 )  
in consequence ( 因此 , 结果 )  
in debt ( 欠债 , 欠情 )  
in detail ( 详细地 )  
in the distance ( 在远处 )  
in effect ( 有效 ; 实际上 )  
in essence ( 大体上 , 本质上 )  
in fashion ( 流行 )  
in full ( 充足地 , 完整地 )  
in half ( 两半 )  
in itself ( 本身 )  
in line ( 排成一行 )  
in order ( 整齐 )  
in person ( 亲自 )  
in practice ( 实际上 , 在实践中 )  
in question ( 正在考虑 )  
in secret ( 秘密地 )  
in sequence ( 依次 )  
in short ( 简言之 )  
in step ( 同步 , 合拍 )  
in succession ( 接连地 )  
in tears ( 流着泪 )

in no time (马上)  
in turn (依次, 轮流; 反过来)  
in vain (徒劳地)  
in no way (决不)  
in the way (妨碍)  
in a word (总之)  
in the world (到底, 究竟)  
put in order (整理, 检修)  
in time (及时, 适时地)  
in truth (实际上, 的确)  
in a way (在某种程度上)  
in one's way (妨碍某人)  
once in a while (偶尔)  
in other words (换句话说)  
keep [bear, have] in mind (记住)  
keep in touch (保持联系)

#### 名词+in

ache in (在...部位疼)  
delight in (高兴)  
expert in (在...方面有专长)  
interference in (干涉, 干预)  
no point in doing (做...没道, 没有意义)  
trust in (相信)  
confidence in (对...有信心)  
difficulty in (在...方面有困难)  
interest in (有兴趣)  
pain in (在...部位疼痛)  
proficiency in (熟练, 精通)

#### in+名词+介词

in accordance with (依照)  
in agreement with (一致)  
in the capacity of (以...身份)  
in charge of (掌管, 负责)  
in consequence of (由于...缘故)  
in the course of (在...期间)  
in excess of (超过)  
in favour of (支持)  
in the light of (根据)  
in memory of (为纪念...)  
in proportion to (与...成比例)  
in [with] relation to (关系到)  
in support of (支持)  
in addition to (附加)  
in answer to (回答)

in case of (假使, 万一, 以防)  
in connection with [to] (关于)  
in contrast with [to] (与...相比)  
in the event of (万一, 如果发生)  
in the face of (面对; 不顾, 即使)  
in honor of (为纪念...; 向...表示敬意)  
in line with (与...一致)  
in place of (代替)  
in [with] regard to (关于; 就...而论)  
in terms of (依照; 用...措词)  
in the way of (妨碍)  
in view of (鉴于, 由于)

#### 14. into

- (1) She burst into tears. (变成...状态)
- (2) He frightened the little girl into submission. (变成...状态)
- (3) The old professor always works far into the night. (到)
- (4) Australia launched a man-made satellite into orbit successfully. (进入)

与 into 搭配的词主要有:

take sth. into account (考虑, 重视)  
carry [bring] into effect (使生效, 使起作用)  
put into effect (实行, 生效)  
come [enter] into force (生效, 实施)  
put [bring] into operation (使投入生产, 使运转)  
gain an insight into (看透)  
talk white into black (颠倒黑白)  
come [go] into effect (生效, 实施)  
come [go] into operation (开工, 开始运转)  
bring [carry] into practice (实施, 实行)  
do research into (研究)

#### 15. of

- (1) He is a man of humble origin. (来源)
- (2) I did it of necessity. (出于)
- (3) The explosion couldn't have happened of itself. (表示原因)
- (4) The Indians robbed them of their possessions. (表示脱离)
- (5) She has the devil of a temper. (表示属性)
- (6) Mary is an angel of a woman. (表示同位)

形容词+of

aware of (知道, 意识到)  
cautious of (小心)  
characteristic of (独特的, 特有的)  
conscious of (意识到)  
doubtful of (怀疑)  
free of (免除)

fond of ( 喜好 )  
independent of ( 独立 )  
insufficient of ( 不足 )  
jealous of ( 嫉妒, 猜疑 )  
regardless of ( 不管 )  
short of ( 缺乏 )  
sick of ( 厌烦 )  
suspicious of ( 对...怀疑 )  
void of ( 没有, 缺乏 )  
ashamed of ( 羞于 )  
capable of ( 有能力 )  
certain of ( 有把握 )  
confident of ( 确信 )  
deserving of ( 值得 )  
exclusive of ( 除去 )  
guilty of ( 有罪, 内疚 )  
ignorant of ( 不知道, 无知 )  
indicative of ( 指示的, 暗示的 )  
irrespective of ( 不顾, 不考虑 )  
proud of ( 以...为骄傲 )  
representative of ( 代表, 表现 )  
shy of ( 畏缩, 迟疑 )  
sure of ( 确信 )  
typical of ( 典型 )  
worthy of ( 值得 )

#### 名词+of

take advantage of ( 利用, 趁...之机 )  
make the best of ( 充分利用, 妥善处理 )  
take care of ( 照料; 承担, 负责 )  
make fun of ( 取笑; 嘲弄 )  
a matter of ( 大约 )  
take the place of ( 替代 )  
make use of ( 利用 )  
want of ( 缺乏 )  
get the best of ( 胜过 )  
get the better of ( 打败, 智胜 )  
take charge of ( 负责, 主管 )  
lack of ( 缺少 )  
make the most of ( 充分利用 )  
catch sight of ( 发现, 突然看见 )  
a variety of ( 种种, 各种 )  
a suggestion of ( 略带...迹象 )

#### of+名词

of age ( 成年, 到法定年龄 )

of late (近来)  
of course (当然, 自然, 无疑)  
of oneself (自动地, 自然而然地)

#### 16.off

- (1)She is off smoking. (不再, 停止)
- (2)He is off his balance. (失去平衡)
- (3)The house stands miles off the main road. (离开)
- (4)He offered me the goods at 10% off the regular price. (低于)
- (5)A policeman does not wear his uniform while off duty. (不值勤, 不上班)
- (6)These remarks are off the record. (不得发表, 不可以公开)

#### 17.on

- (1)Have you a match on you? (随身带)
- (2)Susan is on the committee. (...之一员)
- (3)The soldiers were marching on the enemy's capital. (表方向)
- (4)He has retired on a pension. (依靠)
- (5)Yon should act on your lawyer's advice. (依据)
- (6)Their house is on the main road. (靠近)
- (7)They suffered disaster on [upon] disaster. (加, 添)
- (8)This news is on good authority. (根据)
- (9)She is an authority on English grammar. (关于)
- (10)John sat on my right. (在...旁边)
- (11)On [upon] arriving there, we began to work immediately. (在...后立即)
- (12)They are on a friendly visit to Japan. (处于...状况中)

#### on+名词

on (an/the) average (平均, 一般说来)  
on business (因公, 因事)  
on demand (一经要求就...)  
on duty (值班)  
on fire (着火)  
on hand (在手边, 临近)  
on one's honor (以...名誉担保)  
on occasion (有时, 不时)  
on purpose (故意地)  
on record (记录在案, 公开)  
on sale (出售; 贱卖)  
on small scale (不规模地)  
on board (在船/车/飞机上)  
on the contrary (相反)  
on the decline (落)  
on earth (究竟)  
on guard (警戒)  
on holiday (休假)

on leave ( 休假 )  
on one's own ( 独自 , 独立 )  
on the horizon ( 在地平线上 )  
on the road ( 在旅途中 )  
on a large scale ( 大规模 )  
on schedule ( 按预定时间 )  
on the side ( 作为兼职 , 额外 )  
on the spot ( 当场 )  
on second thoughts ( 经重新考虑 , 一转念 )  
on time ( 准时 )  
on the sly ( 偷偷地 , 冷不防地 )  
(go) on the stage ( 当演员 )  
on strike ( 罢工 )  
on the whole ( 大体上 )

#### 名词+on

action on ( 作用于 )  
authority on ( 在...方面有权威 )  
dependence on ( 依靠 )  
emphasis on ( 强调 )  
impact on ( 对...最响 )  
(throw/cast) light on ( 使...明白 , 阐明 )  
operation on ( 手术 )  
research on ( 进行...科研工作 )  
attack on ( 攻击 )  
congratulation on ( 祝贺某人 )  
effect on ( 作用 , 影响 )  
(keep) an eye on ( 留意 )  
influence on ( 影响 )  
mercy (pity) on ( 怜悯 )  
remark on ( 评论 , 谈论 )

#### on+名词+of

on account of ( 因为 , 由于 )  
on behalf of ( 代表 , 为了 )  
on top of ( 在...之上 )  
on the basis of ( 根据 )  
on the point of ( 即将...时刻 )

#### on+名词+ “ that ”

on condition that ( 如果... ; 在...条件下 )  
on the understanding that ( 如果... ; 以...为条件 )

#### 形容词+on+sth. /doing sth.

keen on ( 渴望 )  
bent on ( 专心 , 决心 )

#### 18.out of

(1)She did it only out of curiosity. ( 出于 , 由于 )

- (2) It happens in nine cases out of ten. (从...中)  
(3) I made my hat out of bits of old material. (利用)  
(4) We talked him out of smoking cigars. (放弃)  
(5) He cheated her out of her money. (丧失)

与 out of 搭配的词主要有：

- out of breath (上气不接下气)
- out of condition (状态不好)
- out of date (过时)
- out of control (失去控制)
- out of danger (脱离危险)
- out of doors (户外)
- out of order (无秩序，混乱)
- out of place (不适当，不得其所)
- out of sight (看不见，视野之外)
- out of touch (失去联系)
- out of proportion (to) (不成比例)
- out of work (失业)
- out of the question (不可能)
- out of keeping (with) (不一致，不协调)
- out of the ordinary (不平常的，非凡的)
- out of practice (长久不练习，荒疏)
- out of step (不协调)
- out of stock (无存货，卖完)
- out of one's wits (不知所措)
- out of question (毫无疑向)
- out of balance (失去平衡)

19. over

- (1) He went to sleep over his work. (在...的时候)  
(2) She is over 40 inches round the waist. (超过)  
(3) Can you stay over Sunday? (时间超过)  
(4) He spoke to me over his shoulder. (转过头)  
(5) Snow is falling over the north of England. (遍及)  
(6) He lost control over himself. (对于)  
(7) Over the past decade, we have made much progress. (在...期间)  
(8) We learn English over the radio. (通过)

与 over 搭配的词主要有：

- all over (遍及，到处)
- gain [have] an advantage over (优于，胜过)
- priority over (先于，优于)
- victory over (取得.....胜利)
- be predominant over (占优势)
- control (n. ) over (控制)
- triumph (n. ) over (胜过)
- command over (控制)

## 20.to

- (1)The story brought us to tears. (至某种状态)
- (2)We got wet to the skin. (至某种状态)
- (3)It is nothing to what it might be. (比较)
- (4)They erected a monument to the hero. (向...表敬意)
- (5)To my shame, I completely forgot our date. (使)
- (6)There is a tendency to improvement. (趋向)
- (7)Let's drink to her health. (为了)
- (8)Water is to fish what air is to man. (对于)
- (9)The old lady was singing to the piano. (根据, 伴随)
- (10)The food is not to my taste. (适合)

### 过去分词+to

- accustomed to (+n.) (习惯于)
- attached to (n. ) (附属于, 隶属于)
- (be) used to (n. ) (习惯于)
- (be) known to sb. (为...所熟知)
- known as (以...著称)
- bound to (v. ) (一定, 必定)

### 形容词+to

- able to (v. ) (能够)
- adjacent to (n.) (邻近的, 毗连的)
- apparent to (明显的)
- appropriate to (适当的)
- contrary to (与...相反)
- due to (应支付的, 应到达的)
- comparable to (可比拟的)
- close to (接近)
- deaf to (不听)
- equivalent to (相等的, 等值的)
- familiar to (熟悉的)
- foreign to (无关的, 不相干的)
- grateful to (感激的)
- helpful to (有帮助的)
- inaccessible to (达不到的)
- indispensable to (必不可少的)
- liable to (有...倾向的, 易于...的)
- opposite to (对立的, 相反的)
- preferable to (更可取的)
- proportional to (成比例的, 相称的)
- relevant to (有关的)
- responsible to (负责的)
- similar to (相似的)
- subordinate to (从属的, 次要的)
- about to (+v. ) (即将)



alien to (+n. ) ( 相异的 )  
applicable to ( 可适用的 )  
beneficial to ( 有益的 )  
dear to ( 珍贵的 )  
convenient to ( 方便的 )  
blind to ( 视而不见 )  
common to ( 共同的 )  
equal to ( 相等 )  
essential to ( 必不可少的 )  
fit to ( 适合的 )  
fundamental to ( 根本的 )  
harmful to ( 有害的 )  
identical to ( 相同的 )  
inadequate to ( 不适当的, 不充足的 )  
indifferent to ( 漠不关心的 )  
loyal to ( 忠实的 )  
parallel to ( 相同的, 类似的 )  
previous to ( 在...之前 )  
relative to ( 相关的 )  
resistant to ( 抵抗的 )  
sensitive to ( 敏感的, 易受伤害的 )  
subject to ( 易遭...的, 受...支配的 )  
**名词+to**  
access to ( 获得, 接近 )  
answer to ( 答案 )  
approach to ( 途径, 方法 )  
attitude to [towards] ( 对...看法 )  
claim to ( 要求 )  
exception to ( 例外 )  
admission to ( 接纳, 收容 )  
appeal to ( 吸引 )  
(pay) attention to ( 注意 )  
application to ( 应用 )  
correspondence to ( 相当的, 对应 )  
endeavour to (+v. ) ( 努力, 试图 )  
exposure to ( 暴露于 )  
(in) debt to ( 欠债 )  
introduction to ( 介绍, 入行 )  
key to ( 答案 )  
reference to ( 涉及, 提及 )  
resistance to ( 抵抗 )  
step to [towards] ( 步骤 )  
tendency to ( 倾向 )  
failure to (+v. ) ( 失败 )

guide to ( 指导 )  
liberty to ( 自由 )  
objection to ( 反对 )  
preference to ( 偏爱 , 优先 )  
permission to ( 允许 )  
appendix to ( 附录 , 附属 )  
solution to ( 解决办法 )  
to+n. 名词  
up to date ( 最新 , 跟上时代 )  
to the point ( 切题 )  
to the advantage ( 益处 , 优势 )  
to one's liking ( 合某人心意 )  
to one's taste ( 适合口味 )  
come to the point ( 说到要点 )  
put to use ( 使用 )  
to one's satisfaction ( 使某人高兴 , 使人满意 )  
to one's credit ( 使某人增光 , 值得赞扬 )  
to the utmost ( 尽力 )  
to the best of one's knowledge ( 就某人所知 )

#### 21. under

- (1) Children under the age of 18 are not allowed to drink alcohol.  
( 低于 )
- (2) The bill is now under discussion. ( 处于...状态中 )
- (3) Preparations for a big celebration were under way. ( 正在进行中 )

与 under 搭配的词主要有 :

under control ( 在控制下 )  
under consideration ( 在考虑中 )  
under repair ( 在修理 )  
under the cover (of) ( 以...为掩护 )  
under discussion ( 在讨论中 )  
under the circumstances ( 在这些情形下 )

#### 22. with

- (1) They were trembling with fear. ( 由于 )
- (2) John always does the work with his whole heart. ( 方式 )
- (3) It becomes chilly with the approach of sunset. ( 随着 )
- (4) It rests with you to decide. ( 由...负责 )
- (5) We must be patient with her. ( 对于 )
- (6) I am with you in what you say. ( 赞成 )
- (7) Does this blue go well with this green? ( 和谐 )
- (8) With all her faults, I still admire her. ( 尽管 , 纵然 )
- (9) I have got no pen to write with. ( 工具 )
- (10) A man grows wiser with age. ( 随着 , 按...比例 )
- (11) With some people, pleasure is more important than work. ( 对... )

来说)

**形容词+with**

busy with (忙于)

consistent with (前后一致)

familiar with (熟悉的)

identical with (同一的)

parallel with (平行的)

comparable with (与...相比)

content with (满足的)

flush with (齐平的, 同高的)

incompatible with (不相容的, 不一致的)

wrong with (有毛病的)

**名词+with**

(keep) company with (与...结伴)

dissatisfaction with (不满)

interference with (妨碍, 打扰)

(keep/hold) pace with (跟上, 与...同步)

correspondence with (符合, 一致)

(be) friends with (与...友好, 交朋友)

(fall in) love with (相爱, 爱上)

sympathy with (一致)

**过去分词+with**

concerned with (关心; 从事于)

satisfied with (满意)

fed up with (感到厌烦)

loaded with (装满)

**with+名词+of/to**

with the exception to (例外)

with respect to (关于)

with a view to (+n. ) (为了)

with the purpose to (为了)

with an eye to (+n. ) (为了)

**with+名词**

with ease (容易地, 不费力)

with reserve (有保留地)

**23. within**

(1) The task is within her powers. (在...范围内)

(2) The Smiths live within their income. (量入为出)

(3) You should keep a good dictionary within reach. (手边)

**与 within 搭配的主要有:**

within one's rights (某人权力范围内)

within hearing (在听得到的地方)

within sight (在看得到的地方)

within call (在叫得应的地方)

within limits (在一定范围内)

#### 24. without

(1) The rumour was without foundation. (没有)

(2) He can't speak German without making mistakes. (不)

与 without 搭配的词主要有：

without question (没问题)

without exception (没有例外)

without reserve (无保留)

without regard to (不考虑，不顾)

without doubt (毫无疑问)

without fail (必定)

(goes) without saying (不用说)

#### 25. 成语介词

(1) He arrived two hours ahead of schedule. (在...前)

(2) The students worked along with their teachers. (和...一起)

(3) The answer is correct apart from a spelling mistake. (= except for)

(4) I could hardly see anyone apart from John and Mary. (= except)

(5) Apart from other considerations, time is a factor. (= besides)

(6) The house is in perfect condition except for a broken window.  
(其中的 for 表示理由或细节，用以修正前面所说的情况)。

(7) As to your second question, I'm afraid it's beyond me. (至于)

(8) Swimming is a useful skill, aside from being fun. (= besides)  
(除了)

(9) But for your help, I should have failed. (要不是)

(10) Thanks to your advice, we succeeded. (幸亏，多亏)

(11) The waiters get good tips over and above their wages. (除...之外)

(12) I prefer bananas among other things. (其中，尤其)

(13) Please don't leave here on account of her. (为了，因为)

(14) With the view of saving trouble, we left. (为了...的目的)

(15) They rushed out in spite of the rain. (不顾，尽管)

(16) The accident was due to careless driving. (由于) (due to 主要用作表语或置于名词后作定语，且最好别置于句首)。

(17) Owing to our joint efforts, the task was fulfilled on time.  
(由于)

(18) She is up to his father as a scholar. (赶得上，达到)

(19) He is not up to dirty tricks. (从事)

(20) The ship is going from New York to California via the Panama Canal. (经由)

下列短语也应引起注意：

to and fro (来回)

off and on (断断续续)

or so (左右，大约)

and so on/forth ( 等等 )  
back and forth ( 来回 , 往返 )

### 综 合 练 习 ( 一 )

1. The findings are far \_\_\_\_\_ satisfactory.  
A)from B)to C)without D)into
2. The machine went out of control \_\_\_\_\_ mishandling.  
A)as for B)via C)because of D)over
3. I have no objection \_\_\_\_\_ spending the evening with them.  
A)against B)to C)for D)in
4. Accidentally or \_\_\_\_\_ purpose, many of the students fell ill at the same time.  
A)in B)with C)on D)for
5. Our professor has given up smoking \_\_\_\_\_ good.  
A)in B)of C)for D)to
6. The energy that the sun radiates goes \_\_\_\_\_ every direction.  
A)on B)at C)in D)toward
7. They have had a good harvest for three years \_\_\_\_\_ succession.  
A)on B)after C)at D)in
8. \_\_\_\_\_ present we use the sun's energy indirectly, and it may be our only final source of power.  
A)In B)For C)Until D)At
9. It took the new teacher months to bring his class \_\_\_\_\_ control.  
A)in B)under C)beneath D)within
10. Take an umbrella with you \_\_\_\_\_ rain.  
A)with respect B)in case of  
C)in regard to D)on account of
11. Let's try to use our intellect to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)the fullest benefit B)the best use  
C)the highest profit D)the greatest advantage
12. These novels still have a great attraction \_\_\_\_\_ young readers of today.  
A)for B)of C)on D)towards
13. \_\_\_\_\_ the moment my car is being made ready for a long journey.  
A)In B)At C)Until D)By
14. The situation very soon got \_\_\_\_\_ in that country.  
A)into hand B)out of hand  
C)off hand D)at hand
15. When I was about thirteen, I suddenly developed a great passion \_\_\_\_\_ writing poetry.

- A)for B)in C)on D)at
16. The policeman was \_\_\_\_\_ for thieves.  
A)on the guard B)on the watch  
C)on alert D)on examination
17. I helped him clean the floor \_\_\_\_\_ the understanding that I would be awarded.  
A)through B)on C)in D)by
18. They have always been on good \_\_\_\_\_ with their next-door neighbours.  
A)friendship B)relations  
C)connection D)terms
19. There is not much time left, so I'll tell you about it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)in detail B)in brief  
C)in short D)in all
20. The chances of seeing a helicopter in my town are one \_\_\_\_\_ a million.  
A)for B)to C)in D)against
21. Every dog that came \_\_\_\_\_ sight was a terror to me.  
A)in B)on C)to D)at
22. He was running \_\_\_\_\_ the pace he had learnt from the natives.  
A)on B)by C)at D)in
23. Modern man faces dangers completely unknown \_\_\_\_\_ his predecessors.  
A)for B)to C)of D)by
24. We went to see the exhibition \_\_\_\_\_ the storm.  
A)despite of B)inspite of  
C)in despite D)in spite of
25. \_\_\_\_\_ the ruin of 500 feet of the tunnel roof, traffic resumed after only fifty-six hours.  
A)With B)After C)Because D)Despite
26. The students responded \_\_\_\_\_ enthusiasm to the call of the Party.  
A)with B)to C)in D)for
27. A truck \_\_\_\_\_ with chemical substances caught fire and then exploded.  
A)loaded B)carried  
C)crowded D)transported
28. The ground was black \_\_\_\_\_ ants, great energetic ants that were busy running back and forth.  
A)for B)in C)by D)with
29. The space shuttle is a magnificent step \_\_\_\_\_ making the impossible possible.  
A)for B)by C)in D)through
30. Layer \_\_\_\_\_ layer of deep snow means that, when melted, the

snow water would be pure.

A)above B)of C)upon D)over

31. In the fall, they looked back \_\_\_\_\_ the past year.

A)in B)of C)over D)at

32. The skyscraper stands out \_\_\_\_\_ the blue sky.

A)in B)against C)under D)beneath

33. We'll let you know as soon as production gets \_\_\_\_\_.

A)on the way B)in the way  
C)under way D)over the way

34. I wish I could do something \_\_\_\_\_ the kindness I have received from him.

A)in reply to B)in honor of  
C)in respect to D)in return for

35. \_\_\_\_\_ a natural consequence he always looks absolutely delightful.

A)In B)On C)For D)As

36. \_\_\_\_\_ my return, I learned that Professor Smith had been at the Museum and would not be back for several hours.

A)At B)On C)With D)During

37. Standing on the seashore, we could just see the ship on the \_\_\_\_\_.

A)distance B)vision C)horizon D)view

38. We should not be ignorant \_\_\_\_\_ the progress being made in other countries.

A)with B)in C)of D)to

39. Although he thought he was helping us prepare the dinner, he was actually \_\_\_\_\_ the way.

A)in B)by C)off D)on

40. I am very grateful for your assistance, and hope that one day I may be able to do something for you \_\_\_\_\_.

A)in return B)in turn C)in case D)in full

41. \_\_\_\_\_ being used in industry, laser can be applied to operations in the hospital.

A)Except for B)In addition to  
C)Out of D)In spite of

42. He didn't go into detail on the subject; he spoke \_\_\_\_\_.

A)in common B)in particular  
C)in general D)in short

43. The plane is ten minutes \_\_\_\_\_ time.

A)after B)behind C)for D)on

44. The travellers sought shelter \_\_\_\_\_ the rain and happened to find a roadside inn.

A)from B)by C)for D)with

45. He climbed up the tree and picked all the fruits \_\_\_\_\_ reach.

- A)near    B)inside    C)within    D)at
46. His few personal belongings make it possible for him to move from place to place\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)in ease    B)at ease  
C)with ease    D)with easiness
47. I paid several visits to my friend \_\_\_\_\_ my stay in Hong Kong.
- A)in    B)within    C)to    D)during
48. I don't want to lend any more money to him; he's already in debt \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- A)to    B)for    C)of    D)with
49. The author gave an example \_\_\_\_\_ support of his argument.
- A)for    B)to    C)in    D)with
50. I am very sorry but \_\_\_\_\_ the circumstances I must give it up.
- A)on    B)upon    C)below    D)under
51. The vocabulary of any technical discussion may include words which are never used outside the subject of field \_\_\_\_\_.
- A)in view    B)in question  
C)in case    D)in effect
52. I must finish my task, otherwise I've started it all \_\_\_\_\_.
- A)for nothing    B)for something  
C)for anything    D)for everything
53. At the discussion, the expert \_\_\_\_\_ computer science raised questions of various kinds.
- A)for    B)about    C)to    D)in
54. Many dreams can be interpreted as implying a \_\_\_\_\_ for a new way of life or new values.
- A)look    B)worry  
C)conflict    D)search
55. There may be mistakes occasionally, but \_\_\_\_\_, it is the best book on the subject.
- A)for all these    B)for all those  
C)for all that    D)for all of it
56. I was caught \_\_\_\_\_ the rain yesterday.
- A)in    B)by    C)with    D)at
57. Stressful environments lead to unhealthy behaviors such as poor eating habits, which \_\_\_\_\_ increase the risk of heart disease.
- A)in turn    B)in return  
C)by chance    D)by turns
58. \_\_\_\_\_ recent development we do not think this step advisable.
- A)In view of    B)With a view of  
C)In regard of    D)With regard to



59. During that hard winter, the workers in Detroit went \_\_\_\_\_ strike.  
A) into B) in C) on D) to
60. John did it \_\_\_\_\_ his will.  
A) at B) in C) to D) against
61. These are the first steps \_\_\_\_\_ the abolition of nuclear weapons.  
A) of B) towards C) into D) during
62. I know nothing about him \_\_\_\_\_ he is a teacher.  
A) apart from B) except C) besides D) except that
63. He is indifferent \_\_\_\_\_ hardships and dangers.  
A) of B) at C) in D) to
64. The key \_\_\_\_\_ success is hard work and persistence.  
A) on B) for C) to D) of
65. \_\_\_\_\_ his learning he was a very stupid man.  
A) At all B) In all C) Above all D) For all
66. He felt it rather difficult to take a stand \_\_\_\_\_ the opinion of the majority.  
A) against B) by C) to D) in
67. He had been going without food for two days and would die of hunger \_\_\_\_\_ a week.  
A) in B) after C) through D) by
68. I didn't buy the apples; She gave them to me \_\_\_\_\_ nothing.  
A) with B) as C) for D) by
69. It's \_\_\_\_\_ my power to make final decision on the matter.  
A) off B) outside C) above D) beyond
70. We all believe he is qualified \_\_\_\_\_ the position.  
A) in B) with C) at D) for
71. We shall have arrived \_\_\_\_\_ the time you return here.  
A) by B) after C) in D) within
72. Your poor father and I have suffered very much \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) of late B) later C) of lately D) late
73. I knew her \_\_\_\_\_ but I have never actually spoken to her.  
A) from sight B) at sight  
C) by sight D) on sight
74. Allen and I are in the same history class, but his assignment is different \_\_\_\_\_ mine.  
A) with B) from C) against D) to
75. His honesty is \_\_\_\_\_: nobody can doubt it.  
A) in question B) out of the question  
C) beside the question D) without question
76. You must study the subject \_\_\_\_\_ in order to understand it.  
A) at length B) at least C) at large D) at stake
77. The government is determined \_\_\_\_\_ prohibiting the

- possession of hand-guns or other weapons by civilians.  
 A)concerning      B)as regards  
 C)as regard with      D)in connection for
78. The books, \_\_\_\_\_, pay little attention to that problem.  
 A)as a whole      B)as a rule  
 C)to the rule      D)to the whole
79. It's a pity that he is blind \_\_\_\_\_ his own fault.  
 A)at      B)with      C)by      D)to
80. I should like to rent a house, modern, comfortable and \_\_\_\_\_  
 in a quiet environment.  
 A)before all      B)first of all  
 C)after all      D)above all
81. Cheques drawn on a bank can be cashed \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)on demand      B)with demand  
 C)by demand      D)from demand
82. Please hand in your papers \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)in right order      B)in the right order  
 C)in the right orders      D)in a right order
83. There is no point \_\_\_\_\_ time.  
 A)to waste      B)of wasting  
 C)on wasting      D)in wasting
84. The historical events of that period are arranged \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)in alphabetical order      B)in an alphabetical order  
 C)in the alphabetical orders      D)in alphabetical orders
85. He was \_\_\_\_\_ his wits' end what to do.  
 A)in      B)on      C)at      D)of

### 综合练习答案 (一)

- |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. A)  | 9. B)  | 17. B) | 25. D) | 33. C) |
| 2. C)  | 10. B) | 18. D) | 26. A) | 34. D) |
| 3. B)  | 11. D) | 19. B) | 27. A) | 35. D) |
| 4. C)  | 12. A) | 20. C) | 28. D) | 36. B) |
| 5. C)  | 13. B) | 21. A) | 29. C) | 37. C) |
| 6. C)  | 14. B) | 22. C) | 30. C) | 38. C) |
| 7. D)  | 15. A) | 23. B) | 31. C) | 39. A) |
| 8. D)  | 16. B) | 24. D) | 32. B) | 40. A) |
| 41. B) | 50. D) | 59. C) | 68. C) | 77. B) |
| 42. C) | 51. B) | 60. D) | 69. D) | 78. B) |
| 43. B) | 52. A) | 61. B) | 70. D) | 79. D) |
| 44. A) | 53. D) | 62. D) | 71. A) | 80. D) |
| 45. C) | 54. D) | 63. D) | 72. A) | 81. A) |
| 46. C) | 55. C) | 64. C) | 73. C) | 82. A) |
| 47. D) | 56. A) | 65. D) | 74. B) | 83. D) |

48. A)	57. A)	66. A)	75. D)	84. A)
49. C)	58. A)	67. A)	76. A)	85. C)

## 第十四章 动词惯用搭配

研究生入学考试中，有关动词惯用搭配的考题占有很大的比例。这部分考题主要涉及短语动词和动词短语两部分，前者指“动词+介词”、“动词+副词”或“动词+副词+介词”所构成的固定搭配；后者主要指“动词+名词”、“动词+名词+介词”、“动词+形容词”等所构成的固定搭配。为了便于考生复习，我们将它们分门别类，归纳总结。值得注意的是，有的短语意思不止一个，具体含义要视上下文而定。在这里我们向大家提供丰富的练习。

### 第一节 短语动词归纳

#### 1. 动词+about

boast about (自夸, 自耀)

bring about (带来, 造成)

care about (关心)

come about (发生)

complain about (抱怨)

hang about (徘徊, 逗留)

inquire about (询问)

quarrel about (争吵, 争论)

set about (开始, 着手)

worry about (对...感到烦恼)

#### 2. 动词+across

come across (偶然遇到, 找到)

cut across (走捷径, 抄近路)

get across to (解释清楚, 使人了解)

put across (解释清楚, 说明)

#### 3. 动词+after

ask after (问候)

go after (追求)

model after (模仿)

name after (以...命名)

seek after (探索)

take after (与...相像)

#### 4. 动词+against

compete against (竞争, 对抗)

defend...against (保卫...不受)

prevail against [over] (战胜)

react against (反对, 起反作用)

#### 5. 动词+as

act as (充当)

refer to...as (把...当作)

serve as (作为, 用作)

known as (以...著称; 闻名)

#### 6. 动词+aside

lay aside (把...放置一边; 储蓄)

put aside (储存, 保留)

set aside (挑出, 留出; 拒绝)

#### 7. 动词+at

aim at (目的在于, 旨在)

arrive at (达成, 得出)

call at (访问某地)

direct at (指向, 针对)

get at (得到, 接近; 弄懂; 意指)

glance at (扫视)

point at (指向, 表明)

preside at (主持)

stare at (凝视)

swear at (咒骂)

wonder at (诧异, 惊奇)

#### 8. 动词+away

clear away (扫除, 收拾)

die away (渐渐消失)

get away (逃脱, 离开)

give away (泄露; 分送)

pass away (去世)

put away (放好, 收好; 储存)

take away (消除, 消耗)

throw away (扔掉, 抛弃)

while away (消磨时间)

turn away (不欢迎, 拒绝看, 逐出)

#### 9. 动词+back

cut back (削减, 降低)

fall back (后退, 撤退)

hang back (犹豫, 畏缩)

give back (送还; 恢复)

hold back (退缩; 阻止, 抑制)

have back (要回, 收回)

look back (回顾, 回头看)

keep back (阻止; 隐瞒, 保留)

set back (推迟, 阻碍)

pay back (偿还, 回报)

talk back (顶嘴)

#### 10. 动词+by

abide by (坚持, 遵守)

benefit by (受益)

divide by (除)

drop by (顺便来访)

get by (通过, 经过)  
go by (过去)  
live by (靠...为生, 以...为食)  
multiply by (乘以)  
profit by (获益于)  
stand by (支持; 袖手旁观)

#### 11. 动词+down

back down [off] (放弃, 让步, 退却)  
break down (损坏, 分解, 瓦解; 身体垮掉, 失去控制)  
bring down (打倒, 挫伤; 降低)  
cut down (削减, 降低)  
die down (渐渐消失, 平息)  
get down (写下; 从...下来)  
go down (下降; 被载入; 传下去)  
hand down (留传下来, 往下传)  
keep down (控制, 镇压; 放低)  
knock down (撞倒, 击倒)  
lay down (放下; 制定; 铺设)  
let down (使失望; 降低)  
pull down (拆毁; 拉下)  
put down (镇压, 平定; 记下, 放下)  
run down (追捕, 追查出; 撞倒, 撞沉)  
set down (卸下, 放下, 记入)  
settle down (定居, 过安定生活)  
take down (记下, 写下)  
turn down (拒绝; 关小, 调低)

#### 12. 动词+for

account for (说明原因)  
adapt for (改编, 改装)  
allow for (考虑到; 原谅)  
answer for (负责, 保证)  
apologize for (为...而道歉)  
apply for (申请, 请求)  
ask for (要求, 请求; 要价)  
call for (需要)  
care for (喜欢, 照管)  
compensate for (补偿, 赔偿)  
count for (much/little) (有/无价值)  
dispose for (布置, 安排)  
exchange for (交换, 兑换)  
go for (喜爱, 支持, 竭力想取得)  
go in for 从事, 致力于, 追求)  
head for (驶向, 走向)  
leave for (离开某地去...)

long for (渴望)  
make for (驶向, 走向; 有助于)  
make up for (补偿, 弥补)  
mistake for (把...误认为)  
provide for (提供)  
put in for (申请)  
run for (竞选)  
sacrifice for (牺牲, 献出)  
search for (搜寻)  
seek for (寻找, 企图)  
send for (派人去请, 索取)  
sit for (参加)  
stand for (代表, 意味)  
stand up for (维护, 为...辩护)  
substitute for (代替, 替换)  
take for (把...看成)  
thank for (感谢)  
watch for (监视, 窥视)

### 13. 动词+from

arise from (由...引起, 由...产生)  
benefit from (受益于)  
break away from (脱离, 逃跑)  
deduce from (演绎, 推断)  
derive from (导出, 由...来)  
deviate from (偏离, 背离)  
die from (因...伤而死)  
differ from (与...不同)  
distinguish from (区别, 辨别)  
hinder from (阻止, 妨碍)  
keep from (使...不做)  
originate from (起源于, 发生)  
prevent from (预防, 防止)  
profit from (获益于)  
protect from (保护, 保护)  
recover from (恢复, 痊愈)  
restrain from (抑制, 制止)  
result from (起因于, 因...而造成)  
tell from (辨别, 区别)

### 14. 动词+in

believe in (相信, 信仰)  
break in (闯入; 打断, 插嘴)  
check in (办理登记手续)  
consist in cut in (在于, 存在于)  
cut in ((插嘴, 打断; 汽车抢挡道)

draw in (到站)  
drop in (顺便来访)  
engage in (忙于, 从事于)  
feed in (输入)  
get in (填充, 填写)  
give in (收获, 收集; 进入)  
hand in (递交, 交上)  
interfere in (干涉, 干预)  
intervene in (干涉, 干预)  
involve in (牵连, 陷入)  
look in (顺便看望)  
lie in (在于)  
minor in (兼修)  
major in (主修, 专政)  
participate in (参与, 参加)  
originate in (起源, 发生)  
pull in (进站, 停车, 到岸)  
persist in (坚持, 持续)  
result in (导致)  
put in (驶进)  
show in (领入)  
send in (呈报, 提交, 送来)  
specialize in (专攻, 专门研究)  
set in (开始)  
succeed in (成功)  
sit in (列席, 旁听)  
tune in (收听, 调谐)  
step in (介入, 插入)  
take in (接受, 吸收; 了解; 欺骗)  
turn in (上缴; 转身进入, 拐入)

#### 15. 动词+into

break into (闯入; 突然开始某种行为)  
get into (进入, 陷入)  
go into (研究, 调查)  
look into (调查, 过问)  
plunge into (投入, 进入)  
research into (研究, 调查)  
run into (撞上, 偶遇)  
turn into (变为)  
talk(sb.) into (劝说某人做某事, 说服某人做某事)

#### 16. 动词+of

assure of (保证)  
approve of (赞成, 同意)  
accuse(sb.) of (控告, 谴责)



complain of ( 抱怨 )  
boast of ( 自夸 , 夸耀 )  
consist of ( 由...组成 , 由...构成 )  
conceive of ( 设想 , 构想 , 想像 )  
(be)composed of ( 由...组成 )  
convince of ( 使...信服 , 使相信 )  
dispose of ( 处理 , 处置 )  
despair of ( 对...绝望 )  
hear of ( 听说 )  
cure of ( 治愈 , 医治 )  
inquire of ( 询问 , 打听 )  
inform of ( 通知 , 告诉 )  
persuade of ( 使相信 )  
learn of ( 听到 , 获悉 )  
remind of ( 提醒 , 使...想起 )  
relieve of ( 减轻 , 解除 )  
get rid of ( 摆脱 , 除去 )  
require of ( 要求 , 命令 )  
rob of ( 剥夺 , 抢劫 )  
rid of ( 使摆脱 , 使去掉 )  
taste of ( 有...的味道 , 体验 )  
think of ( 想起 ; 想 )  
think better of ( 改变主意 , 重新考虑 )  
(be) made up of ( 由...组成 )

#### 17. 动词+off

back off [down] ( 放弃 , 让步 , 退却 )  
break off ( 断绝 , 结束 )  
call off ( 放弃 , 取消 )  
carry off ( 夺去 )  
clear off ( 拿开 , 擦掉 )  
come off ( 实现 , 成功 )  
cut off ( 切断 ; 删去 ; 打断 )  
drop off ( 减弱 )  
get off ( 从...下来 , 动身 , 开始 )  
give off ( 放出 , 释出 )  
go off ( 爆炸 , 发射 ; 离开 )  
keep off ( 不接近 , 躲开 )  
lay off ( 临时解雇 , 休息 )  
let off ( 放炮 , 开火 ; 宽恕 ; 免除 )  
pass off ( 中止 )  
pay off ( 还清 , 给清工资后遣散 )  
pull off ( 脱衣 )  
put off ( 推迟 )  
ring off ( 挂断电话 )

run off (印刷, 打印)  
see off (送行)  
set off (出发; 引起, 使发生)  
show off (卖弄)  
switch off (关断, 切断)  
take off (起飞; 拿走, 脱下)  
turn off (关掉, 断开; 叉开, 拐弯)  
wear off (消失, 磨掉)  
write off (勾销)

#### 18. 动词+on

act on (起作用, 按照...行事)  
base on (以...为根据)  
call on (访问某人; 号召, 呼吁)  
carry on (继续, 坚持; 从事, 经营)  
catch on (理解, 明白)  
check on (校对, 检查)  
come on (来, 快点; 开始; 发展; 上演)  
comment on (评论, 注释)  
concentrate on (集中, 专心, 注意)  
congratulate on (祝贺)  
depend on (取决于, 依靠)  
dwell on (详述; 凝思)  
experiment on (进行...试验)  
fall back on (求助于, 转而依靠)  
feed on (喂养, 饲养)  
focus on (集中, 使聚集)  
go on (继续, 发生)  
go back on (违背)  
hand on (传下来, 依次传递)  
hang on (抓紧不放; 继续下去; 等一下)  
head on (迎头, 迎面)  
hit on (偶然想起, 突然想起)  
hold on (继续, 抓住不放)  
impose on (把...强加给)  
improve on (改进)  
insist on (坚决要求, 坚持)  
keep on (继续不断, 保持)  
live on [by] (靠...生活, 以...为食)  
look down on (看不起, 轻视)  
look on (旁观; 视作)  
model on (模仿)  
operate on (给...动手术)  
pull on (穿, 戴)  
put on (穿上; 上演; 增加体重)

rely on ( 依赖, 信赖 )  
remark on ( 评论, 议论 )  
research on ( 研究 )  
count on ( 依靠, 期待, 指望 )  
switch on ( 接通 )  
take on ( 呈现; 接纳, 承担 )  
touch on ( 涉及, 关系到 )  
try on ( 试穿 )  
turn on ( 接通, 打开 )  
wait on ( 侍候 )

#### 19. 动词+out

break out ( 爆发, 突然发生, 逃出 )  
bring out ( 出版, 生产 )  
burn out ( 烧掉 )  
carry out ( 贯彻, 执行, 实现 )  
check out ( 检验, 核查; 结帐后离开 )  
come out ( 出版; 出现; 结果是; 解决问题 )  
cross out ( 删去, 去消 )  
cut out ( 删除 )  
die out ( 消失, 灭绝 )  
drop out ( 退出, 离队 )  
fall out ( 争吵, 结果是 )  
figure out ( 算出, 估计, 推测 )  
fill out ( 填充, 填写 )  
find out ( 查清, 弄明白 )  
give out ( 分发, 放出 )  
go out ( 熄灭, 外出 )  
hand out ( 分发, 散发, 发给 )  
hold out ( 维持; 坚持, 不屈服 )  
knock out ( 击倒, 击昏 )  
lay out ( 安排, 布置; 陈列; 设计, 制订 )  
leave out ( 遗漏, 略去 )  
let out ( 放掉, 放出; 放大衣服; 放松绳子 )  
look out ( 留神, 注意 )  
make out ( 辨别; 理解; 开列, 书写 )  
miss out ( 省去, 漏掉 )  
pass out ( 失去知觉, 昏倒 )  
pick out ( 选出; 辨识出 )  
point out ( 指出 )  
pull out ( 取出; 驶出; 减速 )  
put out ( 熄灭, 消灭; 出版; 生产 )  
reach out ( 伸手够, 摸 )  
rub out ( 擦掉, 拭去 )  
rule out ( 排除, 拒绝考虑 )

set out ( 陈列 ; 动身 ; 制定 )  
shut out ( 排除 )  
stand out ( 突出 , 显眼 )  
stick out ( 突出 , 伸出 ; 坚持到底 )  
try out ( 试验 )  
turn out ( 生产 ; 结果 ; 驱逐 )  
watch out ( 小心 )  
wear out ( 用坏 , 耗尽 )  
wipe out  
work out

**形容词+out**

all out  
20. +over  
distribute over  
get over  
glance over  
go over  
hand over  
look over  
preside over  
prevail over  
quarrel over  
reign over  
run over  
smooth over  
stop over  
take over  
think over  
turn over  
weep over  
talk over  
21. +through  
break through  
come through  
fall through  
get through  
live through  
look through  
pass through  
see through ( 看破 ; 干完 , 干到底 )  
scrape through ( 勉强通过 , 擦过 )  
22. 动词+to  
accustom oneself to ( 使习惯于 )  
adapt to ( 使适应 , 适合 )

add to (增加, 补充)  
add up to (合计, 总计)  
adhere to (坚持; 附着)  
adjust to (调整, 调节)  
agree to (同意, 赞成)  
amount to (合计, 总共达, 等于)  
answer to (适应, 符合)  
apologize to (向...道歉)  
appeal to (呼吁, 要求; 申诉)  
apply to (适用, 应用)  
attach to (系上, 依附于, 隶属)  
attend to (照顾, 护理)  
attribute to (+n.) (把...归于)  
be about to 即将, 正要  
belong to (属于; 应归入)  
bring to (使恢复知觉)  
cling to (粘住; 依附; 坚持)  
come to (总计, 达到; 苏醒)  
come up to (达到, 符合)  
compare to (把...比作)  
confine to (局限于, 限制)  
conform to (遵守, 符合)  
consent to (同意, 赞成)  
contribute to (贡献, 捐助; 投稿)  
correspond to (相当于, 对应)  
dedicate to (+n.) (奉献, 把...用在)  
devote to (+n.) (奉献, 致力于)  
direct to (指向, 针对)  
draw to (挨近)  
expose to (使...暴露于, 受到)  
face up to (大胆面对)  
fail to (+v.) (未能)  
feel up to (胜任)  
gear to (调整, 使适合)  
get round to (找时间做, 开始考虑)  
get down to (开始, 着手)  
give oneself to (专心致力于; 沾染)  
give way to (给...让路, 对...让步; 被...代替)  
hang on to (坚持住, 坚持下去)  
keep to (坚持; 固守)  
hold on to (紧紧抓住, 坚持)  
jump to (conclusion) (匆忙下结论)  
lead to (通向, 导致, 引起)  
lend itself to (适宜于, 对...有用)

limit to (限制, 限定)  
live up to (做到, 不辜负)  
look forward to (+n.) (盼望, 期待)  
look up to (尊敬, 敬仰)  
object to (+n.) (反对)  
occur to (被想起, 被想到)  
owe to (归功于)  
point to (指向)  
reconcile to (使一致)  
remember to (代...问好)  
reply to (答复)  
resort to (求助, 诉者)  
respond to (响应)  
sacrifice to (牺牲, 献出)  
see to (注意, 负责; 修理)  
set out to (打算, 着手)  
stand up to (勇敢地面对, 经得起)  
stick to (坚持, 忠于, 信守)  
subject to (使遭到, 使服从)  
submit to (呈送, 提交; 使屈服)  
supply to (供应)  
take to (+n.) (喜欢, 亲近)  
testify to (说明, 证实)  
turn to (求助于, 借助于; 变成)  
yield to (屈服, 服从)  
used to (+v.) (过去常常)

### 23. 动词+up

back up (支持, 援助; 倒退, 后退)  
break up (中止, 结束; 打碎, 拆散)  
bring up (教育, 养育, 使成长)  
build up (逐步建立, 积累, 增大, 树立, 增进健康)  
burn up (烧旺, 烧完)  
call up (召集, 动员; 打电话; 使人想起)  
check up (校对, 检查)  
cheer up (使高兴; 振作起来)  
clear up (整理; 清除; 澄清; 天气变晴)  
clean up (打扫, 整理; 清除)  
count up (把...相加)  
come up (发生, 被提出; 上来, 走近)  
double up (弯腰, 把...折起来)  
cover up (掩饰, 掩盖)  
dress up (穿上盛装, 打扮得漂亮)  
draw up (写出, 画出; 草拟; 停住)  
get up (增加, 增强; 起床)

flare up (突然发怒; 突然烧起来)  
give oneself up (自首, 投降, 投案)  
give up (停止, 放弃)  
hang up (挂断电话)  
go up (上升, 增加; 建起)  
hold up (阻止; 拦截, 抢劫; 承载)  
heap up (堆起)  
line up (排除, 使排成一行)  
keep up (保持, 继续进行, 坚持)  
make up (化妆, 编造; 补偿; 和解; 组成)  
look up (查阅, 查考; 寻找某人)  
pay up (全部付清)  
mix up (混合, 混淆, 搞糊涂)  
pile up (堆积)  
pick up (学会, 获得; 中途搭人; 偶得; 改进; 拣起)  
pull up (停下)  
pin up (钉住, 别住)  
queue up (排队)  
put up (投宿; 建起; 张贴; 提价; 提出)  
ring up (打电话)  
roll up (卷起)  
show up (露面, 使呈现, 使醒目)  
set up (树立, 建立; 资助; 扶持)  
speed up (加速)  
sit up (迟睡, 熬夜)  
step up (提高, 加快)  
stand up (耐用, 站起来)  
take up (占去; 开始从事; 接收, 拿起)  
sum up (总结, 概括)  
touch up (润色, 改进)  
turn up (调大; 出现, 发生)  
use up (用完, 花完)  
warm up (变热)  
work up (引起, 激起; 逐渐上升, 向上爬)

#### 24. 动词+with

acquaint with (使了解, 认识)  
agree with (同意; 适宜; 与...一致)  
associate with (使联系, 联合)  
begin with (从...开始)  
charge with (控告...有罪)  
collide with (抵触, 冲突)  
combine with (结合, 联合)  
come up with (提出, 提供)  
compare with (对比)

comply with (遵照, 应允)  
conflict with (冲突, 抵触)  
consult with (商量, 商议)  
contrast with (和...对比, 对照)  
cooperate with (合作, 协作, 配合)  
cope with (应付; 竞争, 对抗)  
correspond with (符合, 一致)  
catch up with (赶上, 追上)  
deal with (对付, 处理; 安排)  
difffer with (与...意见不同)  
do away with (废除, 去掉)  
equitp with (装备, 配备)  
fall in with (符合, 与...一致; 碰见)  
reed with (向...供给)  
fill with (填满, 充满)  
get on with (相处, 生活; 有进展)  
go with (伴随, 与...协调)  
go along with (随行, 陪同前往)  
identify with (打成一片, 把...和...看成一样)  
interfere with (妨碍, 打扰)  
keep up with (跟上, 向...看齐)  
meet with (遇到; 满足; 符合)  
part with (分开, 分手)  
play with (玩弄, 以...消遣)  
provide with (供给)  
put op with (容忍, 忍受)  
reconcile with (使一致; 和好, 调解)  
share with (分配, 均分, 共同)  
side with (同意, 站在)  
supply with (供给, 满足)  
sympathize with (同情)  
trifle with (玩忽, 嬉耍)  
take up with (与...亲密交往, 对...产生兴趣)

## 25. 动词+其他介词/副词

get along (生活, 进展)  
fall behind (落后)  
bring forth (产生, 提出)  
call forth (唤起, 振作起, 鼓起)  
set forth (阐明, 陈述)  
bring forward (提出)  
put forward (提出)  
get out of (逃避, 改掉)  
run out of (用尽, 用完)  
come round (来访, 苏醒)



keep out of (躲开, 置身...之外)  
go round (足够分配; 流传; 绕道走)  
get round (传开; 走动, 旅行; 克服, 避开, 说服)  
go under (下沉, 沉没; 失败, 破产)  
agree upon (同意某主意)  
confine within (限制, 局限)  
do without (没有...也行)  
go without (没有...也行)  
piece together (拼合, 拼凑)  
go about (传开)

#### 动词短语归纳:

bear [carry, keep] in mind (记住)  
bring [drive] home to (使明白, 使想起)  
bring [call] into being (使形成, 使产生)  
bring [put] into effect (使生效, 执行, 完成)  
bring [put] into operation (使投入生产, 使运转)  
bring [call] into play (发挥, 发动, 调动, 使活动)  
bring to a close (使终止, 使结束)  
bring to light (让人知道, 公诸于世)  
bring [call] to mind (使想起)  
call in [into] question (怀疑)  
call into being (使产生, 使形成)  
call [bring] into play (发挥, 发动, 调动, 使...活动)  
call [bring] to mind (使想起)  
can't [couldn't] help doing sth (禁不住)  
carry [bear, keep] in mind (记住)  
carry [bring] into effect (使生效, 使起作用)  
catch fire (着火)  
catch one's breath (屏息, 歇口气)  
catch one's eye (引人注目)  
come into being (形成, 出现)  
come in (to) contact (接触, 交往)  
come [go] into effect (生效, 实施)  
come [go] into force (生效, 实施)  
come into operation (开始运转, 开工; 生效)  
come into play (起作用)  
come into use (获得应用)  
come to a close (结束)  
come to light (暴露, 出现)  
come to the point (谈正题, 谈主要问题)  
come true (实现, 达到)  
cut short (中断, 突然停止; 简化, 缩短)  
enjoy oneself (过得快乐)  
fall in love (with) (爱上, 相爱)

find fault (找毛病, 挑刺)  
feel like (欲, 想要)  
gain [have] (可以获得)  
get [know, learn] by heart (记熟, 背诵, 非常熟悉)  
get control of (控制住)  
get hold of (抓住, 掌握)  
get ready (准备好)  
get rid of (除去, 摆脱)  
get right (弄清楚, 弄准确)  
give an ear to (注意, 倾听)  
give attention to (注意)  
give birth to (生出, 出育, 引起, 产生)  
give effect to (使...生效)  
give place to (让位给, 把座位让给)  
give oneself away (泄露, 露马脚)  
give rise to (引起, 使发生, 造成)  
give thought to (考虑)  
give way to (给...让路, 对...让步; 被...代替)  
go [come] into operation 开始运转, 开工)  
go wrong (发生故障, 出毛病)  
have a look at (看(一)看, 瞧(一)瞧)  
have [gain] access to (可以获得)  
have an eye on (提防, 留意)  
have control of (能控制)  
have an effect on (对...有影响)  
have in mind (记住; 考虑到, 想到)  
have nothing to do with (和...毫无关系)  
have something to do with (和...有点关系)  
have [get] the better of (占上风, 胜过)  
have to do with (与...有关)  
help oneself [one] to (自取所需(食物等), 擅自挪用)  
keep an eye on (留意, 照看)  
keep company with (与...交往, 与...结伴)  
keep hold of (抓住不放)  
keep house (管理家务, 做家务)  
keep [bear, carry] in mind (记住)  
keep in touch (with) (保持联系, 了解(情况))  
keep one's head (保持镇静)  
keep one's word (守信用)  
keep open (使...敞开)  
keep pace with (跟上...的步伐)  
keep record of (记录)  
keep track of (通晓事态, 注意动向)  
know [get, learn] by heart (记熟, 背诵, 非常熟悉)

lead the way (带路, 引路)  
leave [let] alone (听其自然, 不要去管, 让...一人待着)  
lend itself to (适宜于, 对...有用)  
let alone (更不用说)  
let go (放开, 松手)  
let [leave] loose (放开, 放松, 释放)  
lose heart (丧失勇气, 失去信心)  
lose one's head (不知所措)  
lose one's temper (发怒, 发脾气)  
lose track of (不了解...的情况, 记不清)  
make a face (做鬼脸)  
make available (使...能够得到)  
make believe (假装)  
make clear (使明白)  
make contact with (与...接触)  
make (a/the) difference (有影响, 很重要)  
make friends (交朋友, 友好相处)  
make friends with (对...友好, 与...交上朋友)  
make fun of (取笑, 嘲弄)  
make good (成功, 干得不错; 赔偿; 实现)  
make light of (轻视, 不重视)  
make little of (不重视)  
make mention of (提及)  
make much of (特别强调, 吹嘘)  
make one's way (前进, 行进, 到)  
make provision for (预备, 防备, 为...作准备)  
make room for (为...让出空地方)  
make sense (讲得通, 有意义, 言之有理)  
make sense of (弄懂...的意思)  
make sure (查明, 弄确实)  
make sure of [that] (确信; 确定, 务必)  
make the best [most] of (充分利用)  
make up one's mind (to do sth.) (下决心做某事)  
make use of (利用)  
make way (为...让路, 把职位让给)  
mark time (原地踏步, 停止不前, 拖延时间)  
pay attention to (注意)  
play a part (in) (起作用)  
put a stop to (制止, 使停止)  
put an end to (结束, 消灭)  
put [set] in motion (开动, 使动, 使起步)  
put in order (整理, 检修)  
put in [into] practice (执行, 实施)  
put [bring] into effect (实行, 使生效)

put into production (投入生产)  
put into service (交付使用)  
put right (改正、弄好)  
put stress on (强调)  
put to use (使用, 利用)  
put to work (使工作)  
run short (变得不够)  
run short of (...不够, 缺少...)  
serve (one) right (活该, 给应得的待遇)  
set fire to [set on fire] (点燃, 放火烧)  
set free (释放)  
set [put] in motion (开动, 使动, 使起步)  
set in order (使井井有条, 使运转正常)  
start from scratch (从头做起, 从零开始)  
take a chance (冒险, 碰碰运气)  
take a look at (看一看)  
take an interest in (对...感兴趣)  
take account of (考虑, 注意)  
take advantage of (利用, 趁...之机)  
take care (小心, 当心)  
take care of (照顾, 照料, 承担, 处理, 负责)  
take control of (控制)  
take (a) delight of (以...为乐)  
take effect (生效, 起作用)  
take...for granted (认为是必然的情况)  
take into account [consideration] (考虑)  
take note of (注意)  
take one's time (不急不忙, 从容进行)  
take pains (尽力, 煞费苦心)  
take part in (参加)  
take the place of (代替)  
take turns (轮流)  
think better of (改变主意, 重新考虑)

### 综合练习 (一)

1. They have never heard \_\_\_\_\_ such an invention.  
A) form    B) of    C) to    D) out
2. The engineer seemed to know what the sign stood \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) up for    B) for    C) up to    D) by
3. This test \_\_\_\_\_ a number of multiple choice questions.  
A) composes of    B) consists in  
C) composes in    D) consists of
4. To my surprise, at yesterday's meeting he again \_\_\_\_\_ the

plan that had been disapproved a week before.

- A) brought for ward    B) brought about  
C) brought to    D) brought out

5. I can really answer \_\_\_\_\_ his honesty.

- A) to    B) about    C) for    D) on

6. It's no easy thing to \_\_\_\_\_ a social reform.

- A) bring about    B) bring up  
C) bring out    D) bring back

7. I \_\_\_\_\_ a long pole in the center of the field, and on top of it I hung the lamp.

- A) put up    B) put on  
C) put out    D) put up with

8. There are many inconveniences that have to be \_\_\_\_\_ when you are camping.

- A) put up    B) put up with  
C) put off    D) put away

9. The Prime Minister refused to \_\_\_\_\_ on the rumour that he had planned to resign.

- A) explain    B) comment    C) speak    D) talk

10. In the future, robots will take \_\_\_\_\_ most jobs in the manufacturing industries.

- A) to    B) away    C) off    D) over

11. Any damage resulting \_\_\_\_\_ negligence must be paid for by the borrower.

- A) form    B) in    C) out of    D) by

12. If a man is legally separated from his wife, does he still have to \_\_\_\_\_ for her debts?

- A) answer    B) recover    C) charge    D) pay

13. I hope to profit \_\_\_\_\_ your comments.

- A) with    B) for    C) by    D) on

14. You will never get \_\_\_\_\_ with all your homework tonight.

- A) to    B) through    C) on    D) off

15. Ted agreed to \_\_\_\_\_ the strike if the company would satisfy the demand of the workers.

- A) call out    B) call off    C) call to    D) call on

16. The occasion \_\_\_\_\_ prompt action.

- A) calls for    B) calls up    C) calls forth    D) calls out

17. John \_\_\_\_\_ all his efforts on the difficult problem.

- A) gives    B) devotes    C) focuses    D) directs

18. Those two families have been quarrelling \_\_\_\_\_ each other for many years.

- A) to    B) between    C) against    D) with

19. There are many things whose misuse is dangerous, but it is hard to think of anything that can be compared \_\_\_\_\_ tobacco

products.

A) in    B) with    C) among    D) by

20. Jim always \_\_\_\_\_ his classmates in a debate.

A) backs out    B) backs away  
C) backs up    D) backs down

21. Most of the people who \_\_\_\_\_ the two World wars are strongly against arms race.

A) have lived out    B) have lived through  
C) have lived on    D) have lived off

22. Last year my wife and I decided to go \_\_\_\_\_ a trip on the Mediterranean Sea.

A) for    B) on    C) in    D) with

23. The newly-installed control computer will soon be \_\_\_\_\_ use.

A) put into    B) brought in  
C) made into    D) got in

24. All particulars should be carefully checked. Nothing should be \_\_\_\_\_.

A) born in mind    B) taken for granted  
C) put up with    D) taken into consideration

25. You will soon \_\_\_\_\_ this climate and then the changes in temperature will not affect you.

A) get used to    B) get to  
C) get over    D) get on with

26. I could just see a car in the distance, but I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ what colour it was.

A) make out    B) look to    C) look out    D) take in

27. Though already a teenager, Peter still finds it hard to \_\_\_\_\_ his favorite toys.

A) part off    B) part with    C) part away    D) part from

28. Strenuous efforts have been made to \_\_\_\_\_ government expenses to a desirable level.

A) cut down    B) cut short    C) cut out    D) cut off

29. When at a party, be sure not to \_\_\_\_\_ from the person who tries to engage you in conversation.

A) turn down    B) turn off    C) turn away    D) turn back

30. Jack has been working hard and \_\_\_\_\_ his classmates in studies.

A) has caught up with    B) has caught up  
C) has caught on    D) has caught out

31. We had difficulties at first but everything worked \_\_\_\_\_ smoothly in the end.

A) off    B) away    C) out    D) up

32. Grace \_\_\_\_\_ tears when she heard the sad news.

- A) broke in    B) hand out    C) hand down    D) hand over
33. She refused to \_\_\_\_\_ the car keys to her husband until he had promised to wear his safety belt.  
A) hand in    B) hand out    C) hand down    D) hand over
34. Michael found it difficult to get his British jokes \_\_\_\_\_ to American audiences.  
A) around    B) over    C) across    D) down
35. Californians and New Englanders speak the same language and \_\_\_\_\_ by the same federal laws.  
A) stand    B) conform    C) abide    D) sustain
36. Will you \_\_\_\_\_ this passage to see if there is any misprint?  
A) look up    B) go over    C) dwell on    D) work out
37. I \_\_\_\_\_ several interesting facts about Mexico in that book.  
A) came to    B) came over    C) came into    D) work out
38. They finally \_\_\_\_\_ our way of thinking.  
A) come into    B) come on with  
C) come round to    D) come up to
39. Trains stop here in order to \_\_\_\_\_ passengers.  
A) get off    B) pick up    C) pull up    D) pull in
40. The flood \_\_\_\_\_ as a result of the heavy spring rains.  
A) came about    B) came across    C) came on    D) came to
41. I promise to look \_\_\_\_\_ the matter as soon as I get back to the head office.  
A) into    B) for    C) in    D) after
42. I need a book dealing \_\_\_\_\_ anti-pollution problems.  
A) about    B) on    C) with    D) to
43. He has been asked to account \_\_\_\_\_ his absence.  
A) of    B) on    C) about    D) for
44. Science has brought \_\_\_\_\_ many changes in our lives.  
A) out    B) into    C) about    D) forward
45. How did it come \_\_\_\_\_ that you made a lot of mistakes in your homework?  
A) about    B) after    C) with    D) to
46. The bank manager asked his assistant if it was possible for him to \_\_\_\_\_ the investment plan within a week.  
A) work out    B) put out    C) make out    D) set out
47. They all congratulated him \_\_\_\_\_ his success.  
A) over    B) about    C) on    D) to
48. If you don't know the word, look it \_\_\_\_\_ your dictionary.  
A) up in    B) from    C) out of    D) in
49. Music often \_\_\_\_\_ us of events in the past.  
A) remembers    B) memorizes    C) reminds    D) reflects
50. The teacher has repeatedly reminded him \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A) of    B) for    C) with    D) to

## 综合练习 (二)

1. Water, when boiled, always \_\_\_\_\_ steam.  
A) gives in    B) gives out    C) gives off    D) gives away
2. Their plans for a big party \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) fell out    B) fell away    C) fell off    D) fell through
3. Badly beaten, the intruders \_\_\_\_\_ in disorder.  
A) fell off    B) fell out    C) fell back    D) fell away
4. The picnic \_\_\_\_\_ at last after being twice postponed.  
A) came off    B) came up    C) put on    D) went on
5. Very few experts \_\_\_\_\_ with completely new answers to the world's economic problems.  
A) come to    B) come round    C) come up    D) come on
6. His face gave him \_\_\_\_\_ when he told a lie.  
A) off    B) away    C) up    D) out
7. I didn't like his offer so I turned it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) away    B) off    C) down    D) out
8. Attendances at football matches have \_\_\_\_\_ since the coming of television.  
A) dropped in    B) dropped down  
C) dropped off    D) dropped out
9. After the death of their parents, the sisters got \_\_\_\_\_ well and never quarrelled.  
A) away    B) in    C) along    D) out
10. You'd better act \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor's advice.  
A) on    B) in    C) to    D) for
11. A new theory is put \_\_\_\_\_ in his latest book.  
A) up    B) on    C) off    D) forward
12. We must not rule \_\_\_\_\_ the possibility of miscalculation.  
A) away    B) off    C) out    D) up
13. He always gives \_\_\_\_\_ to his wife's demands and does whatever she tells him to.  
A) up    B) away    C) in    D) out
14. It's \_\_\_\_\_ in the regulations that you can take 20 kilos of luggage with you.  
A) laid upon    B) laid out  
C) laid up    D) laid down
15. Look at the corruption that is going on. It is the time the city were \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) cleaned out    B) cleaned down  
C) cleaned away    D) cleaned up
16. Although the false banknotes fooled many people, they did not \_\_\_\_\_ close examination.



- A) put up                      B)keep up  
C) stand up to              D) look up to
17. His discovery counts \_\_\_\_ nothing though he tried very hard.  
A) on    B) for    C) in    D) up
18. The man was under so much stress that he finally \_\_\_\_ .  
A) broke down    B) hold up  
C)broke out              D)broke in
19. The story was so touching that I could hardly \_\_\_\_ my tears.  
A)hold on              B) hold up  
C)hold on to    D)hold back
20. \_\_\_\_ !You nearly knocked that jug over!  
A) Look out    B) Look up  
C)Look for    D)Look after
21. Clark and Alice quarrelled last night. Have they \_\_\_\_?  
A)made over    B)made up  
C)made off    D)made out
22. Bob was completely \_\_\_\_ by the robber's disguise.  
A)taken away    B)taken down  
C)taken to    D)taken in
23. Difficulties and hardships have \_\_\_\_ the best qualities of the young geologist.  
A)brought out              B)brought about  
C)brought forth    D)brought up
24. She wants to know whether the measures have been agreed \_\_\_\_  
A)to              B)with  
C)about    D)upon
25. David, something important has happened. I wish to \_\_\_\_.  
A)talk it over with you    B)talk over it  
C)talk over                      D)talk you over it
26. Richard doesn't think he could ever \_\_\_\_ what is called "free-style" poetry.  
A)take on    B)take over  
C)take to    D)take after
27. The driving instructor told me to pull \_\_\_\_ at the post office.  
A)up    B)back    C)round    D)along
28. The accident \_\_\_\_ by the driver's carelessness.  
A)was brought to              B)was brought up  
C)was brought about    D)was brought out
29. The teacher has repeatedly reminded him \_\_\_\_ it.  
A)of              B)for  
C)with              D)to
30. A university is an educational institution which awards degrees and \_\_\_\_ research.  
A)carries out    B)carries through

- C)carries off     D)carries about
31. The patient has been \_\_\_\_ of the safety of the operation.  
A)assured     B)guaranteed  
C)guaranteed     D)confirmed
32. Darkness \_\_\_\_ before the traveller could find shelter for the night.  
A)set in     B)set down  
C)set off     D)set back
33. Do you know why John didn't \_\_\_\_ at the party yester-day evening?  
A)show off     B)show down  
C)show     D)show in
34. Look at the photo and you'll find Susan \_\_\_\_ her mother.  
A)takes to     B)of  
C)takes behind     D)takes up
35. No doctors could cure the patient \_\_\_\_ his strange disease.  
A)with     B)of  
C)from     D)off
36. The captain apologized \_\_\_\_ to tell us more about the accident.  
A)for to be unable     B)that he was unable  
C)to be unable     D)for being unable
37. All these irrational regulations must be done away \_\_\_\_.  
A)with     B)off  
C)for     D)up
38. On entering another country, a tourist will have to \_\_\_\_ the Customs.  
A)pass through     B)pass by  
C)pass over     D)pass for
39. The old lady can't hope to \_\_\_\_ her cold in a few days.  
A)get away     B)get off  
C)get out     D)get over
40. To test his theory, the scientist set \_\_\_\_ an experiment.  
A)up     B)out     C)upon     D)forth
41. To our delight, she quickly adapted herself \_\_\_\_ the situation.  
A)with     B)to     C)of     D)into
42. We have \_\_\_\_ various approaches to the problem.  
A)tried on     B)tried for  
C)tried out     D)tried with
43. If we believe something is good and true we should \_\_\_\_ to it.  
A)hold up     B)keep in  
C)hold on     D)keep up
44. The noise of the plane died \_\_\_\_ in the distance.  
A)away     B)out  
C)over     D)off

45. Hospital doctors don't go out very often as their work \_\_\_\_ all their time.

- A) takes away      B) takes in  
C) takes over      D) takes up

46. I wonder why they were so easily taken \_\_\_\_ by his story.

- A) in      B) on  
C) into      D) up

### 综合练习答案 (一)

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B  | 9. B  | 17. C | 25. A | 33. D |
| 2. B  | 10. D | 18. D | 26. A | 34. C |
| 3. D  | 11. A | 19. B | 27. B | 35. C |
| 4. A  | 12. A | 20. C | 28. A | 36. B |
| 5. C  | 13. C | 21. B | 29. C | 37. D |
| 6. A  | 14. B | 22. A | 30. A | 38. C |
| 7. A  | 15. B | 23. A | 31. C | 39. B |
| 8. B  | 16. A | 24. B | 32. B | 40. A |
| 41. A | 43. D | 45. A | 47. C | 49. C |
| 42. C | 44. C | 46. A | 48. A | 50. A |

### 综合练习答案 (二)

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C  | 11. D | 20. A | 29. A | 38. A |
| 2. D  | 12. C | 21. B | 30. A | 39. D |
| 3. C  | 13. C | 22. D | 31. A | 40. A |
| 4. A  | 14. D | 23. A | 32. A | 41. B |
| 5. C  | 15. D | 24. D | 33. C | 42. C |
| 6. B  | 16. C | 25. A | 34. B | 43. C |
| 7. C  | 17. B | 26. C | 35. B | 44. A |
| 8. C  | 18. A | 27. A | 36. D | 45. D |
| 9. C  | 19. D | 28. C | 37. A | 46. A |
| 10. A |       |       |       |       |

## 第十五章 词语辨析

前面几章主要是关于语法结构，本章则主要涉及词汇部分。有关词汇的考题主要以同义或近义词语辨析的形式出现，具体说来，会涉及动词、名词、形容词、副词及词形上易混淆的词。判断正确答案的关键是词汇量大以及熟知词语之间的搭配。

### 第一节 实例与分析

1) Hot metal \_\_\_\_ as it grows cooler.

- A) contracts      B) reduces  
C) condenses      D) compresses

A)为正确答案。例中，四个动词都有“变小”的意思。contract: to become smaller; reduce: to become smaller or less; condense: to make smaller; compress: press together or get into a small space:

2) When I saw Jane, I stopped and smiled, but she \_\_\_\_ me and walked on.

- A) refused      B) ignored  
C) denied      D) missed

B)为正确答案。refuse表示拒绝的意思。They refused me permission. (他们拒绝答应我的要求。) The guard refused him admittance. (看守不让他进门。) ignore表示“take no notice of; refuse to take notice of”，即“不理睬，忽视”的意思，deny表示否认某事是真的、正确的，或拒绝某项请求，即“否认”的意思。miss后面接人时表示“怀念，想念”的意思，故选项B)符合上下文。

3) The patient has been \_\_\_\_ of the safety of the operation.

- A) assured      B) guaranteed  
C) entrusted      D) confirmed

A)为正确答案。例中，四个选项分别为“保证，担保，委托，证实”之意，但可用于“...sb. of sth.”结构中的只有“assure”，故本题实际上是词语搭配问题。

4) Industry has found new uses for old, well-known \_\_\_\_ such as mercury and lead.

- A) things      B) matters  
C) substances      D) materials

C)为正确答案。例中的四个选项都表示“物质”，但含义不同。matter当“物质”讲时为不可数名词，指任何与精神相对的构成有形物体的物质，它是一个抽象名词，作可数名词解时表示“事情”，故应首先排除B。material强调是可以制成某些物品的原料，如布料，橡胶。substance指特殊种类的物质(particular kind of matter)，如水、冰、雪、木头。things泛指任何有形的物体，但应当是可数名词。原题中提到了“水银”(mercury)和“lead”(铅)，它们都是不可数名词，且很难称其为“原料”，故只有C最符合题意。

5) Nowadays advertising costs are no longer in reasonable \_\_\_\_ to the total cost of the product.

- A) proportion    B) correlation  
C) connection    D) correspondence

A)为正确答案。例中，可用于“in...to”结构中的只有proportion，“in proportion to”表示“按...比例”，“与...成比例”。其他3个选项一般用于“in...with”结构中：in correlation with（把...联系起来）；in connection with（与...相连；关于...）；in correspondence with（与...相一致；与...有通信往来），因此A)符合上下文。

6) This album is \_\_\_\_ as it was the only one ever signed by the President.

- A) unusual    B) unique  
C) rare    D) singular

B)为正确答案。例中，unique意为“唯一的，无与伦比的”，强调是同类事物中唯一的一个。unusual表示“不寻常的，奇异的”，含有“稀有，令人奇怪或引人注目”的意思。rare基本上与unusual同义，强调不常发生或不常见。singular是“奇特，非凡”的意思，它通常作定语修饰名词，作表语时表示语法上的“单数”。原题中说这本纪念册是唯一的一本总统签名的，故unique最合题意。

7) The young teacher is \_\_\_\_ in teaching English.

- A) keen    B) competent  
C) good    D) capable

B)为正确答案。本例主要是考词的搭配，keen（渴望的）和on搭配。competent，good和capable分别和in，at，of，搭配，competent in表示“胜任”的意思。

8) The tourist is prevented from entering a country if he does not have \_\_\_\_ passport.

- A) an operative    B) a valid  
C) an efficient    D) an effective

B)为正确答案。本例中，passport是“签证”的意思，四个形容词分别为“运转的，有效的”、“有效的”、“（指人）有能力的”、“有效的，奏效的”。根据上下文，空白处应填“有效力的”，故首先应排除C。剩下的选项中，虽都可表示“有效的”，但A表示计划，法律等在起作用或产生影响，D强调能够产生预想的效果或产生某种作用，B表示由于正当而在法律上有效的，故B最合题意。

9) At the meeting, Roland argued \_\_\_\_ in favor of the proposal.

- A) severely    B) heavily  
C) forcefully    D) warmly

C)为正确答案。本例中，argue的意思是“争辩，辩论”，in favor of the proposal是“支持这个提议”，四个选项中，只有forcefully（有力地）比较合上下文且和argue搭配比较适当。

10) The food was divided \_\_\_\_ according to the age and size of the children.

- A)equally                      B)proportionately  
C)sufficiently                D)adequately

B)为正确答案。本例应根据上下文语意进行判断，“根据孩子们的年龄和个头发放食品”应当是“成比例地”(proportionately)，A(平等地)、C(足够地)、D(充分地)都不合题意。

## 第二节 易混淆词语的归纳

- 1 . { advice (n .) 忠告, 建议  
advise (v .) 向...建议, 忠告
- 2 . { adapt (v .) 适应, 适合; 改编, 改写  
adopt (v .) 采纳, 通过; 收养
- 3 . { affect (v .) 影响; 感动  
effect (n .)(v .) 影响, 作用; 结果; 效果; 产生, 招致
- 4 . { angel (n .) 天使  
angle (n .) 角, 角度; 方面; 观点
- 5 . { all together (短语)一起, 一道  
altogether (adv .) 全部地, 完全; 总共; 总之
- 6 . { assure 使放心, 使信; 保证, 担保; 保险 ensure (v .) 确保, 保证  
insure (v .) 保险, 给...保险; 保证  
注: assure 强调 “ 肯定地保证, 试图使人相信 ”, 常用于 assure sb . of sth  
或 assure sb . that (从句)中, 在当 “ 保证得到、保险 ” 讲时, 等于 ensure 和  
insure。  
ensure 的意思是肯定、确信某事, 常用于 ensure sth . 或 ensure sb . that 结构  
中。insure 最主要的意思是 “ 保险, 投保 ”。
- 7 . { clash (v .) 碰撞; (n .) 失败, 瓦解;  
crash 摔坏; 坠毁; 失败; (n .) 失败, 瓦解; 爆炸声, 撞击声
- 8 . { comprise (v .) 包括, 包含, 构成  
compose (v .) 组成, 构成; 创作  
试比较:  
The United States comprises 50 states. (包括)  
The committee comprises seven members. (由...组成)  
Our party is composed of teachers and students. (由...组成)  
Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen. (由...构成)
- 9 . { compliment (v .) 称赞, 恭维; (n .) 问好, 致意, 赞扬  
complement (n .) 补充; (n .) 补语
- 10 . { consciousness (n .) 意识, 良知  
conscience (n .) 良心, 良知
- 11 { considerable (adj .) 相当大(多)的, 可观的; 值得考虑的  
considerate (adj .) 考虑周到的, 体谅人的
- 12 . { contest (n .)  
context (n .)
- 13 . { credible (adj .)  
creditable (adj .)
- 14 . { descent (n .)  
decent (adj .)
- 15 . { distract (v .)  
contract (v .)  
subtract (v .)
- 16 . { device (n .)  
devise (v .)

- 17 . { discern (v . .) 认出, 发现; 识别  
concern (v . .) 涉及, 关系到; 关心
- 18 . { dominant (adj . .) 支配的, 统治的, 占优势的  
dominate (v . .) 支配, 统治控制
- 19 . { effective (adj . .) 有效的, 产生效力的; 实在的, 实际的  
efficient (adj . .) (指人)有能力的, 能干的
- 20 . { healthful (adj . .) 对健康有益的  
healthy(adj . .) 健康的
- 21 . { hanged (hang 的过去式及过去分词)绞死  
hung (hang 的过去式及-ED 分词)悬挂
- 22 . { imaginative (adj . .) 富于想象力的  
imaginary (adj . .) 假想的, 想象中的, 虚构的
- 23 . { intelligent (adj . .) 聪明的, 智慧的, 理解力强的  
intelligible (adj . .) 可理解的, 能懂的  
intellectual (n . .) 知识分子; ( adj . .) 智能的, 显示智力的, 有智力的
- 24 . { intense (adj . .) 强烈的, 剧烈的  
intensive (adj . .) 仔细的, 精细的
- 25 . { lessen (v . .) 减少, 减轻  
lesson (n . .) 功课
- 26 . { personal (adj . .) 个人的, 私人的; 亲自的, 本人的; 身体的  
personnel (n . .) 全体人员, 全体职员; 从事部门
- 27 . { precede (v . .) 先于, 领先于, 在...前  
proceed (v . .) 进行, 继续下去; 发生  
exceed (v . .) 超过, 胜过; 超出
- 28 . { principal (n . .) 校长; 主要人物; ( adj . .) 主要的, 基本的  
principle (n . .) 原则, 原理
- 29 . { progressive (adj . .) 进步的, 先进的; 前进的  
successive (adj . .) 连续的, 接连的
- 30 . { sensible (adj . .) 明智的, 有头脑的; 能察觉的  
sensitive (adj . .) 敏感的; 易受伤害的; 灵敏的
- 31 . { wander (v . .) 漫步; 迷路; 离题  
wonder (v . .) 奇怪, 纳闷; 想知道
- 32 . { rise (vi . .) 上升 34 .  
raise (vt . .) 把...升起, 使...上升
- 33 . { respectable (adj . .) 值得尊敬的, 人格高尚的  
respectful (adj . .) 有礼貌的, 充满敬意的  
respective (adj . .) 各自的, 各个的, 分别的
- 34 . { worth (adj . .) 值得...的  
worthwhile (adj . .) 值得做的  
worthy (adj . .) (of) 值得...的



## 第二节 练习试题

1. Though the long term \_\_\_\_ can't be predicted, the project has been approved by the committee.  
A)affect B)effect C)effort D)afford
2. Having completed its \_\_\_\_ to the moon, the space shuttle is now ready for another trip.  
A)venture B)mission  
C)commission D)responsibility
3. The boy slipped out of the room and headed for the swimming pool without his parents' \_\_\_\_.  
A)command B)conviction  
C)consent D)compromise
4. I should say that it's a lie in every \_\_\_\_ of the word.  
A)sense B)meaning  
C)detail D)implication
5. Living \_\_\_\_ have been improved greatly since ten years ago.  
A)situations B)environments  
C)conditions D)circumstances
6. The test \_\_\_\_ a number of multiple choice questions.  
A)composes of B)composes in  
C)consists of D)consists in
7. This multiple choice test \_\_\_\_ 40 incomplete statements with several choices to complete them.  
A)is composed of B)makes up  
C)consists in D)sets out
8. Chemists have learned to make thousands of new compounds that never existed \_\_\_\_.  
A)earlier B)priorly C)ago D)before
9. Above all, we must make \_\_\_\_ that he comes on time.  
A)definite B)possible C)sure D)clear
10. Poverty depresses most people; in the \_\_\_\_ of my father, however, it was otherwise.  
A)occasion B)event C)fact D)case
11. Paper is the lifeblood of industry, the \_\_\_\_ of news and the distributor of knowledge.  
A)conveyer B)publisher C)printer D)teller
12. Can you \_\_\_\_ how difficult life would be if there were no electricity?  
A)imagine B)believe C)value D)expect
13. Normally food manufacturers use paper to pack or \_\_\_\_ their products.  
A)ship B)label C)transport D)profit
14. The accused man was found not guilty and was \_\_\_\_.

- A)excluded    B)driven    C)discharged    D)dismissed
15. They did not find \_\_\_\_ to prepare for the worst conditions they might meet.  
A)worth their while    B)it worthwhile    C)it worth    D)it worthy
16. There are many serious problems that \_\_\_\_ us today.  
A)confront    B)impose    C)approach    D)persecute
17. The ability to write is a simple \_\_\_\_ of linguistic competence.  
A)trial    B)quiz    C)examination    D)test
18. The policeman says that traffic is expected to be \_\_\_\_ shortly.  
A)retained    B)resigned    C)resumed    D)retreated
19. Is it true those old houses are being pulled down \_\_\_\_ new office blocks?  
A)to accommodate    B)to provide for  
C)to increase    D)to make room for
20. After the traffic accident he \_\_\_\_ in bed for two weeks.  
A)lied    B)lay    C)laid    D)lain
21. I like to go to the cinema when I am in the \_\_\_\_ for it .  
A)motive    B)mind    C)mood    D)notion
22. In addition to rice we need to \_\_\_\_ our diet with fish, meat and vegetable.  
A)replace    B)supplement    C)substitute    D)mix
23. The temple is so old that we should \_\_\_\_ it.  
A)revive    B)reform    C)repair    D)remove
24. The farmers in this country can improve their \_\_\_\_ by using better seedlings and more fertilizer.  
A)yield    B)growth    C)harvest    D)gain
25. The public \_\_\_\_ more severe measures to combat the recent crime-wave.  
A)asked    B)recommended    C)suggested    D)demand
26. Though he did not say so directly, the inspector \_\_\_\_ the man was guilty.  
A)declared    B)implied    C)disclosed    D)said
27. It was the largest experiment we have ever had; it \_\_\_\_ six hours.  
A)ended    B)finished    C)was    D)lasted
28. The gloves were really too small, and it was only by \_\_\_\_ them that I managed to get them on.  
A)spreading    B)squeezing    C)extending    D)stretching
29. In this factory, suggestions often have to wait for months before they are fully \_\_\_\_.  
A)admitted    B)acknowledged    C)absorbed    D)considered
30. In a typhoon, winds \_\_\_\_ a speed greater than 120 kilometers per hour.

- A)assume    B)accomplish    C)attain    D)assemble
31. We've been \_\_\_\_ with that company for many years.  
A)comparing    B)keeping    C)obliging    D)combining
32. His writing is so \_\_\_\_ that we can't clarify his ideas on first reading.  
A)obscure    B)objective    C)obliging    D)obstacle
33. In the theatre the actors are very \_\_\_\_ to the reaction of the audience.  
A)sensible    B)emotional    C)sensitive    D)positive
34. Not long ago, John Smith, whom you know very well, was \_\_\_\_ a car accident.  
A)related to    B)included in    C)involved in    D)damaged by
35. When she saw the clouds she went back to \_\_\_\_ her umbrella.  
A)carry    B)retch    C)bring    D)reach
36. We must \_\_\_\_ that the experiment is controlled as rigidly as possible.  
A)assure    B)secure    C)ensure    D)issue
37. Today, housework has been made much easier by electrical \_\_\_\_ .  
A)facilities    B)appliances    C)instruments  
D)equipment
38. Charles has not the least \_\_\_\_ of giving up his research.  
A)intention    B)idea    C)play    D)desire
39. That shop doesn't have brown sugar in \_\_\_\_ at the moment, but they expect to have some tomorrow.  
A)storage    B)stock    C)sale    D)demand
40. The country has a system of \_\_\_\_ , most of which date back to the nineteenth century.  
A)watercourses    B)rivers    C)canals    D)channels
41. The farmers had to wear heavy boots in the winter because the fields were so wet and \_\_\_\_ .  
A)dusty    B)earthy    C)soiled    D)muddy
42. My brother likes eating very much but isn't very \_\_\_\_ about the food he eats.  
A)special    B)peculiar    C)peculiar    D)unusual
43. This is the \_\_\_\_ piano on which the composer created. some of his greatest works.  
A)event    B)genuine    C)real    D)original
44. People of the TV generation are often \_\_\_\_ to watch TV a great deal.  
A)inclined    B)declined    C)included    D)excluded
45. It is improper for a person in such a high \_\_\_\_ in the company to behave so badly in public.  
A)position    B)situation    C)profession    D)standard

46. Prof. Hawkins gave his audience a vivid \_\_\_\_ of his lecturing tour in the United States.  
A)tale B)news C)account D)plot
47. He thought the painting was of little \_\_\_\_, so he let me have it for only ten pounds.  
A)cost B)value C)price D)expenses
48. Tennis is a \_\_\_\_ invented by an Englishman one hundred years ago.  
A)game B)play C)contest D)match
49. It was with great delight that I read in your February \_\_\_\_ the Letter to the Editor written by Prof. Johnson.  
A)issue B)printing C)magazine D)copy
50. The current political \_\_\_\_ of our country is favourable for foreign investments.  
A)climate B)weather C)journey D)state
51. Smith drove all the \_\_\_\_ to Los Angeles and was just in time for the opening ceremony of the 23rd Olympics.  
A)way B)road C)journey D)trip
52. It's a very popular play, and it would be wise to \_\_\_\_ seats well in advance.  
A)book B)buy C)provide D)take
53. The children will not be allowed to come with us if they don't \_\_\_\_ themselves.  
A)guide B)behave C)act D)direct
54. The Customs officer didn't bother to \_\_\_\_ our luggage.  
A)control B)check C)ask D)glance
55. After a long walk on a hot day, one often feels \_\_\_\_.  
A)exhaustive B)exhausting C)exhaust D)exhausted
56. What I am telling you is strictly confidential. Don't let anyone know of it.  
A)secretive B)special C)individual D)confidential
57. For instance, the automobile tunnel might \_\_\_\_ huge ventilation problems.  
A)make B)take C)raise D)create
58. The \_\_\_\_ to the house caused by the storm took several days to repair.  
A)ruin B)destruction C)damage D)harm
59. We suddenly saw the bus about to leave and had to run \_\_\_\_ to catch it.  
A)hardly B)strongly C)hard D)awkwardly
60. What he described as a \_\_\_\_ detail I thought was the most important part of the plan.  
A)common B)plain C)just D)mere
61. The bright flowers and warm winds \_\_\_\_ that spring had come.

- A)declared    B)announced    C)stated    D)pronounced
62. While I am on holiday, ring me at my hotel only if there are any \_\_\_\_ messages for me.  
A)urgent    B)hasty    C)early    D)confident
63. We watched as the plane \_\_\_\_ behind the clouds.  
A)lost    B)escaped    C)flew    D)vanished
64. Gasoline is processed from \_\_\_\_ oil.  
A)raw    B)crude    C)rough    D)tough
65. The mayor of the city is a \_\_\_\_ old man.  
A)respective    B)respectable    C)respectful  
D)respecting
66. It isn't quite \_\_\_\_ that he will be present at the meeting.  
A)sure    B)right    C)certain    D)exact
67. Having been \_\_\_\_ for one year, Tom and Jane are going to be married this spring.  
A)separated    B)promised    C)agreed    D)engaged
68. Any electrical tools sold in our shop will be \_\_\_\_ for one year.  
A)guaranteed    B)protected    C)ensured    D)assured
69. I asked the tailor to make a small \_\_\_\_ to my trousers because they were too long.  
A)change    B)variation    C)revision    D)alteration
70. Magnificent views over the countryside have often \_\_\_\_ people to write poems.  
A)excited    B)inspired    C)induced    D)attracted
71. The firemen managed to \_\_\_\_ the fire in time.  
A)extinguish    B)prevent    C)stop    D)suppress
72. I believe reserves of coal here are \_\_\_\_ to last for fifty years.  
A)sufficient    B)efficient    C)persistent    D)rich
73. This room is partly \_\_\_\_ with a few old armchairs.  
A)provided    B)decorated    C)beautified    D)furnished
74. Henry's news report covering the conference was so \_\_\_\_ that nothing had been omitted.  
A)clear    B)integrated    C)comprehensive  
D)understandable
75. These plastic flowers look so \_\_\_\_\_ that many people think they are real.  
A)beautiful    B)natural  
C)comparable    D)similar
76. We are now \_\_\_\_\_ a new English-Chinese dictionary.  
A)composing    B)writing  
C)compiling    D)creating
77. The students \_\_\_\_\_ their thanks to Professor Davis by presenting him with a parting gift.

- A)revealed      B)expressed  
C)showed      D)said
- 78.The Chinese Red Cross \_\_\_\_\_ a generous sum to the relief of the physically disabled.  
A)assigned      B)contributed  
C)furnished      D)administered
- 79.He was knocked down by a car and badly \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)injured      B)damaged  
C)harmed      D)ruined
- 80.This morning we were warned of \_\_\_\_\_ rain in some suburban areas.  
A)deep      B)heavy  
C)great      D)large
- 81.I cut my finger two days ago and it became badly \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)infected      B)affected  
C)effected      D)diseased
- 82.The toy boat turned over and sank to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the pool.  
A)base      B)depth      C)ground      D)bottom
83. Mary never tells anyone what she does for a \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)job      B)work      C)profession      D)living
84. That boy is such a good violinist that he will probably make quite a \_\_\_\_\_ for himself.  
A)star      B)credit      C)name      D)character
85. Old photographs give one a brief \_\_\_\_\_ of the past.  
A)glance      B)glimpse      C)sight      D)look
86. The novelist is a highly \_\_\_\_\_ person.  
A)imaginable      B)imaginative  
C)imaginary      D)imagined
87. Although the pay is not good, people usually find social work \_\_\_\_\_ in other ways.  
A)payable      B)respectful      C)grateful      D)rewarding
88. I can't advise you what to do next; you must use your own \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)opinion      B)thought      C)judgement      D)ideal
89. The moment someone broke into the factory, a burglar \_\_\_\_\_ rang in the police station.  
A)security      B)bell      C)threat      D)alarm
90. They had to move from their big house because the \_\_\_\_\_ costs were too great.  
A)running      B)keeping      C)living      D)renting
91. As scheduled, the communications satellite went into \_\_\_\_\_ round the earth.  
A)circle      B)orbit      C)path      D)course
92. The population in Hong Kong is \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese.

- A)popularly    B)predominantly  
C)regularly    D)commonly

93. It was a good game, and at the end the \_\_\_\_\_ was Argentina 3, West Germany2.

- A)mark    B)account    C)record    D)score

94. George took \_\_\_\_\_ of the fine weather to do a day's work in his garden.

- A)chance    B)interest    C)advantage    D)charge

95. Is there anyone who \_\_\_\_\_ the plans put forward by the committee?

- A)differs    B)opposes    C)disagrees    D)refuses

96. All too \_\_\_\_\_ it was time to go back to school after the summer vacation.

- A)often    B)quick    C)fact    D)soon

97. In an accident when two cars run into each other, they \_\_\_\_\_.

- A)hit    B)knock    C)strike    D)collide

98. The noise was caused by a dog \_\_\_\_\_ a cat through the garden.

- A)catching    B)fighting    C)following    D)chasing

99. He grove fast and arrived an hour \_\_\_\_\_ of schedule.

- A)in advance    B)ahead    C)abreast    D)in front

100. This ticket \_\_\_\_\_ you to have a free meal in our new restaurant.

- A)gives    B)entitles    C)grants    D)credits

101. The football match was televised \_\_\_\_\_ from the Worker's Stadium.

- A)alive    B)life    C)live    D)lively

102. The explorer \_\_\_\_\_ all the way to the source of the river by boat.

- A)drove    B)travelled    C)rode    D)tracked

103. The students gradually \_\_\_\_\_ a knowledge of the subject.

- A)acquired    B)attained    C)achieved    D)obtained

104. It's none of your business. You have no right to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A)disturb    B)interrupt    C)interfere    D)break in

105. After a tiring \_\_\_\_\_ by boat, we reached the island.

- A)travel    B)course    C)sail    D)crossing

106. His name is on the \_\_\_\_\_ of my tongue, but I just couldn't remember it.

- A)edge    B)point    C)top    D)tip

107. You must obtain \_\_\_\_\_ from the commune to fish in this river.

- A)permit    B)permission    C)right    D)freedom

108. He was the only \_\_\_\_\_ of the plane crash.

- A)survivor    B)person    C)man    D)crew

109. Tropical diseases are comparavtively \_\_\_\_\_ in Britain.

- A)csarce    B)less    C)slight    D)rare

110. Most people were no longer listening to his long \_\_\_\_\_ story.  
A)annoying B)boring C)tiring D)weary
111. The customer complained about the \_\_\_\_\_ TV set he bought from the store.  
A)ineffective B)inefficient  
C)defective D)deficient
112. John was so \_\_\_\_\_ in his book that he did not hear the door bell ring.  
A)engaged B)occupied  
C)absorbed D)concentrated
113. A narrow path \_\_\_\_\_ the stream to the other side of the park.  
A)joins B)crosses C)unties D)passes
114. If you put too many oranges in the paper-bag it will \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)burst B)explode C)crack D)overcrowd
115. She told me she had been offered a very well-paid \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)work B)employment C)service D)position
116. The most important \_\_\_\_\_ of his speech was that we should all work whole heartedly for the people.  
A)element B)spot C)sense D)point
117. This watch is \_\_\_\_\_ to all the other watches on the market.  
A)superior B)advantageous C)super D)beneficial
118. The survival \_\_\_\_\_ of some wild animals is not very high as they are ruthlessly hunted for their skins.  
A)rate B)degree C)ratio D)scale
119. He was \_\_\_\_\_ admittance to the theatre for not being properly dressed.  
A)denied B)rejected C)repelled D)deprived
120. When I ask you a question, I expect a \_\_\_\_\_ answer.  
A)punctual B)fast C)rapid D)prompt
121. Those are very pleasant rooms. How much do you \_\_\_\_\_ them?  
A)want B)demand C)ask for D)ask
122. He was afraid he would have to \_\_\_\_\_ her invitation to the party.  
A)refute B)refuse C)decline D)ignore
123. If the teams were not so evenly matched, it would be easier to \_\_\_\_\_ the outcome.  
A)precede B)expect C)foretell D)count
124. The twins are so much \_\_\_\_\_ and it is difficult to tell one from the other.  
A)similar B)equal C)like D)alike
125. The photo \_\_\_\_\_ happy memories of my early childhood.  
A)refreshes B)brings to mind C)stimulates D)reminds myself
126. If I take this medicine twice a day it should \_\_\_\_\_ my cold.



- A)heal    B)cure    C)treat    D)recover
127. Bill came to work at the University thirty years \_\_\_\_\_ today.  
A)since    B)before    C)from    D)ago
128. In spite of the thunderstorm, the children slept \_\_\_\_\_ all night.  
A)noisily    B)sound  
C)absolutely    D)considerably
129. The rent is 100 dollars \_\_\_\_\_ service charge.  
A)comprising    B)including  
C)consisting    D)possessing
130. I could tell he was surprised from the \_\_\_\_\_ on his face.  
A)appearance    B)shock    C)look    D)sight

### 练习试题答案

- |        |        |        |         |         |
|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|
| 1. B)  | 27. D) | 53. B) | 79. A)  | 105. D) |
| 2. B)  | 28. D) | 54. B) | 80. B)  | 106. D) |
| 3. C)  | 29. D) | 55. D) | 81. A)  | 107. B) |
| 4. A)  | 30. C) | 56. D) | 82. D)  | 108. A) |
| 5. C)  | 31. C) | 57. D) | 83. D)  | 109. D) |
| 6. C)  | 32. A) | 58. C) | 84. C)  | 110. B) |
| 7. A)  | 33. C) | 59. C) | 85. B)  | 111. C) |
| 8. D)  | 34. C) | 60. D) | 86. B)  | 112. C) |
| 9. C)  | 35. B) | 61. B) | 87. D)  | 113. B) |
| 10. D) | 36. C) | 62. A) | 88. C)  | 114. A) |
| 11. A) | 37. B) | 63. D) | 89. D)  | 115. D) |
| 12. A) | 38. A) | 64. B) | 90. B)  | 116. D) |
| 13. B) | 39. B) | 65. B) | 91. B)  | 117. A) |
| 14. C) | 40. C) | 66. C) | 92. B)  | 118. A) |
| 15. B) | 41. D) | 67. D) | 93. D)  | 119. A) |
| 16. A) | 42. C) | 68. A) | 94. C)  | 120. D) |
| 17. D) | 43. D) | 69. D) | 95. B)  | 121. C) |
| 18. C) | 44. A) | 70. B) | 96. D)  | 122. C) |
| 19. D) | 45. A) | 71. A) | 97. D)  | 123. C) |
| 20. B) | 46. C) | 72. A) | 98. D)  | 124. D) |
| 21. C) | 47. B) | 73. D) | 99. B)  | 125. B) |
| 22. B) | 48. A) | 74. C) | 100. B) | 126. B) |
| 23. C) | 49. A) | 75. B) | 101. C) | 127. D) |
| 24. A) | 50. A) | 76. C) | 102. B) | 128. B) |
| 25. D) | 51. A) | 77. B) | 103. A) | 129. B) |
| 26. B) | 52. A) | 78. B) | 104. C) | 130. C) |

## 第二篇 阅 读 理 解

### 第一章 英语阅读概述

对于绝大多数英语学习者来说,阅读不仅是获得语言知识的主要途径,也是他们必须掌握的重要语言技能之一。对于准备致力于科学研究的人来说,阅读尤其重要,因为他们要查阅大量的外语文献。因此,研究生入学英语考试中阅读占有很大的分量,即总分的 40%。除了基本的语言知识外,影响阅读效率的主要因素还在于阅读的速度、阅读的习惯和方法、阅读理解技能。很多人认为阅读效率低,主要是因为词汇量小,而词汇量的扩大又不是短时期内能取得明显进展的,因而,学习者容易丧失信心。其实词汇量的大小不应该成为影响阅读效率的主要因素,因为科学的阅读测试题,并不考察考生认识多少单词,也不需要考生认识阅读篇章里的所有单词,它主要考察考生从篇章里摘取信息的综合能力,这包括判断、推理、总结、归纳等语言技能。即使是考察某个词的含义,也是要求考生从下文内容进行合理地猜测和判断。

还有些考生把精力全部放在模拟试题的训练上,而忽略了基本技能的训练。模拟试题的作用主要是让考生熟悉题型、把握时间的合理安排、检测现有水平等。适当地进行模拟训练是有用的,但从根本上提高阅读效率更有效的途径应该是培养正确的阅读习惯、训练基本的阅读技巧,并在此基础上逐步提高阅读速度。因此,本章简要介绍阅读中的常见问题,如阅读的习惯和方法、阅读速度的问题,第二章至第七章专门介绍研究生入学英语考试大纲中规定的六种基本阅读技能,并配有专项技能训练材料。最后还有 40 篇阅读综合训练的文章。

#### 阅读的基本方法

虽然人的认知方式大致相同,但不同的人有不同的阅读习惯。有的人在读书时总是用铅笔或手指指着书上的每一行左右移动,似乎怕遗漏一个词;有的人一边阅读一边念出声;有的人一边读一边逐字翻译;有的人担心没读懂,反复地回头阅读;有的则没有耐心,一目十行。以上都不是正确的阅读习惯,不符合阅读过程的科学规律。

人们阅读时总是从左到右,从上一行到下一行,从词到词群到句子到段落,这一过程给人的感觉是人的眼睛总是在不停地移动。其实不然。科学家发现,阅读时人的眼睛不是持续地移动,而是跳跃式移动,94%的时间眼睛是静止的,6%的时间在跳跃。两次跳跃之间的时间称为一次“注目”(fixation),约四分之一秒。每次注目看到的单词数因人而异。儿童大约是半个单词,一般的读者是 1~2 个单词,较好的读者每次注目可看 2~3 个单词。在实际阅读中,人的眼睛以词群为单位跳跃,即相关的词往往在一次注目中看到。既然阅读时人的眼睛跳跃式移动,那么用铅笔或手指指着书上的每一行左右移动、一边阅读一边念出声、一边读一边逐字翻译都是没有用的。因为这些动作的速度与眼睛跳跃的速度不一致,再加上它们要分散一些注意力,因而不只影响阅读速度,也影响阅读理解的程度。值得注意的是,眼睛的跳跃式移动是一种自然现象,阅读时不要有意地把注意力集中在眼睛的移动上。既不

能把眼睛停留在某处时间太长，也不能有意地加快跳跃速度。

### 阅读理解的过程

很多人认为阅读理解的过程就是首先认识每个单词，再了解每句话的意思，然后自然地就理解了全文的意思。其实，认识每个单词并不意味着能理解全文，理解全文也不必认识每个单词。心理语言学家对阅读理解过程所持的观点是：(1)阅读不是一个被动的过程，而是一个积极主动的活动，它需要大量的脑力活动，这就是就，一篇文章的意义不在于材料本身，而是读者与材料不断交流活动的结果。读者把新知识和旧知识联系起来，以便完整地理解文章的意义，这种引申意义的脑力活动不仅仅是对词汇意义的解码，而是对文章的全面理解。(2)阅读是一个判断、推理、归纳、总结的过程。读者需要把分散于文章中的各种信息联系起来，经过必要的判断、推理，得出自己对作品的认识。(3)阅读是一个心理语言猜测活动，也就是说，一个好的读者总是不断猜测下文是什么，然后用作者所给的信息检验自己的预测是否正确，如果预测正确就开始下一个预测，如果错误，就必须修正原来的假想。

### 阅读理解的层次

作者在写文章时总是要向读者表达某种思想(message) 并借助于文字来完成这一任务。作为读者，首先要读懂文字，然后才能理解其中的思想。有的作者并不直接表达他们的思想，而是隐含其作品之中。这就要求读者去思考、判断，进行深层次的理解。一般认为阅读理解有三个层次：(1)字面理解层次：这主要是对作品的基本意思的理解。只要读者没有语言方面的障碍，这一层次的理解一般没有问题；(2)解释性理解层次：这个层次的理解需要聚合性思维。读者要读出文章的“言外之义”，即作者没有直接说出或者隐含的意思。这种理解需要读者进行推理判断，把分散在全文中的信息综合起来才能完成。(3)应用理解层次：这一层次的理解需要分散思维。理解难度最大，要求读者学生读出“文外之义”，即对所读作品发表自己的意见或得出新的深刻见解。对于英语学习者来说，要一下子达到以上所说的三个层次的理解并非很容易的事。由于东西方的思想、价值观念有较大的差异，对于有些作品的深层理解，即使是英文水平很高的人，也很难完成。所以如果你觉得某篇文章不能完全理解，也不要灰心丧气。

### 阅读的速度

由于各种因素的影响，每个人的阅读速度都不应该完全相同。母语是英语的受过高等教育的人的一般阅读速度是每分钟 200 ~ 300 个单词。我国英语学习者一般达不到这个速度。我国的《大学英语教学大纲》对大学生英语阅读能力的较高要求是这样规定的：“掌握较高的阅读技能，能顺利阅读并正确理解一般题材、语言难度较高的文章，速度达每分钟 70 词。在阅读难度略低、生词不超过总词数 3%的材料时，速度达每分钟 120 词，阅读理解的准确率不低于 70%”。了解了一般人的阅读速度以及英语学习应该达到的要求之后，再结合自己的英语学习所处的阶段和实际水平，就可以初步给自己定一

阅读速度，比如每分钟 60 或者 80 单词。然后按照你平常的阅读速度读 2 ~ 3 页，记下阅读的时间，算一算你的速度。如果你的实际阅读速度与你设定的速度相差太远，你就应该考虑是否需要调整速度。

为了提高阅读速度又不影响理解，阅读时一定要集中注意力，但不能过分紧张。环境要舒适，而且没有其它因素干扰。记住，如果你加快速度之后，感到理解有困难，不要轻易放弃。坚持一段

时间后，你会发现快速阅读并不影响阅读的理解程度。只要坚持练习，你的阅读速度会越来越快。另外，还可以带着问题去阅读，直接寻找与问题有关的内容。

## 第二章 理解文章的主旨和大意

### 第一节 总 述

理解文章的主旨和大意可以说是阅读的最主要的任务，是英语学习者必须掌握的阅读技能之一，因而也是各种考试中考查阅读技能的主要项目。通常的提问形式是“ What is the main idea of this passage? What is the main topic of this passage? What is the best title for this passage?”等等。一个较好的段落应该有明确的段落大意，一篇较好的文章应该有明确的主旨。但对英语学习者来说，正确把握主旨和大意也并非轻而易举的事情，因而也是必考项目。

所谓主旨(Main idea)就是文章所要表达的最主要的思想，它说明文章的写作目的，指明文章的发展方向。在一个段落中，由一句话陈述段落大意，其他句子对大意进行解释、发展、补充、论证等。没有段落大意就不成段落。在一篇文章中，通常由一个段落点出文章的主旨，其他的段落进行解释、发展、补充、论证等。为了准确把握文章的主旨，首先要善于把握段落的大意。

陈述段落大意的句子叫做主题句(Topic sentence)。主题句通常在段落的开头，也可能在段落的结尾，有时在段落的中间。快速阅读下面的这段新闻报道，找出主题句。

Africa-The fight against starvation in six West African nations is being hampered by the rainy season.Heavy rains are turning the dirt roads into muddy rivers.Relief will have to wait for a dry spell which seems nowhere in sight.The weather bureau is maintaining silence for fear of causing increased alarm.

很显然这篇报道的第一个句子就是主题句，意思是西非六国救济饥荒的行动因雨季受阻。以下的句子描述受阻的情况。

主题句有时位于段落的结尾主要是因为大意难以表达或读者在开始阅读时难以接受作者想要表达的大意。为了使读者容易接受，作者往往先罗列事实或陈述道理，最后陈述主题思想。快速阅读下面的段落，找出主题句。

If the wind becomes gusty after a period of calm, you should seek shelter.The sky needs careful watching, too.Gradual darkening and boiling clouds should quicken your pace.Lightning and thunder are common enough storm indicators, but few people realize that the brightness of the lightning is not nearly as important as the number of lightning flashes.The signs of an oncoming storm are many, and a person's life may depend on the ability to interpret them.

这段文字的最后一个是主题句，大意是暴风雨来临之前有很多征兆，一个人生命的安全取决于他对这些征兆的识别能力。这样的主题句放在段落的开头，读者不一定容易理解和接受。

快速阅读下面的段落，找出主题句。

Despite the fact that cars from Germany and Japan are flooding the American market, Ford, General Motors and Chrysler are hiring more workers than ever before. The flood of cheaper foreign cars has not cost American auto workers their jobs as some experts predicted. Ford operates as far as Asia, and General Motors is considered Australia's biggest employer. Yet GM has its huge American work force and hires hundreds of people every day to meet the needs of an insatiable society.

这个段落的主题句既不在段首,也不在段尾,而是在段落的中间,即“ The flood of cheaper...as some experts have predicted. ” 它前后的句子都是从不同角度列举事实,来证实主题句。

值得注意的是,有时虽然段落有明确的大意,但没有明确的主题句。快速阅读下面的段落,想想段落的大意是什么。

Joshua Bingham studied four years at the university of Paris and decided to leave before his graduation. He transferred to the University of Berlin and graduated with honors. Harvard Law School and, later, Boston College provided him with an excellent legal background. He is presently a corporation lawyer in Miami, Florida.

这个段落中,没有哪句话是明显的主题句。读者只能在理解细节内容的基础上,总结或推断段落的大意。这段话的大意应该是“ Joshua Bingham received an excellent education. ”

阅读下面的段落,并回答后面的四个问题。

Coffee is a universal beverage that is served in different ways around the world. In London, for example, some Englishmen dip mustard into the coffee, while in Denver, a person might add a dash of ketchup. Strips of orange and lemon peel; cloves and cinnamon sticks are not unusual additions to the brew in Europe. An Asian delight consists of coffee brewed in boiling sugar. Perhaps the richest cup of coffee can be enjoyed in Ireland where whiskey and whipped cream are important ingredients. In Australia a waitress will ask, "Do you want black or white?" Black is plain black coffee, but white is half coffee and half warm milk. If an Australian orders iced coffee, he will be served a cup of steaming coffee with a scoop with a scoop of ice cream. It sounds like the Australian version of a "snowball in hell."

1. Which statement best express the main idea?

- A) The richest cup of coffee can be enjoyed in Ireland.
- B) Asians enjoy a sweet cup of coffee.
- C) Coffee is enjoyed in a variety of ways.
- D) Australians have an unusual sense of humor.

2. The paragraph suggests that coffee can be\_\_\_\_\_.  
A)expensive B)rare C)common D)exciting
3. The paragraph could be entitled\_\_\_\_\_.  
A)Somme Like It Hot B)Coffee Around the World  
C)Oriental Delights D)A Snowball in Hell
4. Which part of the paragraph has the topic sentence?  
A)At the beginning B)At the end  
C)In the middle D)No topic sentence.

答案及解释：

第1道题：正确答案是C，它概括了段落中其他句子所陈述的各种事实，即表达了段落的大意。A和B只是，段落中列举的两个具体例子，因而不能是大意。虽然段落有较大的篇幅讨论澳大利亚喝咖啡的方式，但仍然只是细节内容，因而不选D。

第2道题：这道题考查对段落的隐含大意的理解。正确答案是D。虽然段落没有直接说喝咖啡兴奋的事情，但描述了世界各地喝咖啡的有趣的习俗和方式。A不对，因为段落中咖啡比较贵，不是所有的都很贵。而且价格不是讨论的主要方面。B不对，因为段落指出咖啡是一种世界性的饮料，而“rare”的含义正好相反。C不对因为段落列不同的喝咖啡的方式。

第3道题：为段落选择合适的题目，也是通常用来考查对大意的理解的方式。本道的正确答案是B，因为它与段落大意吻合。A、C、D都不对，因为它们只代表段落中的某个细节内容。

第4道题：这道题考查对主题句的位置的理解。正确答案是A。段落的第一句话陈述世界各地各种不同的喝咖啡的方式，后面的句子全部是列举例子来证明主题句的内容。

除了段落有主题句外，一篇文章也可以有主题句。为了使读者接了解文章的主旨和大意，作者往往在文章开头进行概括性的叙述或陈述，且往往独立成段。对于这类文章，读者容易把握文章的主旨和大意。对于没有明确的主题句的文章，读者就需要首先弄清楚每个段落的大意，再根据各个段落的大意总结出整篇文章的大意。

## 第二节 专项技能训练

### Passage 1

The Thames River stank, the air was filled with a "disease odor," as Londoners called it, and soot clung to ladies' dresses. London grew so polluted that, by royal decree, the use of seacoal was forbidden. The government went so far as to empower a council to prosecute those who did not obey that ban. The council handed out fines for the first offense and destroyed furnaces after the second. It is believed that at least one lawbreaker was put to death for "fouling His Majesty's air." Clearly, London law officials in the 1300s were concerned about pollution.

1. Based on the information given in the paragraph, which sentence expresses the main idea?

- A)Disease was common in London during the 1300s.
  - B)English courts were harsh and unjust.
  - C)Fourteenth century Londoners were poor and abused.
  - D)Pollution was a serious problem in fourteenth century London.
2. The government banned the burning of sea-coal because it \_\_\_\_\_.
- A)spread disease among the people.
  - C)caused pollution and bothered people.
  - B)was scared and of poor quality.
  - D)was expensive and unsafe for use in homes.
3. A major point of the paragraph is that \_\_\_\_\_.
- A)concern about pollution is not new.
  - B)pollution can cause serious problems.
  - C)som people always disobey the law.
  - D)government should control the fuel consumption.
4. The topic sentence is \_\_\_\_\_.
- A)at the beginning      B)at the end
  - C)in the middle          D)not stated in th paragraph.

#### Passage 2

People who talk and sing to plants are not crazy, according to Arnold Braymar, a government agriculture expert. "In fact, singing and talking to plants makes them grow better," says Braymar. The reason is quite simple-when we sing or talk to plants, we exhale carbon dioxide which plants need to survive and thrive. Plants absorb the carbon dioxide through their pores during the sunlight hours and produce oxygen which people need to survive. Singing and talking is effective, however, only during the daytime. Bedtime lullabies will not help plants to sleep better or grow faster.

1. Which sentence best expresses the main idea?
  - A)Doctors are worried about people who communicate with nature.
  - B)Plants and flowers should not be left in bedrooms at night.
  - C)The practice of talking to plants can be defended scientifically.
  - D)Plants do not prosper when placed away from people.
2. The point of the paragraph is that singing and talking to plants can be \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A)socially embarrassing for some people.
  - B)personally gratifying for most people.
  - C)proved dangerous by science.
  - D)helpful to people and plants.
3. The paragraph could be entitled \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A)Tell Me More                      B)Carbon Dioxide, Please.
  - C)People Are Funny                D)Let's Clear the Air

#### Passage 3



In planning our house, consider your future needs as well as our present. In time, you may need more bedrooms or another bathroom or two. The space for additional bedrooms can be an unfinished attic or a clean, dry basement. The heating and electrical work can be roughed in. For future bathrooms, you can rough—in the plumbing in the attic or basement, or in a large walk—in closet. This additional construction will increase the initial cost of the house, of course. However, it may be more economical in the long run because such work can usually be done cheaper at the time the house is built.

1. Which sentence best expresses the main idea?
  - A) Some one building a house can save money by planning for future needs.
  - B) Homeowners often find out too late that they need more space.
  - C) Plumbing, heating and electrical work should be finished before the house is bought.
  - D) Bedrooms and bathrooms are most common additions to a new house.
2. Which is the best title for the passage?
  - A) A house is Not a Home.
  - B) plan for the Future.
  - C) Time is Money.
  - D) Buy Now, Pay Later.
3. The author helps develop the main idea by \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) explaining the reasons for the high cost of construction materials.
  - B) comparing the cost of old versus new houses.
  - C) giving do -it -yourself pointers on plumbing and electric work.
  - D) giving practical suggestions on maximizing living space.
4. The topic sentence is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) at the beginning
  - B) at the end
  - C) in the middle
  - D) not stated in the paragraph.

#### Passage 4

Some of the notebooks that George Washington kept as a young man are still in existence, and they show that he learned a little Latin, that he acquired some of the basic elements of good conduct, and that he read a little literature. At school he seems to have cared only for mathematics. His was a brief and most in complete education for a gentleman, and it was all the formal education he was to have, since, unlike some of the other young Virginia gentlemen of his time, he did not go on to the College of William and Mary in the Virginia capital of Williamsburg. In terms of intellectual preparation and power, then, Washington is in sharp contrast with some other early American presidents, such as John Adams, Thomas Jefferson, and James Madison. In later years, Washington probably regretted his lack of intellectual training. He never felt comfortable in formal debate, or in discussions

that were not concerned with everyday, practical matters. And inasmuch as he never learned to speak French, he refused to visit France because he felt he would be embarrassed at not being able to speak directly to the statesmen of that country. Thus, unlike Jefferson and Adam, he never reached Europe.

1. The main idea of this passage is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) Washington's education showed unusual variety, including as it did, study in fields as varied as mathematics and literature.
  - B) Washington's education was probably equal to that obtained by other Virginia gentlemen of his age.
  - C) Washington's education may seem limited by modern standards, but it appears to have been entirely adequate for the duties of his later years.
  - D) Washington's education was extremely limited and probably put him at a disadvantage in later life.
2. The passage suggests that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) American presidents should speak a foreign language.
  - B) American presidents should go to Europe at least once.
  - C) American presidents should have a good command of mathematics and literature.
  - D) American presidents should be knowledgeable in various fields.
3. The passage could be entitled \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) George Washington and his educational background.
  - B) George Washington and other gentlemen of his age.
  - C) George Washington and his study in college.
  - D) George Washington and his maths & literature.

#### Passage 5

Until the War of 1812, the United States had always bought its manufactured goods, especially its fine cloth, from England. During the war, however, the United States could neither sell its raw materials nor buy manufactured goods in European markets. There was nothing to do but manufacture its own goods. By the end of the War of 1812 there were nearly 150,000 men and women working in cotton and woolen mills in the United States. We have no figures on the number of workers employed in the various stages of iron production, but we know that the iron industry had greatly increased. Besides the cloth and iron works, there was a great leather industry, including shoe factories, saddle shops, and harness-making shops, while American hatters were able to supply the market for wool hats and fur caps.

1. The main idea of this passage is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) As a result of the War of 1812, Americans began to produce

better cloth than they had previously from abroad.

- B) The War of 1812 caused large numbers of Americans to move from the farms into the factories.
  - C) After the war of 1812 the United States was far less dependent of Europe for its manufactured goods.
  - D) The War of 1812 caused a temporary change in the pattern of trade between the United States and Europe.
2. The passage suggests that\_\_\_\_\_
- A) America's major trading partners were Europeans before 1812.
  - B) America was reluctant to sell its products to Europe after 1812.
  - C) America's manufactured goods were badly needed in Europe before 1812.
  - D) America imported cloth, iron, and leather from Europe after 1812.
3. The passage could be entitled\_\_\_\_\_
- A) America: a shift from agriculture to industry.
  - B) America: a shift from import to export.
  - C) America: a shift from cotton and woolen industry to iron industry.
  - D) America: a shift from dependence to self-sufficiency.

#### Passage 6

Most civilizations and cultures—in their sacred writings, in their oral traditions, in their folk stories—have some reference to the origin of language. Only rarely (at least in the records that have come down to us) did the ancients try to learn something about speech phenomena by observation or experimentation. The Greek historian Herodotus (fifth century B.C.) records one such incident: an Egyptian king named Psammetichos wished to determine which of the world's languages was oldest. To gain this information he decided to isolate two newborn infants until such time as they should begin to speak; the assumption being that, lacking any pattern to imitate, they would therefore naturally employ the most primitive of the languages. In the course of time the children were heard to utter something that was recorded as *bekos*—which turned out to be similar to the Phrygian word for "breast." Therefore, Phrygian (a language once spoken in Asia Minor) was held to be the first language of mankind, at least by King Psammetichos and, we may presume, by his court.

1. The main idea of this passage is\_\_\_\_\_.
- A) Psammetichos concluded that the first word that children speak is the word for "bread."
  - B) Psammetichos concluded that Phrygian was the oldest language in the world.
  - C) Psammetichos concluded that the oldest word in any language

is the word for "bread."

- D) Psammetichos concluded that Phrygian was the easiest language in the world to learn.

2. The passage suggests that it is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) hard to determine which language was the oldest.
- B) fairly easy to determine which language was the oldest.
- C) quite possible to determine which language was the oldest.
- D) impossible to study ancient languages.

3. The passage could be entitled \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) King and Greek historian.
- B) oldest spoken language in the world.
- C) of speech phenomena by the ancients.
- D) on writing and speaking.

#### Passage 7

A decade prior to their defeat of the Spanish Armada, the English made their first attempts to colonize America. Securing in 1578 royal permission for exploration and settlement, Sir Humphrey Gilbert twice set out for America. His first expedition was scattered by a storm, and on his second, in 1583, his frail vessel disappeared. Gilbert's half\_brother, Sir Walter Raleigh, then took up the task and spent the remainder of his life and his large fortune in an effort to plant a settlement. His first expedition, in 1584, brought back glowing reports of the coast of Virginia; a second sent over the following year to plant a colony returned in discouragement; and a third, left isolated on the island of Roanoke, disappeared from history, leaving as the only evidence the word "Croatoan" carved on a tree. With his fortune exhausted, Raleigh retired from active colonization, but he remained until his death a strong supporter of English expansion.

1. The main idea of this passage is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) If it had not been for the knowledge he gained from Gilbert's expeditions, Raleigh would probably have been far less successful in his explorations of the American coast.
- B) Although Raleigh was more successful than Gilbert in exploring the American coast, his efforts at colonization ended in failure, too.
- C) Gilbert and Raleigh are remembered as the first Englishmen to conduct successful explorations of the American coast.
- D) Both Gilbert and Raleigh, the first two Englishmen to attempt the settlement of America, lost their lives in the course of their explorations.

2. The passage suggests that the explorations were

- A) of risk. C) discouraging.
- B) great significance. D) guilty

3. The passage could be entitled:

- A) Raleigh's joint efforts to reach America.
- B) permission for exploration and settlement.
- C) The English attempts to colonize america.
- D) Raleigh's fortune was exhausted.

#### Passage 8

It has been estimated that only about twenty thousand words are in full use in English today, and if this estimate is correct, it brings us up to Shakespeare's total. Of course, one—fifth, or about four thousand, are said to be of Anglo—Saxon origin, and three—fifths, or about twelve thousand, are of Latin, Greek and French origin. This, of course, does not mean that our everyday conversation consists chiefly of foreign words. According to one estimate, one—fourth of all our spoken language consists of repetitions of the words and, be, have, it, of, the, to, will, you, I, a, on, that, and is. Another analysis of five million words written by adults reveals that our ten most frequently used words are I, the, and, to, of, in, we, for, you and a. Both lists consist, without exception, of native words. If we go into literary usage, we find that words of the Bible are ninety—four per cent native, Shakespeare's ninety per cent, Tennyson's eighty—eight per cent, Milton's eighty—one per cent, and Samuel Johnson's seventy—two per cent. Only in present—day technical writings do we find the foreign element climbing to forty per cent.

1. The main idea of this passage is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) The words most frequently used in English conversation and literature are native.
  - B) English literature makes greater use of foreign words than does ordinary conversation.
  - C) Scientific writing in English contains a very high percentage of foreign words.
  - D) Some of the commonest words in English have been borrowed from Latin, Greek, and French.
2. The passage suggests that English \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) has twenty thousand words.
  - B) could use roughly twenty thousand words.
  - C) words are mainly made of foreign words.
  - D) ninety-four per cent of English words in the Bible are borrowed ones.
3. The passage could be entitled \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) story of foreign languages.
  - B) story of the words.
  - C) story of English literatrus.
  - D) The story of English.

#### Passage 9

In the 1840's and 1850's, America developed the famous clipper

ships, the fastest sailing vessels the world had ever known. These graceful, three-masted ships were built mostly in New England shipyards, and they carried goods and people to every part of the world. During the era of the clipper ships the United States rapidly developed its merchant marine until it was the second largest in the world. With the commencement of American Civil War, however, ocean commerce was reduced and fewer ships were built. The Southern navy destroyed many Northern merchant vessels, and the historic battle between the monitor and the Merrimac proved that iron ships were going to take the place of wooden vessels. The United States never did build iron ships on as large a scale as it had built the clipper ships. After the war there was a tendency on the part of American businessmen and bankers to invest their money in railroads and other industries rather than in ocean shipping.

1. The main idea of this passage is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) It was some time after the Civil War that American shipping regained the position it had held in the days of the clipper ships.
  - B) After the Civil War the American clipper ships were gradually replaced by even larger and faster iron vessels.
  - C) Because of their great speed, the clipper ships proved as useful during the American Civil War as they had in peacetime.
  - D) The disappearance of clipper ships and a general decline in American ocean shipping began during the Civil War.
2. The passage suggests that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) The clipper ships were in favour after the Civil War.
  - B) The iron ships were in favour before the Civil War.
  - C) The clipper ships were built for trade.
  - D) The iron ships were built for wars.
3. The passage could be entitled \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) The clipper ships and their amazing speed.
  - B) The reduction in clipper ships and iron ships.
  - C) The investment in railroads and other industries.
  - D) The Civil War and the building of iron ships.

#### Passage 10

The large part which war played in English affairs in the Middle Ages, the fact that the control of the army and navy was in the hands of those who spoke French, and the circumstances that much of English fighting was done in France all resulted in the introduction into English of a number of French military terms. The art of war has undergone such changes since the battles of Hastings, Lewes, and Agincourt that many words once common are now only in historical use. Their places have been taken by later borrowings, often likewise from French, many of them being words acquired by the French in the

course of their wars in Italy during the sixteenth century. Nevertheless we still use French words of the Middle Ages when we speak of the army and navy, of peace, enemy, battle, soldier, guard, and spy, and we have kept the names of officers such as captain, lieutenant, and sergeant. Some of the French terms were introduced into English because they were needed to identify a new object or express a new idea. In other cases a French and a native English word for the same thing existed side by side. Sometimes one or the other has since been lost from the language; but sometimes (as in the case of the pair battle and fight) both the borrowed and the native word have been retained in common use.

1. The main idea of this passage is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) Most of today's common English military terms date from the sixteenth century or late.
  - B) A study of the English vocabulary shows the important part which warfare has played in England's history.
  - C) Many French words borrowed into English during the Middle Ages have since disappeared from the language.
  - D) Many military terms used in English were originally borrowed from French, some as early as the Middle Ages.
2. The passage suggests that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) Some of the military officers in English army spoke French in the Middle Ages.
  - B) French military terms have replaced all English Military terms.
  - C) Italian army were defeated by French army in the Middle Ages.
  - D) It's better to express an idea in French than in English.
3. The passage could be entitled \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) How the French fought against the Italians.
  - B) How French is superior to English.
  - C) How some French military terms came into English.
  - D) How popular some of the French words are today.

### 第三节 专项训练答案

Passage 1: 1.D	2.C	3.A	4.B
Passage 2: 1.C	2.D	3.B	
Passage 3: 1.A	2.B	3.D	4.A
Passage 4: 1.D	2.D	3.A	
Passage 5: 1.C	2.A	3.D	
Passage 6: 1.B	2.A	3.C	
Passage 7: 1.B	2.A	3.C	
Passage 8: 1.A	2.B	3.D	
Passage 9: 1.D	2.C	3.B	

Passage 10: 1.D      2.A      3.C



### 第三章 了解重要事实和细节

#### 第一节 总 述

在英语阅读理解中，除了把握文章的大意和中心思想以外，还要了解用来阐述大意和中心思想有关事实和细节。这包括两方面。第一，阅读过程中，读者要能够把事实与作者的观点或评论区分开来，能够把文章的主要内容和细节内容区分开来。第二，在阅读完成之后，读者应该能回忆文章中的重要事实和有关细节。这两种相互关联的技能不仅有利于读者正确把握文章的大意和中心思想，而且有利于读者对所读材料进行一定的判断、推理和引申，以便得出读者自己的体会或结论。有的阅读文章用较大的篇幅举例，有的涉及到很多事实和细节，而用来直接阐述文章大意的篇幅并不多。在这种情况下，读者往往容易把握不住，掌握不住重点内容，从而不能正确理解文章的大意。其实考研英语理解的考题大多数是关于具体内容的考察，目的是考察学生对阐述主题思想细节的理解。这类考题的特点是一般可以直接地或稍加推理就能找出答案。

在阅读过程中，如果遇到某些细节内容或作者列举的某些详细事实，读者要想一想这些细节和事实是用来证明文章中哪个主要观点的。有读者还要注意作者列举事实的顺序，甚至要重新组织这些细节内容和事实，才能理解作者的意图。成人读者一般来说有较强的思维能力，完成这一任务并不困难，但有的成人读者已经养成一种逐字逐句阅读方式，不这仅不利于提高阅读速度，也妨碍读者区分主次内容，从而不能把文章大意与重要事实和细节区分开来。

近些年来，阅读速度越来越受到重视，因而有人主张在阅读中可以跳过文章中的细节内容和作者列举的事例，其实这并不完全正确。如果不能全面正确理解所读文章的主要内容，阅读速度再快也没有用。而只有了解了重点细节和事实，才能准确把握文章的大意。

好的文章列举事实都按照一定的规律。以下是常用的六种方法。

1) 简单列举。这实际上是一种无顺序列举，所有的事实都具有同等的重要性，也不分先后。

2) 根据重要性列举。为了强调某些事实的重要性，有时作者首先列举最重要的事实或细节，然后列举次要的内容。当然有时越往后列举的事实越重要。作者一般不会把重要事实放在中间列举，因为放在中间的内容容易被忽视。

3) 根据时间顺序列举。在描述事件发生过程时，作者通常按照时间顺序列举事实。按照这种顺序列举的事实既便于理解也便于记忆。

4) 根据空间顺序列举。在描述类的文章中作者经常根据空间顺序来安排细节内容。比如，由远到近，从上到下，从左到右等。

5) 根据原因和结果顺序列举。事件与事件之间通常有原因和结果的关系。作者在描述这种关系时通常先陈述原因，然后陈述结果。但偶尔也采用相反的顺序。

6) 根据比较和对比列举。比较是对相似的事物的异同点进行比较，对比是把不同或相对的事物进行对比。比较和对比经常用来阐述一些复杂的或有争议的问题，也是作者用来证明自己观点的主要方式。

了解作者列举事实和描述细节的规律有助于读者记忆和准确理解事实和细节，并为理解文章大意和重点内容打下基础。值得注意的是作者往往不是单一地用一种方式，而是多种方式交叉使用。阅读下面的段落，想一想作用是按照什么顺序陈述事实和细节的。

In 1608 Captain John Smith wrote a description of his capture by Powhatan. He made it clear that the Indian Chief had treated him with unusual courtesy and friendliness. In 1624 Smith repeated the story in his General History of Virginia, but his life had changed. He described himself as having "a prince's mind imprisoned in a poor man's purse." He wanted his book to be profitable so he decided to write a new version of his now famous encounter with Chief Powhatan and his daughter, Pocahontas. In the new version, the once-friendly Powhatan would have had Smith's head cut off if Pocahontas had not saved his life at the last moment.

这是一段十分简单的叙述，表面上看只有时间顺序。其实这段文字里有重要的原因和结果关系。Smith 于 1608 年写了他被印第安人抓去的经历。时隔 16 年之后，Smith 于 1624 年改写了他的故事。从这里我们可以推断 Smith 改写他的故事事出有因，很可能在那 16 年中生活贫困。段落中的"a prince's mind imprisoned in a poor man's purse."可以证明这一点。为了使他的书能赚钱，Smith 甚至改动了故事的主要情节，即为了金钱而牺牲作品的历史真实性。从这儿我们还可以进一步推论，很多历史传奇故事并不是像作者描述的那样，而是带有很多夸张和杜撰。

从上面的分析可以看出，把握文章的重点事实和细节的关系，不仅有助于读者掌握文章的大意，还有助于读者正确、合理地推断文章的隐含意义。

阅读下面的短文并回答后面的三个问题。

If you are interested in buying a pair of contact lenses (隐形眼镜), be prepared to pay \$200 or more. Generally there are three main reasons why people want contact lenses. You may need them because the cornea (眼角膜) of your eye is misshaped and ordinary glasses are not satisfactory. If so, you'll be in the group that comprises 1 to 2 percent of contact lens wearers. But you may want them for a sport or a vocation. Perhaps you're a baseball player, a boxer, a swimmer, an aviator, an actor, or perhaps you're engaged in an industry where flying particles may endanger your eyes. If you get your contact lenses for one of these reasons, you are in the same group with about 20 percent of the users. But if for some reason you feel that glasses are handicapping your appearance and you'd rather have invisible glasses, you'll have lots of company. About 79 percent of lens users hope to improve their looks

1. This paragraph shows that contact lenses can\_\_\_\_\_.

A) protect the eyes from heavy, flying objects.

- 答案及解释：

第二道题：正确答案为 A。即大多数人戴隐形眼镜是为了外观，这从原文最后一句话可以得到印证，“About 79 percent of lens users hope to improve their looks”. B 不对，根据常识，隐形眼镜比普通眼镜要贵，根据原文第一句话也可以推断这一点。C 不对，原文中没有提到这一点。D 不对，虽然原文提到有的人戴隐形眼镜是为了外观，但并没有说普通眼镜不符合时尚（过时）。

第四道题：正确答案为：But if for some reason you feel that glasses are handicapping your appearance and you'd rather have invisible glasses, you'll have lots of company.

### Passage 1

The Eskimos need a great many different things to survive. To make a snow house they need a special knife, shaped something like a cutlass, to cut the snow blocks. For the bed platform they need layers of heavy skins and furs and poles and brush to lay underneath. They need a

deerskin blanket to cover the whole family at night. Then they need a set of short poles to make a frame over the lamp for hanging the pot and for drying clothes. Flint and pyrite are needed to strike a spark to light the fire, and a special moss is needed to make wicks for the lamp. Then people need bone picks to take the hot meat out of the stew pot and cups to drink the hot soup. For melting snow of freshwater ice for drinking, they keep skin buckets on the platform near a lamp. For a window in the house, they need a clear sheet of fresh-water ice.

1. The paragraph suggests that Eskimos\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) trade extensively with outsiders.
  - B) kill penguins for their meat and skins.
  - C) hunt together as a family unit.
  - D) sleep together in the same bed.
2. This selection clearly points to the fact that Eskimos\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) depend upon nature to fulfill their needs.
  - B) never live very far from salt water.
  - C) have no weapons for self-defense.
  - D) consider themselves a hard-working people.
3. When the author says that, "Eskimos need a great many different things to survive." he is really saying that\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) Eskimos exaggerate their real needs.
  - B) Eskimos are dependent on basic items.
  - C) Eskimos are overly concerned with survival.
  - D) Eskimos need many luxuries to be comfortable.
4. Underline a sentence which proves that Eskimos live in areas where there is some plant life.

## Passage 2

To discover whether bees can see colors, the following experiment is set up. A table is put in a garden, and on the table is a piece of blue cardboard with a drop of syrup on it. After a short time, bees come to the syrup. The bees then fly to their hive and give the syrup to other bees in the hive. Then they return to the feeding-place which they have discovered. After a while, we take away the blue cardboard with the syrup on it. Instead of this card, we now put a blue card on the left side of the first feeding-place and a red card to the right of the first feeding-place. These new cards have no syrup on them. Thus, the blue card is on the left, the red card on the right, and there is nothing where the first blue feeding-card used to be. Very soon bees arrive again, and fly straight to the blue card. None go to the red card.

1. The activity of the bees proves that\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) they use syrup to make honey.
  - B) they cannot see colors.

- C) they like the color blue.
- D) they know when man is experimenting.
- 2. The experiment suggests that\_\_\_\_\_.
- A) bees are more intelligent than we think.
- B) insects are tireless workers.
- C) man is curious about insect vision.
- D) man is often cruel to animals in the name of science.
- 3. The second phase of the experiment involves\_\_\_\_\_.
- A) changing feeding places.      B) adding several new colors.
- C) to terrify the antelope.      D) substituting cards.
- 4. Underline a sentence which suggests that bees are creatures of habit.

### Passage 3

Before the Indians had horses, they used a "surround hunt," or drive, to get game. The Hopi, for example, hunted antelope in this way. They chose a place partly fenced in by hills and with trees nearby. There they built a corral of strong tree trunks with one opening. From this, long wings led out, fenced with brush for some distances. Men stood along these wings to scare the antelope so that they would not try to leap the brush but would gallop down the open space into the corral. When a herd was nearby, the boys of the village were sent to round them up. They got behind the animals, and made a fire to frighten them. Then the boys closed in around them, howling like wolves. Now at first what his trunk is for. It gets in his way and seems more of a hindrance than a help until his parents show him what to do with it. Insects, seem to start life equipped with all necessary reflexes, but they seem to improve their talents with practice. Young spiders, for example, begin by making quite primitive little webs. They attain perfection in their art only after much time. Older spiders, if deprived of their spinnerets, will take to hunting.

- 1. The author offers proof that animals \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) know what to do because of instinct.
- B) are controlled by heredity.
- C) often reject their parents.
- D) learn behavior from other animals.
- 2. The Opening sentence alerts the reader to development by \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) simple listing      B) spatial description.
- C) comparison.      D) order-of-importance.
- 3. Which one of the following sentences supports the old saying, "practice makes perfect" \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) Young birds and young bats must be taught to fly.
- B) Frank Buck says that the young elephant does not seem to know

- at first what his trunk is for .
- C)Thousands of young seals drown every year.
- D)Older harvest mice build better nests than beginners.
4. Underline a sentence which shows that animals and insects can adapt their behavior to change.

#### Passage4

All warm-blooded animals are very helpless at first.Young birds and young bats must be taught to fly. Thousands of young seals drown every year. They never learn to swim“naturally.”The mother has to take them out under her flipper and show them how.Birds sing without instruction; however, they do not sing well unless they are able to hear older members of their species.Older harvest mice build better nests than beginners. Frank Buck says that the young elephant does not seem to know at first what his trunk is for .It gets in his way and seems more of a hindrance than a help until his parents show him what to do with it .Insects, seem to start life equipped with all necessary reflexes, but they seem to improve their talents with practice. Young spiders, for example, begin by making quite primitive little webs. They attain perfection in their art only after much time. Older spiders, if deprived of their spinnerets, will take to hunting.

- The author offers proof that animals \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)know what to do because of instinct.  
 B)are controlled by heredity.  
 C)often reject their parents.  
 D)learn behavior from other animals.
- The Opening sentence alerts the reader to development by \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)simple listing      B)spatial description.  
 C)comparison.      D)order-of-importance.
- Which one of the following sentences supports the old saying, "practice makes perfect" \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)Young birds and young bats must be taught to fly.  
 B)Frank Buck says that the young elephant does not seem to know at first what his trunk is for .  
 C)Thousands of young seals drown every year.  
 D)Older harvest mice build better nests than beginners.
- Underline a sentence which shows that animals and insects can adapt their behavior to change.

#### Passage 5

On the morning of November 18, 1755, an earthquake shook Boston, Massachusetts. John Winthrop, a professor at Harvard College, felt the quake and awoke. "I rose," Winthrop wrote, "and lighting a candle, looked on my watch, and found it to be 15 minutes after four. "John

Winthrop pattered downstairs to the grandfather clock. It had stopped three minutes before, at 4:11. Except for stopping the clock, the quake had only thrown a key from the mantel to the floor.

The clock had stopped because Winthrop had put some long glass tubes he was using for an experiment into the case for safekeeping. The quake had knocked the tubes over and blocked the pendulum. Winthrop, therefore, had the exact time that the earthquake had hit Boston. He looked at the key on the floor. The quake had thrown it forward in the direction of the quake's motion by a shock coming from the northwest, perhaps in Canada.

1. The selection suggests that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) earthquakes are common in Boston.
  - B) John Winthrop was a scientist.
  - C) John Winthrop had difficulty sleeping.
  - D) New England was a center for clock-making.
2. The author organizes details according to a combination of \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) simple listing and contrasts.
  - B) spatial development and comparisons.
  - C) time order and cause and effect.
  - D) order-of-importance and order -of -interest.
3. The selection proves that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) the direction of an earthquake can be detected.
  - B) man is often indifferent to the power of nature.
  - C) earthquakes occur most often during nighttime hours.
  - D) universities study the cause of earthquakes.
4. Underline a sentence which shows that the earthquake was not severe.

#### Passage 6

The search for ways of preserving foods is not new. Primitive man learned that he could make foods last by drying them. The Indians, for example, hung buffalo and deer meat in the sun. The greatest single advance began in 1800 when a Frenchman, Nicholas Appert, discovered that he could preserve certain foods by sealing them in jars and keeping the air from them. The process was the start of the vast canning industry which brings us many foods in all seasons. Pasteurizing is another process which delays spoilage. It is of great importance to the dairy industry. Foods like apricots, prunes, peaches, and apples are often preserved by drying. The use of chemicals is another method, and some foods are cooked with sugar. But recently the use of frozen foods has grown quickly. Thus, today, more foods than ever before are being processed by freezing.

1. The earliest known method of preserving was \_\_\_\_\_.

- A)sealing food in jars.
  - B)curing food in smoke houses.
  - C)salting food and storing in a cool place.
  - D)hanging food in bright sunlight.
2. Nicholas Appert is given credit for \_\_\_\_\_.
    - A)discovering that air causes food to spoil.
    - B)perfecting the process of pasteurization.
    - C)being the first person to use tin cans to preserve food.
    - D)alerting people to the dangers of using chemicals in food.
  3. By combining facts we can generalize that \_\_\_\_\_.
    - A)frozen foods sell better than canned foods.
    - B)fresh foods are more wholesome than processed foods.
    - C)sugar by itself is a preservative.
    - D)most fruits are preserved by drying.
  4. Underling the sentence which shows that preserving allows us to eat foods which are out of season.

#### Passage 7

Since very early times men have believed that living things could come from non-living things. Some people thought that frogs and toads developed from the mud of ponds, rats from the river Nile, and insects from dew or from rotting waste. Vergil wrote that slime begot frogs. Centuries later, other men wrote that water produced fish, and that mice came from old rags. This notion that living things can come from lifeless matter is known as the theory of "spontaneous generation." Today we know that living things can come only from other living things. Redi, in the 1600s, was the first person to prove that insects do not originate from rotting matter. From his experiment, Redi wrote that maggots appear in decaying meat: simply because the eggs of flies hatch there, and not from spontaneous generation.

1. What was most responsible for first promoting the theory of spontaneous generation and then later disproving it ?
  - A)the convincing testimony of scientists.
  - B)man's direct observations of nature.
  - C)man's understanding of biology.
  - D)the writings of learned men.
2. Early man seemed to place little belief in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A)religious teachings.
  - B)age- old superstitions.
  - C)normal processes of reproduction.
  - D)hearsay and rumors.
3. Redi's discovery that insects do not originate from rotting matter was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A)accidental.      B)deliberate.
  - C)patriotic.      D)illogical.



4. Underline a sentence which suggests that Vergi lived hundreds of years before Redi.

#### Passage 8

The energy which the sun radiates goes in every direction. However, Only a minute part of it falls on the earth. Even so, it represents the power of about five million horsepower per square mile per day . the sun gives us as much energy every minute as mankind uses in a year. At present, we use this energy indirectly, and it is our only final source of power. Coal represents the chemical action of the sun on green plants thousands of years ago. Water power results from the sun's creating vapor and the resulting rain. Even windmills operate because of air currents set in motion by the uneven heating effects of the sun in different places. some day ,through chemistry or some type of solar mo-tor, we shall harness this source of energy more directly. Already, a scientist has worked out an engine, surprisingly efficient. This engine uses a series of mirrors which concentrate the sun's energy on a tube of water to create steam.

1. This paragraph states that \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)the earth uses only a fraction of the sun's energy.  
B)early man was incapable of using solar energy.  
C)solar radiation can be dangerous.  
D)the windmill was the forerunner of the steam engine.
2. From this selection we learn that \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)weather is influenced by the sun's energy.  
B)water power is the most economical form of energy.  
C)coal is the result of heat and pressure.  
D)the sun is the source of all our energy.
3. If the sun converts water to steam, we have an example of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A)chemical energy.      B)photoelectric energy.  
C)modified energy.      D)direct energy.
4. Underline the sentence which proves that much energy is available from the sun.

#### Passage 9

During the first half of the nineteenth century much thought was given to building the Panama Canal. The discovery of gold in California in 1848 brought an increased demand for a transportation link across Panama. A railroad line was completed after six years of hard labor in the swamps and jungles. Over two thousand workmen died from yellow fever and malaria. In 1881 a French organization tried to build a canal across the Isthmus. For eleven years workmen struggled against heat and disease. At least 15,000 died before the French gave up their

attempts to build the canal. For years the abandoned machinery lay in the jungles. At the close of the Spanish-American War the United States bought a strip of land ten miles wide across the Isthmus. Immediate attention was given to the control of diseases. In two years yellow fever was completely eliminated. Because of the work of American medical heroes, it was possible to build the splendid Panama Canal.

1. Prior to the successful completion of the Panama Canal, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) France bought a strip of land across the Isthmus of Panama.  
B) Malaria was wiped out as a killer disease.  
C) one country failed in its attempts to build a canal.  
D) American doctors were honored for their work.
2. The building of the Panama Canal represents \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) man's ability to resist disease.  
B) man's unceasing thirst for danger.  
C) man's unyielding desire for progress.  
D) man's spirit of invention.
3. The author presents details according to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) order of importance.      B) spatial order  
C) simple listing.              D) time order.
4. Underline a sentence which proves that America's first priority was the prevention of illness.

#### Passage 10

Vocational training has gone through many stages of development in American history. It was given to the children of the poor during the colonial period through the system of apprenticeship. Boys were bound out for a few years to a master, who agreed to teach them a trade and to look after their welfare. Often the agreement required that the apprentice be taught to read and write. With the advent of the academy, instruction was given for training in occupations. It was Benjamin Franklin's hope in planning his academy that young people should "learn those things that are likely to be most useful." He wanted emphasis to be placed on the professions which the young men wished to follow. Other academies were founded with similar purposes. Then came vocational training in high schools. A reason for the building of the first high school was that a parent wished to give his child an education which would prepare him for an active life and serve as a basis for a profession.

1. In the colonial period, vocational training \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) was thought to be inferior schooling.  
B) was an alternative to expensive private schools.  
C) often failed to teach children how to read.  
D) tried to give children a comprehensive education.

2. In Franklin's Academy \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) individual preferences were considered.  
 B) discipline was very strict.  
 C) young men would earn a degree.  
 D) students studied on a year - round basis.
3. The author develops his ideas according to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) order of importance.      B) comparison, contrast.  
 C) spatial order.              D) time order.
4. Underline the sentence which shows that Benjamin Franklin's Academy was an example for other academies to follow.

### 第三节 专项训练答案

Passage 1: 1.D    2.A    3.B

4. For the bed platform they need layers of heavy skins and furs and poles and brush to lay underneath.

Passage 2: 1.A    2.C    3.D

4. Then they return to the feeding - place which they have discovered.

Passage 3: 1.C    2.D    3. C

4. Before the Indians had horses, they used a "surround hunt," or drive ,to get game. OR: Good marksmen

Passage 4: 1.D    2.C    3.D

4. Older spiders, if deprived of their spinnerets, will take to hunting.

Passage 5: 1.B    2.C    3.A

4. Except for stopping the clock, the quake had only thrown a key from the mantel to the floor.

Passage 6: 1.D    2.A    3.C

4. The process was the start of the vast caning industry which brings us many foods in all seasons.

Passage 7: 1.D    2.C    3.B

4. centuries later, other men wrote that water produced fish, and that mice came from old rags.

Passage 8: 1.A    2.D    3.D

4. Even so, it represents the power of about five million horsepower per square mile per day .

Passage 9: 1.C    2.C    3.D

4. Immediate attention was given to the control of diseases.

Passage 10: 1.B    2.A    3.D

4. Other academies were founded with similar purposes.

## 第四章 如何判断词汇和短语的意义

### 第一节 总 述

绝大多数英语学习者在阅读英文时或多或少要遇到不认识的单词或短语。有的人一遇到生词就停下来查字典，有的则读完一两页后查字典，有的人则完全不管生词。其实阅读中遇到生词时，只要不影响对文章的主要意思的理解，一般应该继续往下读。如果生词的确影响对内容的理解，查字典当然是一种办法。但过于频繁地查字典不仅影响阅读速度，而且影响对作品内容的整体理解，有的人甚至因为过于频繁地查字典而失去阅读的兴趣。对阅读中遇到的生词最好的方法是通过各种途径进行猜测和判断。

虽然各种考试都有考试大纲，并规定了词汇教考范围，但是试题中不可避免地出现一些超纲词汇，尤其是在阅读理解中。因此很多教学（考试）大纲要求学生能够根据上下文判断大纲规定的词表以外的某些词汇或短语的意义，研究生入学考试也不例外。

判断生词意义的最有效的方法是根据上下文内容（语境）进行合理的猜测。如果读者初步了解了上下文的主要意思，再根据自己的常识判断生词在这个语境中的作用，就能大致猜出生词的意思。请你猜测下面例子中 *revive* 一词的含义。（如果你已经知道这个词的意思，请你想一想从这个句子中的哪些线索可以判断出这个词的含义）。

Tom fainted when the biology teacher cut open the dead frog, and the school nurse was sent for to revive him immediately.

生物老师把一只死青蛙切开时汤姆晕倒了，所以马上去请校医（school nurse）。那么校医来对汤姆采取什么行动呢？肯定是进行抢救，使他苏醒过来，这样就能猜出 *revive* 的意思是 "bring back to life"（使苏醒，使再生）。句子中的 "fainted"（晕倒）和 "school nurse" 是重要的线索。现在请你猜猜下面的句子中 *anchor* 一词的意思。

The ship had hardly stopped when the captain ordered his seamen to throw the anchor.

这个句子中，除最后一个词以外，其他的都是常用词，细心的读者可从 *seamen*（海员）判断出句中的 *captain* 不是“上校”或“队长”的意思，而是“船长”，那么句子的大意是“船一停下来，船长命令他的海员抛……”根据常识，海员经常抛锚，使船停泊。那么 "*anchor*" 的意思就是“锚”。

那么猜测词义时，是不是要仔细分析生词前后所有的词呢？其实不必要。一篇（一段）文章往往有且只有一个主题（*theme*）。为了阐述主题思想，作者往往要用到很多与主题有关的词汇，这些词汇中肯定有一些熟悉的，当然也有不认识的。遇到生词时，应该很自然地把生词与文章的主题联系起来，另外还应该与其他主题词汇进行联想。阅读下面的短文，想一想短文的主题是什么，哪些是主题词汇，划线单词的意思是什么。

Figures released by the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare tell one of the most dramatic stories in the history of medicine. In the past ten years the reported cases of Polio in the United States has been cut by 93 percent. One of the most dreaded diseases has been brought under control by a single vaccination.

The story of the victory over polio has two important aspects. First is the long record of faithful and careful research on the part of scientists who refused to be defeated. Second is the public support for the attack on the disease as seen in the March of Dimes. The public saw polio as a social menace and was determined to do whatever could be done to get rid of it .

这段大字大的主题是关于医疗与健康。小的主题是关于一种疾病的根除，其中关于医疗与健康的主题词汇有 health, welfare, medicine, cases, polio, disease, vaccination 等。假如这些词汇中有不认识的，至少可以断定它们与主题有关，再根据上下文就可以猜测出它们的含义。比如文中的 polio 出现过两次，即 “...the cases of polio...”（可以理解为“关于 polio 的案例/病例”）和 “...the victory over polio...”（战胜/克复 polio）。人这两处的语境大致能猜出 polio 是一种疾病。另外，从第一段的第二和第三句话的关系也能明确 polio 的含义。第二句话说 “...the reported cases of polio in the United States has been cut by 93 percent” (polio 的发病率减少了 93%)，而第三句话说 “One of the most dreaded diseases has been brought under control...”（最可怕的是一种疾病得到了控制...），因而可以肯定 polio 是一种危害严重的疾病（小儿麻痹症）至于读者是否能够断定 polio 就是“小儿麻痹症”，那就不一定，也无关紧要。如果文章再长一些，而且描述了 polio 的症状和后果，也许读者就能够断定 polio 就是“小儿麻痹症”。

另外，文章说“小儿麻痹症”是能过“a single vaccination”得到控制的，那么什么能够控制疾病呢？无非是药物或某种治疗手段，而词后缀“-ation”表示动作，所以 vaccination 可能不是药物的名称，这样大致可以猜测出 vaccination 的含义（打疫苗）。

文章说 “The public saw polio as a social menace and was determined to do whatever could be done to get rid of it”（公众把小儿麻痹症看成一种“社会××”，并决心尽一切努力根除它）。有一般常识的人都会断定，此外的 social menace 很可能是“社会危害”。“menace”的本意是“威胁，恐吓”。

遇到生词时，还可以看看上下文有没有生词的另一种说法，或者对生词的解释和说明。有时作者提心读者不能正确理解某个词的含义，有意识地在下文对生僻的词或专业术语作解释，或者提供一些暗示。请你猜猜下面句子中 fallible 的意思。

Teachers are fallible; they make mistakes just like everyone else.

这句话有两个并列分句，很显然第二个分句 they make mistakes just like everyone else. 是对第一个分句的进一步说明，即“他们（教师）和其他人一样会犯错误”，因此第一个分句中的 fallible 的意思应该是 be able to make mistake.

除了根据上下文猜测词义以外，有时读者还可以利用自己的经历（experiences）和基本知识（general knowledge about the world）进行猜测。请你猜猜下面句子中 emancipated 的意思。

President Abraham Lincoln emancipated the slaves and led American people fighting the civil war...

大家都知道，美国总统林肯解放了黑人奴隶并领导美国人民赢得了内战的胜利，因此这句话中 emancipated 的意思肯定是“解放”，相当于“freed”。请你根据下面这句话所讲的内容猜一猜句中的 ecstatic 的意思。

Receiving an "A" on her history exam in the morning, getting her driver's license in the afternoon, and coming home to a surprise birthday party made Sue ecstatic.

根据这句话，Sue 这天做了三件事：上午历史教试得了 A，下午得了驾驶执照，回家后别人为她准备了 a surprise birthday party，这三件事使得 Sue 怎么样呢？读者稍加思考，就能想到 Sue 一定很高兴，因此，ecstatic 的意思是“very happy”。

除了根据上下文猜测词义外，根据词的构成，尤其是词的前缀和后缀也能准确地猜测词义。英语中很多词都是词根加前缀或后缀而变来的。这些词根，前缀和后缀的意思一般相对定，假如读者知道词根的意思，很容易猜测出加上词缀后的单词的意思。比如你认识 write 这个词，不用学，你就知道 writer 和 rewrite 这两个词的意思。以下是一些常用的词根和词缀：

前缀	意义	举例
a-(an-)	not, without, lacking	amoral
a-, ab-	away, from	absent, abnormal
anti-	against	antiabortion
auto-	self	automatic, autobiography
bi-	two, twice	bilingual
by-	close, incidental	byproduct
circum-	around	circumstance
co-(col-)	with, together	coauthor
com-(con-)		
contra-	against	contradict
cor-	with, together	correspond
counter-	contrary, opposite	counterproductive
de-	reduce, lower, down	decrease
dis-	away, not, fail to	disappear, disorganised
ex-	out, from	exit
extra-	very, outside the scope of	extracurricular
hyper-	above, excessive, beyond	hypertension
hypo-	under, less than, lower	hypodermic
il-(ir-, im-)	not	immoral
im-	in, into, on, inside	immerse
inter-	between, among	international

intra-(intro-)	within,inside	introspection
macro-	large	macrocosm
mal-	bad, wrong	malfunction
mega-	large, powerful	megaphone
micro-	small	microphone
mid-	middle, halfway	midweek
mini-	very small or short	minimum
mis-	bad, wrong, not	miscalculate
mono-	single, one	monopoly
multi-	many	multipurpose
mon-	not	nonproductive
poly-	many	polygamy
post-	after,behind	postgraduate
pseudo-	false, unreal	pseudonym
re-	again	reorganize
re-(retro-)	behind, back,backward	retroactive
semi-	half, partially	semiretired
sub-(suc-)		
suf-(sug-)		
sup-(sus-)	under, below, lower, lesser	substandard
super-(supra-)	above, over, higherof greater than	supersonic
trans-	across	transport
tri-	three	tricycle
un-	not, opposite, reverse	undo
under	lower,inferior, below	underlie
uni-	one, single	unify, unicycle
词根	意义	举例
-ali-(-alter-)	another,other	alternative
-anthrop-	human	anthropology
-arch-	chief, leader	monarchy

-aud-	listen,hear	audition
-auto-	self	autonomous
-ben-(-bon-)	good	benefactor
-bibl-	book	bibliography
-bio-	life	biology
-capit-(-capt-)	head,chief	capital
-ced-(-cess-)	go, move, surrender	proceed
-cent-	hundred	century
-chron-	time	chronic
-corp-	body	corporation
-cosm-	world,order	microcosm
-cycl-	cycle, wheel	bicycle
-dem-	people	democratic
-dic-	say, tell	dictate
-duc-	lead	conduct
-fact-	do	manufacture
-fed-(-fid-)	faith, trust	confident
-fin-	end	finish
-fort-	strong	fortify
-geo-	earth	geography
-gram-(-graph-)	write	autograph
-hetero-	different	heterodox
-homo-	self,same	homogeneous
-hydro-	water	hydroelectric
-man-	hand	manual
-medi-	middle	medium
-metr-	measure	thermometer
-miss-(-mit-)	send	transmit
-mort-	death	mortal
-nov-	new	renovate
-ology-	study of	biology



-ortho	correct, true, straight	orthodox
-para-	beside, near	paramedic
-pathy-	feeling	sympathy
-ped-(-pod-)	foot	bipedal
-port-	carry	import
-psych-	mind	psychology
-sequ-(-secut-)	follow	consecutive
-soph-	clever, wise	sophisticated
-spec-(-spic-)	look	spectator
-tele-	long distance	telephone
-tract-	pull	tractor
-vene-(-vert-)	turn	converse
-voc-(-vok-)	call	vocal
后缀	意义	举例
-abilit	ability to	educability
-able(-ble, -ible)	capable of being	learnable, edible
-al	possessing the quality of	comical
-ance(-ence)	state, condition of, quality of	tolerance, indifference
-ate	to make	translate
-ation(-tion)	condition of act of	translation, devotion
-dom	state or act of	translation, devotion
-dom	state of condition	wisdom
-ee	recipient of an action	employee
-en	to make	widen
-er	person of thing who or that	farmer
-ess	female	lioness
-ful	characterized by, having the quality of	eventful
-fy	to make	satisfy

## 第二节 专项技能训练

### Passage 1

Laurel and Hardy both started out early in showbusiness, thousands of miles apart. Born in 1890 in England, Laurel, whose real name was Arthur Stanley Jefferson, managed a little theater in his own attic when he was only nine. Oliver Norvell Hardy, born in Georgia in 1892, left home at the age of eight to travel with a troupe called Coburn's

Minstrels.

By the time they were teenagers, beanpole Stan and butter-ball Ollie (who already weighed 250 pounds) had discovered that they could make people laugh. Both of them decided to pursue show business careers in earnest. Neither realized that he'd eventually attain fame only as part of a team.

Laurel came to the United States as an understudy to the great comedian Charlie Chaplin. After their show folded, Stan continued in vaudeville, the live variety entertainment of the day.

Hardy began his film career in 1913 and Laurel began his in 1917. In those silent—movie days, a producer named Hal Roach was the king of comedy, working with popular comedians of the era. It was he who teamed Laurel and Hardy in 1927. They had already appeared in Hal Roach films together, but not as a team.

Both were seasoned performers, but neither was a big star. Laurel was then thirty—seven. Hardy was thirty—five.

Movies were filmed "off the cuff" then almost made up as shooting went along. Laurel was especially good at inventing slapstick action. It was he who suggested that *The Battle of France* be one of Laurel and Hardy's funniest films, feature more pie—throwing than ever.

1. From the name of the troupe Hardy traveled with as a child, you can tell that troupe means \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) a motorcycle gang.      C) a group of performers.
- B) boy scouts.              D) a big, fancy car

2. To attain fame means to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) wish to be famous.
- B) try to become famous without success.
- C) think little of fame.
- D) succeed in becoming famous.

3. The sentence in which folded appears might have been written: Stan continued in vaudeville \_\_\_\_\_ after Chaplin's show \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) closed.                      B) returned
- C) went overseas.              D) got better

4. From what is told of the careers of Laurel and Hardy before the word seasoned appears, you can guess that a seasoned performer is one who

- A) performs only during a certain season.
- B) takes only certain kinds of roles.
- C) has become a big star.
- D) has gained experience over time.

5. As understudy to Charlie Chaplin, Laurel \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) filled in for Chaplin if he couldn't perform.
- B) carried Chaplin's makeup and costumes.
- C) studied with Chaplin.

D) had the dressing room directly under

passage 2

With their distinctive voices, Laurel and Hardy moved easily from silent movies into the "talkies." They remained popular through the Great Depression, which started in 1929 and lasted for about ten years. Americans may have been down—and—out, but they still needed entertainment.

The team graduated from two—reel films to full—length features. In all, they appeared together in seventy—seven shorts and twenty—eight feature films. Students of film say their best work was done in the 1920s and 1930s.

For decades more, the public enjoyed the derby—hatted duo, who faced more tribulations in two reels than most of us face in a year.

Surprisingly, the critics of their day didn't regard Stan and Ollie as great artists. Today, however, the tearful Laurel and the tie-twirling Hardy are considered important contributors to film comedy.

"Well, here's another fine mess you've gotten me into, Stanley," Ollie would whine. You could analyze their art for hours, and many scholars have. But the main thing is to just sit back and enjoy them.

Offscreen, Laurel and Hardy had separate interests and separate lives. But each admired the comedic artistry of the other.

After their retirement from films, the two toured abroad. Europeans loved them. In the United States today, a Laurel and Hardy cult still carries the torch of admiration for the two master zanies.

Oliver Hardy died in 1957, and Stan Laurel in 1965.

下面有每个句子中有一个黑体单，从 A , B , C , D 中选择一个意思与黑体单词最接近的单词。

1. with their **distinctive** voices, Laurel and Hardy moved easily from silent movies into the "talkies."  
A) loud                      C) ordinary  
B) unpleasant              D) unusual
2. The team **graduated** from two—reel films to full—length features.  
A) got diplomas              B) moved to a higher level  
C) alternated between      D) slowly got used to
3. For decades more, the public enjoyed the derby—**batted** duo, who faced more tribulations in two reels than most of us face in a year.  
A) periods of ten years      B) hundreds of days  
C) periods of twenty years   D) an unknown period of time
4. For decades more, the public enjoyed the derby—hatted duo, who faced more tribulations in two reels than most of us face in a year.  
A) movie directors          B) voice teachers  
C) difficulties                D) good times or fun
5. In the United States today, a Laurel and Hardy cult still carries

A) fan                                      B) group of admirers  
C) actors magazine                      D) memorial statue

Cats communicate with one another, with other animals, and with human beings in a variety of ways. Cats use sounds, body signals, and scents as means of communication.

The sounds a cat makes may have various meanings. For example, depending on the situation, a meow can be a friendly greeting, or it may express curiosity, hunger, or loneliness. Purring usually means contentment, but some cats also purr when they are sick. Hisses, growls, and screams indicate anger and fear.

下面有每个句子中有一个**黑体**单词，从 A, B, C, D 中选择一个意思与**黑体**单词最接近的单词。

1. Most of these sounds originate in the larynx (voice box ) in the throat.  
A) grow                      B) begin  
C) continue                D) stay
2. However, a similar posture accompanied by extended claws, a direct stare, and ears folded back indicates a fearful cat ready to defend itself.  
A) straightforward        B) timid  
C) brief                      D) unsteady
3. Hisses, growls, and screams indicate anger and fear.  
A) eliminate                B) take the place of  
C) cause                     D) are a sign of

- passage 4

A cat likes to exercise its claws by digging them into or scratching furniture. A scratching post helps to reduce damage to furniture. A piece of wood covered with carpeting makes a good scratching post. Every time the cat claws at the furniture, it should be taken to the post, until it learns to use it on its own.

Cats should be confined to the house, especially at night. Cats that are allowed to roam disturb the neighbors with their crying and fighting. A female cat should never be allowed to roam during her mating season.

A cat will clean itself by licking its fur. As it licks itself, it will swallow hairs that eventually form feltlike balls in its stomach and intestines. Although daily brushing cuts down on hair balls, some will form anyway. A veterinarian can prescribe a remedy to help a cat eliminate the hair.

1. From the sentence in which remedy appears in the story, you can tell that a remedy prescribed by a veterinarian is a\_\_\_\_\_.

A) friend.                      B) medication.

- C) hairbrush.      D) special exercise.
2. To "eliminate the threat" of disease or injury means to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) get rid of the possibility.      B) lessen the seriousness.  
C) change the course.      D) increase the chances.
3. A cat who is "confined to the house" is one that \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) doesn't have a home.      B) doesn't like to go outside.  
C) is sick.      D) is not allowed to go outside.
4. The second part of the sentence in which disciplined appears helps you to understand that in this context the word means \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) trained to obey.      B) put out of the house.  
C) punished.      D) yelled at.
5. The sentence in which the word reduce appears tells you that if you provide a scratching post for your cat, damage to your furniture will be \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) repaired.      B) lessened.  
C) increased.      D) delayed.

#### Passage 5

Kitty Hawk and Kill Devil Hill are American place—names that will live in history. There Wilbur and Orville Wright made the world's first successful flight of a heavy, manned, power—driven machine.

On December 17, 1903, the machine was flown with a person on board for the first time. It was a cold and windy morning when Orville Wright climbed aboard the plane. His first power—driven flight, a distance of 120 feet, lasted just twelve seconds. From that achievement of the Wrights, the science of aeronautics developed.

Wilbur and Orville started out selling bicycles. They formed the Wright Cycle Company in 1892. Business was good, and they soon added a repair shop. The brothers twice moved their growing business to larger quarters. As a next step, they began to manufacture bicycles. Eventually they came up with a low—priced model known as the Wright Special. They manufactured several hundred Wright Specials before discontinuing the business in order to devote full time to aviation.

Repairing and manufacturing bicycles sharpened the brothers' mechanical skills. In their construction of flying machines, Wilbur and Orville often used the same equipment and tools they used to repair bicycles. They conducted many experiments in the back room of their shop, and most of the parts used in the first successful airplane were built there.

Despite their devotion to hard work, Wilbur and Orville found time for the lighter side of life. They were not long—faced and stern but sprightly and good—humored. They loved small children and dogs,

music and practical jokes. Close companions in their personal lives as well as in business, the brothers shared everything.

从下面每组词选择意思与黑体单词最接近的单词。

1. discontinuing going on running stopping waiting ending closing
2. devote elect give sell fly divide apply
3. conducted did carried out played followed mixed
4. stern happy serious kind impatient healthy
5. sprightly slow old energetic religious happy beautiful

## Passage 6

Orville Wright made his first public flight on September 3, 1908, at Fort Myer, Virginia. He was testing an airplane for possible use by the U.S. government. He circled the field one and a half times on the first test. Theodore Roosevelt, Jr., is reported to have said, "When the plane first rose, the crowd's gasp of surprise was not alone at the wonder of it, but because it was so unexpected." Orville's last flight at Fort Myer in 1908 ended in tragedy. The airplane crashed, killing Lt. Thomas Selfridge, a passenger. Orville himself sustained broken ribs, a fractured leg, and hip injuries.

In 1909, Orville completed the government test flights by flying just under forty—three miles an hour. The United States Army formally accepted its first airplane from the Wrights on August 2, 1909. During the same year, the brothers enjoyed further flying triumphs both in Europe and at home. While Orville was making great flights in Germany, Wilbur was doing the same in New York.

The brothers established their first airplane manufacturing companies in France and Germany. Later the Wright company was organized in the United States as well, with Wilbur as president and Orville as vice president. In financial affairs the Wrights were surprisingly shrewd. But though they became wealthy and famous, they did not feel fulfilled as businessmen. They looked forward to the time when they could retire and spend their days doing scientific research.

Orville returned to Kill Devil Hill in October 1911 to experiment with an automatic control device and to make soaring flights with a glider. On October 24 he set a new world record for soaring, which was not exceeded until ten years later. On May 30, 1912, Wilbur Wright died of typhoid fever at the age of forty—five. Orville outlived him by thirty—six years.

下面有每个句子中有一个黑体单词，从 A, B, C, D 中选择一个意思与黑体单词最接近的单词。

1. Orville himself sustained broken ribs, a fractured leg, and hip injuries.  
A) got away with      B) experienced  
C) hated                D) caused

2. The United States Army formally accepted its first airplane from the Wrights on August 2, 1909.  
A) later                      B) happily  
C) officially                D) finally
3. In financial affairs, the Wrights were surprisingly shrewd.  
A) sharp minded            B) lazy  
C) stupid                      D) innocent.
4. But though they became wealthy and famous, they did not feel fulfilled as businessmen.  
A) excited                    B) capable  
C) satisfied                  D) respected
5. On October 24 he set a new world record for soaring, which was not exceeded until ten years later  
A) topped                    B) recorded  
C) noticed                    D) lowered

#### Passage 7

Unlike most sports, which evolved over time from street games, basketball was designed by one man to suit a particular purpose. The man was Dr. James Naismith, and his purpose was to invent a vigorous game that could be played indoors during the winter.

In 1891, Naismith was an instructor at the International YMCA Training School, now Springfield College, in Massachusetts. The school trained physical education instructors for YMCAs throughout the country. That year the school was trying to come up with a physical activity that the men could enjoy between the football and baseball seasons. None of the standard indoor activities held their interest for long. Naismith was asked to solve the problem.

He first tried to adapt some of the popular outdoor sports, but they were all too rough. The men were getting bruised from tackling each other and being hit with equipment. Windows were getting smashed.

Finally Naismith decided to try to invent a game that would incorporate the most common elements of outdoor team sports without the physical contact. He noted that most of the popular sports used a ball. He chose a soccer ball, because it was soft and large enough that it required no equipment, such as a bat or a racket, to propel it. That ensured that the ball wouldn't travel too fast. Next he decided on an elevated goal, so that scoring would depend on skill and accuracy rather than on brute strength. His goals were two peach baskets, affixed to ten-foot-high balconies at each end of the gym. Naismith then wrote thirteen rules delineating the specifics of the game. Many of those rules are still in effect.

Basketball was an immediate success. The students taught it to their friends, and the new sport quickly caught on. Folks have been



dribbling ever since.

下面有每个句子中有一个黑体单词，从 A , B , C , D 中选择一个意思与黑体单词最接近的单词。

1. The man was Dr. James Naismith, and his purpose was to **in—vent** a vigorous game that could be played indoors during the winter.  
A) physically active and energetic.      B) complex  
C) violent      D) slow and easygoing
2. Finally Naismith decided to try to **invent** a game that would **incorporate** the most common elements of outdoor team sports without the physical contact  
A) leave out of the game      B) define  
C) change around      D) work into the game
3. He chose a soccer ball, because it was soft and large enough that it required no equipment, such as a bat or a racket, to **propel** it.  
A) hit it properly      B) break it apart  
C) drive it forward      D) hold it tightly
4. His goals were two peach baskets, **attached** to ten—foot—high balconies at each end of the gym.  
A) fastened securely      B) painted onto  
C) built into      D) draped loosely over
5. Naismith then wrote thirteen rules **outlining** the specifics of the game.  
A) lining up side by side      B) describing in detail  
C) examining      D) researching

#### Passage 8

In the 1890s, a new kind of bicycle went on sale in stores all over America. It was the safety bicycle, different from the old high—wheeler. Both front and back wheels were the same size, and the rubber tires were pumped full of air.

Anybody could ride a safety bicycle, and everybody seemed to want one. This was the beginning of the great bicycle craze of the 1890s. More than 500 factories were turning out bicycles, and a million of them were in use. In 1895 the New York Tribune said that the bicycle was more important to humanity than the victories and defeats of Napoleon.

The craze reached its peak in 1896, and it was over in 1900. But while it lasted, songs were written about bicycles; special bicycle magazines were read; and the sports pages of newspapers gave more space to bicycle racing than to baseball.

It is not surprising that bicycles became popular. At the time, travel by horse was slow, and travel by train was inconvenient. With a bicycle, people could ride out to the country or even visit another town.

1. The word *craze* means \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) mistake      B) fad  
 C) trick        D) hoax
2. *Peak* can mean the top of a mountain. Here it means \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) end            B) lowest level  
 C) beginning    D) highest point
3. *Inconvenient* is made up of the prefix *in*—and *convenient*. It means \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) nearby                      B) not popular  
 C) not easy to use        D) comfortable
4. *Bicycle* uses the prefix *bi*—, which means two, to point out how many wheels it has. The prefix *tri*—means three. Use it to make a word that means three—wheeled cycle.

#### Passage 9

Most plants grow for a few months, produce seeds for a new crop, and then wither and die. Animals, too, tend to live just long enough to ensure the survival of the next generation. The mouse, for example, has a very short lifetime of about only two years. Mice can reproduce when they are just a few months old, and then they have large and frequent litters. Within a month or two, the young mice are nearly full—grown and are capable of leaving the nest to live on their own.

People don't usually start having children before their late teens, and the babies generally come one at a time, perhaps over a period of twenty years or more. Human babies are almost completely helpless at birth, and although they gradually grow more and more self-sufficient, fifteen or twenty years of care and teaching are needed before they are ready to set out on their own. So it would seem that a lifetime of at least forty or fifty years would be needed to keep the chain of human generations going, compared with a year or two for a mouse.

1. The word *self-sufficient* means \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) almost full-grown      C) able to live without help  
 C) completely helpless    D) proud and carefree
2. *Chain* can mean links of metal. In this context, it means \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) limit    B) series    C) tie    D) boundary
3. *Produce* comes from the root *duc*, which means lead, and the prefix *pro-*, which means forward.  
 Which word below uses a different prefix to mean to lead on or persuade?  
 A) Induce      B) Reproduce  
 C) Reduce      D) Deduce
4. The word *litters* means \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) garbage      B) young mice

- C) meals      D) nests

#### Passage 10

Wise and wily as we like to think we are, we don't always know just what is good for us. We make "improvements" on our surroundings that turn out not to be improvements at all. We kill off a "nuisance" creature only to find that it was the one thing that protected us from a far worse nuisance.

In South Africa recently the human beings decided to wipe out the local hippopotamuses. They thought them nothing but ugly beasts that cluttered up their rivers, so they began to shoot them. The result--unexpected and awful--is that South Africans are beginning to fall ill of a foul disease called blood flukes. It makes person weak and the body break out in sores--and it can be fatal. The disease is a health hazard now in much of South Africa, and all because the hippos were being exterminated. Too late, the people realized that the hippos, when they wallow in the river, keep the silt on the river bottoms stirred up so that it is continuously flushed downstream. Without the hippos, the river bottoms were quickly covered with a deposit of slimy silt, and that is the breeding ground of the water snails which carry the parasite that causes blood flukes.

- The word wily means \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) clever      B) stupid      C) experienced      D) brave
- Foul can mean against the rules. In this context it means  
A) mild      B) unpleasant      C) contagious      D) strange
- A fatal disease is one which can cause death. Which form of fatal would apply to a person who had died from such a disease?  
A) fate      B) fatalistic      C) Fatally      D) Fatality

### 第三节 专项训练答案

Passage 1:      1. C      2. D      3. A      4. D      5. A

Passage 2:      1. D      2. B      3. A      4. C      5. B

Passage 3:      1. B      2. A      3. D      4. C      5. A

Passage 4:      1. B      2. A      3. D      4. A      5. B

passage 5:

- stopping, ending, closing      2. give, apply
- did, carried out      4. serious, unfriendly
- energetic, happy.

Passage 6:      1. B      2. C      3. A      4. C      5. A

Passage 7:      1. A      2. D      3. C      4. A      5. B

Passage 8:      1. B      2. D      3. C      4. tricycle

Passage 9:      1. C      2. B      3. D      4. B

Passage 10:      1. A      2. B      3. D

## 第五章 如何理解文章上下文的逻辑关系

### 第一节 总述

一篇好的文章不仅要有明确的中心思想，而且在内容和结构上要有严紧的逻辑关系。在一个段落里，句子与句子之间存在一定的逻辑关系，在一篇文章里，段落与段落之间也要有合情合理的逻辑关系。语言的逻辑关系通常是由各种衔接手段来体现的。英汉两种语言的衔接手段（衔接词）虽然有共同之处，但还存在较大的差异，因而正确理解英文的上下文逻辑关系是英语学习者应该掌握的重要技能之一。研究生入学英语考试大纲要求考生不仅能理解个别句子的意义，还要能运用各方面的知识进行分析判断，把握上下文的逻辑关系。这里，我们从以下几方面进一步阐述如何把握上下文的逻辑关系：

- 1) 句子之间的指代关系；
- 2) 内容上的因果关系；
- 3) 段落之间的承接关系；

#### 1) 句子之间的指代关系

在文章中，为了避免不必要的重复或为了使句子结构平衡(Balance)，常常用一些代词来指代已经提到过的人或事。这类代词包括人称代词，如 he, she, it, they, we；指示代词，如 this, that, these, those, one；关系代词，如 who, whose, whom, that, which, as 等。另外还有一些其他的词，如 there, here, such，也常被用来指代上下文中提到过的其他内容。由于这些指代词本身没有明确的意义和所指，指代词的使用直接关系到上下文的逻辑关系，因此作者在使用它们时应该慎重。而读者在阅读时也要正确理解指代词的正确所指(Reference)。作为考生，只要仔细阅读上下文，适当进行推理判断就能看出指代词是指代前面或者后面的哪个词或短语。当然，有的指代词指代的是一句话，甚至几句话所讲的内容。另外，在考试中，关于指代关系的考题往往具有一定的迷惑性，不要把注意力局限于离指代词最近或最醒目的名词短语上。

请看下面的例子：

Spencer's idea of evolution (which is a gradual change) was not a new theory. The ancient Greeks had thought of it, so had Erasmus Darwin, the grandfather of Charles, and also the Frenchman, Lamarck. It is one thing to have an idea; we can all of us guess and sometimes make a lucky guess. It is quite another thing to produce a proof of the correctness of that idea. Darwin thought he had that proof in his notebooks. He saw that all animals had a struggle to survive. Those which were best at surviving their environment passed on the good qualities which had helped them to their environment passed on the good qualities which had helped them to their descendants. This was called 'the survival of the fittest'. For example, in a cold climate, those who have the warmest fur will live. Darwin believed that this necessity for animals to deal

with its environment explained the immense variety of creatures.

Questions:1) What does the word it in Line 2 refers to?

- A) Spencer's idea.
- B) idea of evolution.
- C) a gradual change.
- D) a new theory.

这道题的正确答案是 B，即第二行中的 it 指的是上一句话中提到过的 idea of evolution。选项 A 不对，因为从下文来看，在 Spencer 之前已经有人想到过这种思想，如 The ancient Greeks 及 Erasmus Darwin，很显然他们想到的不可能是 Spencer's idea。选项 C 不对，因为 a gradual change 很显然是补充说明 evolution 一词的。选项 D 也不对，理由同选项 A。另外，这个段落中还有其他很多指代词，请读者自己想一想带下划线的指代词分别指代什么。

有时语篇中的指代词并不是明确地指上下文中的某个词或短语，而是指上下文所指的内容。下面的例子选自 1995 年试题阅读理解第三篇文章：

...In addition to this, there is the growing mobility of people since the World War .As families move away from their stable community, their friends of many years, their extended family relationships, the informal flow of information is cut off, and with it the confidence that information will be available when needed and will be trustworthy and reliable.The almost unconscious flow of information about the simplest aspects of living can be cut off.Thus...

Question:The word "it" in Line 5 probably refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) the lack of stable communities.
- B) the breakdown of informal information channels.
- C) the increased mobility of families.
- D) the growing number of people moving from place to place.

从整体来看，这个段落的主要内容确实是关于第二次世界大战之后人口的流动问题，但其核心内容是关于人口流动带来的后果，即非正式的信息流动被切断了，这体现在段落的第二句话的中间部分即“ the informal flow of information is cut off ”，这部分也是这句话的主句，这句话的前半截“ As....their extended family relationships ”是个状语从句，而后半截是介词短语作伴随状语，也可视为省略句，其含义为（随着非正式的信息流动被切断），人们也丧失了随时可以得到值得信赖和可靠的信息的信心。很显然，句中的 it 指的是 the breakdown of informal information channels ”。其实选项 A、C、D 内容基本相同，的读者很快就能把这三个选项排除，因为只要其中一个正确，其他两个都有可能正确。

## 2)内容上的因果关系

在论说文里，作者一般要陈述某个观点，然后站在某个角度，提供论据，进行论述。有时作者陈述某个观点或事实，然后论述该观点或事实的原因，有时则论述该观点或事实带来的结果。这就是我们常说的因果关系。正确把握语篇的因果关系，对于理解文章的主旨十分重要。请仔细阅读下面的段落 A 和段落 B，看看作者陈述观点后是如何进一步论述的。

Paragraph A:

It is difficult for workers to find employment this year. One reason is that many industries are not hiring new workers. In addition, industries are reducing their current staff levels because of a decline in national economic conditions. Another reason is that workers who once might have considered early retirement are now staying at their jobs. Finally, other workers who used to view their jobs as optional now must keep their positions in order to meet their minimum financial responsibilities.

Paragraph B:

It is difficult for workers to find employment this year. As a result, many recent college graduates are unemployed or are taking part-time jobs to meet expenses. Unemployment among high school graduates has meant that large numbers of teen-agers are seeking unemployment benefits. The unemployment figures are the highest in decades. Finally, the Federal government must contribute large amounts of money to support the growing numbers of people who are receiving welfare assistance.

在上面两段落中，作者陈述的观点是一样的，即“ It is difficult for workers to find employment this year ”（今年工人就业面临困难）。然而，在段落 A，作者的论据是造成就业困难的原因；在段落 B，作者论说的是就业困难给个人和国家带来的不利影响。

### 3) 段落与段落之间的承接关系

为了文章成为一个整体，文章各段落之间存在一定的承接关系，这种承接关系往往是通过段落的开头或结尾的具有承上启下意义的句子或短语来实现的。由于篇幅的限制，考试中的阅读文章不可能太长。为了考察考生把握较长篇幅的文章的逻辑关系的能力，往往要求考生推测所给篇章的前一段或后一段的内容。由于段落之间通常有承上启下的句子或短语，所以，如果问题要求考生猜测短文之前的内容，就应该注意短文的开头部分；反之，就应该注意短文的结尾部分。当然，不能一味地只看开头和结尾，应该从短文的整个篇章结构和短文的主旨中寻找线索。请看下面的例子：

Hundreds of violins are made every year. However, the finest and most sought after violins ever made were handcrafted by an Italian violin maker over two hundred and fifty years ago. The craftsman's name was Antonius Stradivarius. Any one of his violins is worth more than \$ 100 000 today.

Stradivarius was born in 1644. He began his career as a violin maker's apprentice. Working on his own by 1680, he became determined to make instruments that could reproduce tones as rich as those produced by the human voice. He tested several shapes and styles for his violin, until he arrived at a design that pleased him. During his

career he crafted over eleven hundred vi-olins. Those still in existence have become treasured posses-sions.

Unfortunately, the secret of the stradivarius violin died with its maker. During his lifetime Stradivarius kept his notes safely hidden. Even his two sons, who helped him in his work-shop, did not know all the steps involved in each violin's con-struction. Though Stradivarius's apprentices had offered possi-ble explanations for the unique tone of a "strad.", they had been rejected one after another, and the real secret has puzzled people for more than 300 years.

Question: The paragraph following this extract would most like-ly talk about \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) the good qualities of Stradivarius's violins.
- B) people's interest in stradivarius's violins.
- C) recently discovery about Stradivarius's violins.
- D) the survival of Stradivarius's violins.

这道题的正确答案是 C，即这段节选的下文最有可能谈到的是关于 Stradivarius 的小提琴的最新发现。因为短文第三段的主要内容是关于 Stradivarius 制作小提琴的秘密，虽然他的徒弟有过多种解释，但都被否定了。短文的最后一句话“这个秘密困扰人民长达 300 多年”，其中隐含的意思是现在终于揭开了谜底。选项 A、B、D 在节选里都叙述过，不大可能再重复。

## 第二节 专项技能训练

### Passage 1

It doesn't make any difference as to how long your speech should be. unless you tune in your audience in the first 60 sec-onds, chances are they will tune you out.

Take the fellow who opens with: " On my way over to the club tonight, I ran into a bum who asked me for \$ 49. 50 for a cup of coffee. I told him he'd do much better if he asked for a quarter. He said , 'Do you think I'm going into the Ritz in these clothes!' " We know his purpose: to win his audience over with humor. His nit of humor, however, has no connection with his speech, " The Democrats' dilemma " . He has his audience laugh-ing at the wrong time.

Once you have an audience laughing it's hard to get them to switch to an entirely different train of thought. There's nothing wrong with humor in a speech as long as it has something to do with the purpose of the speech. To open a speech with humor just to be entertaining invites an almost sure " turnoff " for the re-mainder of the talk.

1. The paragraph proceeding this selection has probably talked about \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) the importance of making a good speech.
- B) the use of humor in making a speech.

- C) the organization of a good speech.
- D) the beginning of a good speech.
- 2. If a speaker decides to be humorous, his humor \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) should be connected with his speech.
  - B) must make his audience laugh.
  - C) should be fresh and different.
  - D) must be reserved for the end.
- 3. The paragraph following this selection will probably talk about \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) another example of inappropriate use of humor.
  - B) how to use humor effectively in making a speech.
  - C) how humor makes speeches interesting
  - D) the general principles of using humor.

## Passage 2

What are some of the steps a person can take to prevent his house from being burglarized while he is away. One step is to make sure that the house has a lived - in look. Living room shades should be pulled down only half - way . Bedrooms that usually have the shades pulled down at night should be left down. Another is to make sure that all outside locks are the dead - bolt type. Still another step is to leave several 100 watt lights burning and make sure that one is in the kitchen. Lights that turn on and off automatically are the best Then too, it is a good idea to leave the radio tuned in to a talking station. Any type of conversation makes a burglar think twice before trying to enter. Finally, while away on vacation, make sure that nothing collects in the front or in back of the house. Specifically, make certain that the newspaper is stopped and that a trusted neighbor has been asked to pick up the mail. burglars are especially alert to piled-up newspapers and overstuffed mail boxes.

- 1. What is the relationship between the first sentence and the rest of the paragraph?
  - A) Cause and effect.
  - B) Contrasting points of view.
  - C) General summary and exceptions.
  - D) General summary and supporting examples.
- 2. What does the word one in line 8 refer to?
  - A) a step                      B) a light
  - C) one person      D) one lock
- 3. What are the most obvious visual clues that burglars look for?
  - A) outside locks                                      B) piled - up mail
  - C) lights burning inside the house      D) room shades
- 4. Where does this paragraph most probably appear?
  - A) In an advertisement for houses;



- B) In a leaflet about community security.
- C) In regulation section of an estate contract.
- D) tour agency's warning to would - be tourists.

### Passage 3

Sandwich, Massachusetts, is an interesting place to visit. Every known type of glassware was made in Sandwich - blown, blown molded, and pressed. The glass was famous in its day. Yet, despite the success of the plant, production ended in 1888 in a labor dispute in which the owners closed the plant rather than met the worker's demands. In the 65 years that the factory was in operation, more that \$ 30 million worth of glass was made there. Today Sandwich glass is highly prized by collectors, which makes the museums and their famous collection popular with lovers of antiques. Reproductions of Sandwich glass are sold at many of the gift shops in and around the town, while an-tique dealers demand high prices for the original glass pieces.

Besides its glassware, Sandwich is also famous for it Yesteryears Doll museum, Yesteryears Doll Museum was found-ed by a retired army colonel, R. F. Thomas and his wife. Mrs. Thomas, began collecting dolls in europe and the Far East while her husband served tours of duty in those areas. Today, her col-lection of 3,000 dolls and doll houses is valued at more than a million dollars.

1. What time does the phrase " its day " in Line 3 refer to?
  - A) From 1888 until today      B) The time before 1888.
  - C) 65 years after 1888.      D) From 1823 to 1888.
2. The words " Their " in Line 9 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) the sandwich glassware products
  - B) the antique collectors.
  - C) the museums.
  - D) the glassware makers
3. What will the paragraph following this selection probably talk about?
  - A) How the Thomas family collect dolls.
  - B) How antique collectors look for Yesteryear's dolls.
  - C) Exhibition of the Yesteryear's dolls.
  - D) Something else interesting in Sandwich.
4. What did Mr. Thomas do before he retired?
  - A) He had business of collecting and selling antiques.
  - B) He collected dolls in Europe and the Far East.
  - C) He was an army officer.
  - D) He was a customs officer.

### Passage 4

The museum of Modern Art in New York City is known throughout the

world. It has a collection of contemporary masterpieces in painting and sculpture. Few people are aware that, in the summer months, the Museum presents Summer garden, a fine program in which special presentations are designed for the tired New Yorkers and out-of-town visitors. These include films, dramatic events, poetry readings, dance programs, and lectures in a surrounding of modern sculpture and landscaping.

Summer garden takes place in the Museum's sculpture garden from June through September on Friday, Saturday, all Sunday evenings from six until eleven o'clock. The garden is transformed into a free city park in the very heart of the largest city in the United States. The site is lighted so that visitors get dramatic views of twentieth century sculpture, as well as recent works. Fifty thousand visitors attended Summer garden in its first two seasons, and this year more people than ever have been drawn to it.

1. In this selection, Summer Garden refers to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) a garden in New York                      B) a special program.  
C) a free city park in New York      D) a special museum.
2. The word "these" in Line 6 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) the programs.                                  C) the summer gardens  
B) the special presentations      D) the masterpieces
3. What facts illustrate the popularity of summer garden?  
A) the painting and sculpture collection in the museum  
B) the number of visitors in its first seasons  
C) the number of special presentations.  
D) the location and weather of the Summer garden.

#### Passage 5

Not since the great growth years of the snowmobile has a sport or pleasure vehicle caught the public's fancy as much as the latest entry to the market, the all-terrain vehicle. It is thought that, industrywide, 50 000 of the vehicles will be sold this year, and in three years the number could jump to 225 000. Industry spokesmen feel the market for all-terrain vehicles may be larger one day than that for snowmobiles (more than 450 000 of which were sold in a single year), because there is greater geographic appeal and the vehicles can be used year-round.

There is a great deal of customer appeal to all-terrain vehicles. Flat out, over a smooth surface, they can do about 35 miles an hour. They can climb a 45-degree slope, ford a stream, and run on snow, ice, mud, or sand without difficulty. As a result, all-terrain vehicles have vast appeal for hunters and fishermen and for large numbers of people who enjoy just exploring previously inaccessible areas. They also have industrial use in such places as railroad yards, strip mines or

vineyards.

1. What is the basic message in the first sentence of the first paragraph?
  - A) Snowmobile has caught the most fancy of the public.
  - B) A sport or pleasure vehicle is the most popular nowadays.
  - C) The all - terrain vehicle has just entered the market.
  - D) The all - terrain vehicle has caught great fancy of the public.
2. The all - terrain vehicle has \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) underwater uses.
  - B) threatened ecology.
  - C) alarmed the military.
  - D) industrial use.
3. What does the paragraph proceeding the selection probably talk about?
  - A) other sport vehicles.
  - B) snowmobile
  - C) people's enthusiasm in sport vehicles.
  - D) all - terrain vehicles.
4. Which of the following illustrates the tremendous adaptability of the all - terrain vehicle?
  - A) It can be used in many different conditions.
  - B) It has vast appeal for all kinds of people.
  - C) It has industrial uses.
  - D) In three years, the vehicles will be sold 225,000.

#### Passage 6

The freeways in Los Angeles, California, are frequently the scenes of death and destruction. Nevertheless, the Los Angeles freeways are among the safest in the world. For one thing, they are carefully patrolled. There are 125 highway patrolmen on the freeways looking for violations. The violations that they look for especially are tailgating(following too closely), careless lane changing, going too slowly in the fast lane, speeding, and drunk driving. For these and other violations, 125 men give on the average of 120 000 tickets a year.

Another reason why the Los Angeles freeways are the safest is that they are well engineered. There are four extra - wide lanes going in each direction . One is for high speeds, two for average speeds, and one for trucks and slow drivers, The freeways are carefully banked for high speeds. When you break into a curve, you feel the banking holding you on the road. They are well lighted also, and there are no steep grades or hills blocking visibility.

1. What is the relationship between the first two sentences and the rest of the paragraph?
  - A) Facts and comments.

- B) contrasting points of view.
  - C) General summary and exceptions.
  - D) General summary and supporting examples;
2. What does the word "men" in Line 8 refers to?
    - A) the local policemen      C) careless drivers.
    - B) the patrolmen.              D) the toll collectors.
  3. What is the relationship between the first paragraph and the second paragraph?
    - A) Cause and effect.
    - B) General summary and examples.
    - C) compared two aspects.
    - D) parallel paragraphs
  4. The Los Angeles freeways \_\_\_\_\_.
    - A) are carefully banked.
    - B) are covered with non - glare asphalt.
    - C) are embedded with traffic sensors.
    - D) are surrounded by steel rails.

#### Passage 7

The needs of the Navajo Indians are acute. Unemployment on the reservation approaches 70 percent. The average number of school years completed by Navajo adults over 25 is less than three years. Navajos average an annual income per family of \$ 700. For this nation within a nation, the problem is one of survival. The situation is that desperate.

But for the Navajos, desperation does not end with finding work, earning money and being able to provide food, shelter and clothing. There's more to it. Theirs is also the desperation of a culture in danger of extinction.

Over the years, the dominant culture confined and manipulated the Navajos, forcing Anglo values, attitudes, and life styles methodically upon them, to the slow destruction of their own. Families were broken up, children shipped off to boarding schools. States denied these people the right to vote. The government controlled their livestock production; missionaries dealt with them as pagans; and alcohol, the white man's curse, destroyed many who were unable to cope with this onslaught. While much of that is history, too much of that pattern still exists today.

1. The phrase "a nation" in Line 5 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) the United States              C) the Indian tribes
  - B) the Navajo Reservation      D) the North American continent
2. What is the function of paragraph 2 to paragraph 1?
  - A) It gives further details to support paragraph 1.
  - B) It introduces another more severe problem.

- C) It introduces aspects opposite to paragraph 1.
  - D) It offers possible explanation for paragraph 1.
3. The paragraph following this selection will probably talk about \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) the Navajos' hatred for the white people.
  - B) the Navajos' rebellion against the government.
  - C) desperate state of mind of the Navajos.
  - D) possible solutions to the problems presented.

#### Passage 8

One of Italy's foremost shapers of automotive style is the legendary Turin firm of Pininfarina. The company employs more than 1400 persons and provides the coachwork for 130 vehicles each day.

Pininfarina's quietly elegant touch has helped shape automobiles ranging from United States production models to one - of - a - kind limousines produced for Popes and for European royalty.

While supplying custom coachwork for sports and trial cars, Pininfarina has developed coachwork style and performance. The company's famous Sigma Grand Prix is an ambitious safety project based on a racing car design. Introduced at the Geneva Motor Show in 1969, the Sigma Grand Prix has an anti - shock frame, rubber and nylon fire resistant fuel tanks, a new type of safety belts, and a built - in fire extinguishing system with automatic crash sensors.

1. Pininfarina's famous Sigma Grand Prix refers to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) a legendary racing car.
  - B) an elegant new body design.
  - C) a one - of - a - kind limousine.
  - D) a propaganda project.
2. According to the second paragraph, which of the following is true?
- A) Production model cars are only for exhibition.
  - B) There is only one kind of limousines in Europe.
  - C) Limousines are only for a few special people.
  - D) The Pininfarina firm introduces American style to Europe.

#### Passage 9

Another problem with children involved is child abuse. child abuse covers a wide range of parental actions that result in harm being inflicted on children of all ages. The kind of abuse, however, varies with age. Infants and pre - school children are most likely to suffer deliberately inflicted fractures, burns, and bruises. This is known as the battered - child syndrome, first identified during the 1960s. Historically, reported cases of sexual abuse, ranging from molestation to incest, primarily involve male perpetrators and school - aged or adolescent female victims. More recently, however, a growing number

of per - school vic-tims and male victims have been identified.

Some states have broadened their statutory definitions of abuse to specifically include emotional or mental injury. Con-stant parental rejection, for example, can permanently cripple a child's personality.

Perhaps the most prevalent type of abuse is neglect - that is, physical or emotional harm resulting from their failure to pro-vide children with adequate food, clothing, shelter, medical care, education, and moral training. A common symptom of ne-glect among young children is underfeeding; an undernourished infant often fails to thrive and may even die. In the age range be-tween 8 and 17 years, neglect, as opposed to physical or sexual abuse, was involved in about 70 percent of all validated reports of mistreatment in the U. S. in a recent year.

1. What does the paragraph proceeding this selection probably talk about?
  - A) Children's welfare schemes.
  - B) Problems related to children.
  - C) Cases of child abuse.
  - D) Definition of child abuse.
2. The word 'their' in Line 2, paragraph 3 probably refers to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) some states.
  - B) some parents.
  - C) some children
  - D) the victims
3. The paragraph following this selection will probably talk about \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) cases of physical or sexual abuse
  - B) types of abusive parents
  - C) consequences of child abuse.
  - D) laws against child abuse

#### Passage 10

Miscegenation is intermarriage or extramarital relations be-tween people of different races. In modern times miscegenation has been regarded with strong disapproval in many nations of the Western world, and social ostracism and prohibitive legislation have been employed to prevent such unions. The prejudicial atti-tude toward miscegenetic marriages stems mainly from obsolete conceptions of race and heredity. Also contributing to the atti-tude are white supremacy theories, and the inferior social status commonly imposed on dark - skinned people, and consequently on the children of mixed marriages in various nations through-out the world.

Similar to the prohibitive legislation in Europe, in the Unit-ed States, restrictive legislation against miscegenation originated during the period of slavery in colonial times. These laws were designed to protect the right of the slaveholder to the offspring of

the slaves, and the laws included severe penalties. Statutes passed subsequently in the majority of the states declared misce-genetic marriages void, purportedly to preserve racial purity. Most of these statutes were directed against blacks, but some applied more broadly to include all non - white people. Between 1942 and 1967, 14 states repealed their anti - miscegenation laws. In 1967, the Supreme Court of the United States declared anti - miscegenation laws unconstitutional.

1. What is the relationship between the two paragraphs?
  - A) Cause and effect.
  - B) General introduction and specific example.
  - C) Contrasting phenomenon.
  - D) General statement and further supporting details.
2. "These laws" in Line 3, paragraph 2 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) prohibitive legislation in Europe.
  - B) restrictive legislation in the United States.
  - C) obsolete conceptions of race and heredity.
  - D) anti - miscegenation laws throughout the world.
3. The paragraph following this selection will probably talk about \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) anti - miscegenation movement today.
  - B) anti - miscegenation movement in other countries.
  - C) present views on miscegenation
  - D) government's encouragement for miscegenation

### 第三节 专项训练答案

Passage 1:	1. C	2. A	3. B	
Passage 2:	1. D	2. B	3. B	4. B
Passage 3:	1. D	2. C	3. D	4. C
Passage 4:	1. B	2. B	3. B	
Passage 5:	1. D	2. D	3. A	4. A
Passage 6:	1. D	2. B	3. D	4. A
Passage 7:	1. A	2. B	3. D	
Passage 8:	1. B	2. C		
Passage 9:	1. B	2. B	3. C	
Passage 10:	1. B	2. B	3. C	

## 第六章 如何进行合理的判断、推理和引申

### 第一节 总 述

在写作过程中，有时作者不是直接陈述某种观点，而是通过其他内容间接地暗示。这种暗示的内容也许是某个细节，但也可能是文章的主要意思。因此，读者在阅读时，要善于在阅读的基础之上，进行合理的判断、推理和引申，即 Making Inferences。有人把 Making Inference 定义为“根据已有的信息通过判断、推理和引申得出作者没有直接说出而又想说的内容”。当然判断、推理和引申要有依据，不能毫无根据地引申。有时读者需要对某一句话进行判断、推理和引申，有时则需要对一段话甚至整篇文章进行判断、推理和引申。以下几条建议可以帮助读者进行合理的判断、推理和引申。

- 1) 充分利用作者所持的观点及其写作目的进行判断、推理和引申。
- 2) 找出文章中直接陈述的事实或观点之间的关系；有时作者不直接陈述观点，只是描述事实，希望读者自己从事实中推测出作者的观点。
- 3) 注意文章中作者所选用的某些富有感情色彩的词或词组的隐含意义，比如“politician”一词通常具有贬义，即“政客”，表示“玩弄政治手段的人”，而“statesman”一词则没有贬义，是个中性词，表示“政治家”。
- 4) 要注意体会词句的“言外之义”，即“read beyond the lines”，比如，如果一个父亲对他五岁的儿子说，“Let's have a man to man talk”，从这句话里，我们可以推断，这个孩子可能很调皮，不听他父亲的话，或者他父亲有意把儿子看成大人，想进行认真的谈话。总之，此时的父子之间的关系不同寻常。
- 5) 进行判断、推理和引申要仔细，要有确凿的证据，另外还要准确。
- 6) 进行判断、推理和引申并得出某个结论或观点之后，要进行一步从上下文寻找依据。如果读者发现与自己得出的结论或观点想抵触的依据，应该重新进行判断、推理和引申。

根据上下文进行合理的判断、推理和引申是一项十分重要的阅读技巧，也是各种考试中阅读理解的必考项目，通常的题型是 What can be inferred from the passage? What does the author/passage imply? What does the author suggest by saying ...? What can be concluded from...?

阅读下面的段落，想一想从这一段落的内容我们可做出哪些推理和引申？

When, in 1641, King Kristian of Denmark and Norway built the town of Kristiansand in his own honor, he had to bribe people to move there by giving them tax exemptions. He picked a choice spot for his new city, a piece of land within a mountain-sheltered bay on Norway's southern coast. He built streets that were wide for their time, laid out blocks of row houses in a grid pattern, and provided every home with a garden, safe from public view and the noise of the street. Indeed, Some of his ideas - starting with the one of putting a town where there was not any before - are being applied in Europe today.

1. King Kristian built a town in his own honor. This implies -



- \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) He was rich.
  - B) He was somewhat vain.
  - C) He had a special taste.
  - D) He wanted to own a town himself.
2. King Kristian built the town and persuaded people to move there. This fact implies \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) There were too many people at that time.
  - B) He wanted rule over the people.
  - C) He was kind and thoughtful.
  - D) He wanted people to live with him.
3. What can we infer from the way King Kristian chose the spot for and designed the city?
- A) He was an intelligent urban planner.
  - B) He wanted to be close to mountains.
  - C) He wanted to be close to the coast.
  - D) He wanted to built more houses.
4. Some of King Kristian's ideas are being applied in Europe to-day. This implies \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) Europe today has the similar situation to that of kristian's time.
  - B) Denmark and Norway today are models for Europle.
  - C) King Kristian was far - sighted and had an inventive mind.
  - D) Europe should build more towns for provide space for peo-ple.

答案及解释：

第一道题：这道题的正确答案是 B，即国王 Kristian 自己的名义建了一座城市 (built a town in his own honor) 说明他有些自负 (somewhat vain)。选项 A 不对，因为原文并不是说他靠自己的力量或用自己的金钱建的城市。选项 C 不对，从整个段落来看，国王建这座城市的目的是明确的，而不是他个人有什么特殊的兴趣。选项 D 不对，因为国王并不是为他自己建的城市。

第二道题：这道题的正确答案是 C。即国王建了城市之后，劝说人们搬迁到那里去住，这说明他善良而且考虑的周到 (kind and thoughtful)。虽然文章没有直接点出这一点，但从他慎重选择城址、合理设计城市、利用免税等手段劝说人们搬迁等事实可以看出，他还是为人民着想的。选项 A、B、D 不符合内容，也没有得到暗示。

第三道题：这道题的正确答案是 A。即 Kristian 国王选择城址、设计城市的方法表明他是一个聪明的城市设计家 (an intelligent urban planner)。从整个段落来看，作者想要说明 Kristian 国王选择城址、设计城市的方法是合理的，而且有的思想在今天的欧洲得到了应用。选项 B 和 C 都不对，因为文章虽然到过这座城市靠近山和海边，但这并不是国王的主要目的。选项 D 不对，虽然国王新建一座城市可能是为了建造更多的房子，但他设计城市的方法并不能说明这一点。

第四道题：这道题的正确答案是 C。即 Kristian 国王选择城址、设计城

市的思想在今天的欧洲得到了应用，这说明他是个有远见有创造性的人。选项 A、B、D 不符合文章内容，也没有得到暗示。

## 第二节 专项技能训练

### Passage 1

Mrs.Harris, an elderly patient in a nursing home, sat all day in a chair.She did nothing else.She required complete physical care, even feeding.No one seemed to realize that she was partially deaf and blind.One day, a young doctor observed cataracts in both her eyes.He discovered that if he spoke in her ear, she seemed to respond.One eye was operated on, and when it was first uncovered, the old woman cried with joy.Her recovery was quick, and she soon became quite independent.She started feeding herself and took to smiling and talking with others.The change in her attitude was amazing.Not only did she require less nursing care, but she was also able to help other patients.She was again able to see and with this seemed to experience some hearing recovery.

1. The regular attendants of the nursing home were most probably\_\_\_\_\_
  - A) overworked to do so much for the old woman.
  - B) indifferent to the needs of the patients.
  - C) unaware of Mrs.Harris' real problem.
  - D) Highly trained medical experts.
2. It can be reasonably inferred from this paragraph that\_\_\_\_\_
  - A) a person's state of health affects his outlook on life.
  - B) nursing homes have unqualified attendants.
  - C) an elderly person should be cared for by his family.
  - D) state governments should supervise nursing homes closely.
3. Evidence suggests that the young doctor was\_\_\_\_\_
  - A) unusual      C) independent
  - B) alert      D) casual
4. Which of the following lines suggest that Mrs.Harris was discouraged and depressed \_\_\_\_\_
  - A) Lines1—3      C) Lines4—7
  - B) Lines3—4      D) Lines6—8

### Passage2

The brooklyn I grew up in was the world.When we wanted to go fishing, we had the whole Atlantic or ourselves.We'd go to Sheepshead Bay, and for a dollar get a place on a fishing boat.Within an hour we'd have our haul of flounder.We had the Navy Yard, and whenever one of the battle wagons was tied up there, our schools arranged for us to visit it.We had the theatre.When plays finished their Broadway runs, they

crossed the East River to Fulton Street, their first stop on the road. Later, when we studied art at Manual Training High, our teacher took us to the Brooklyn Art Museum, and there we learned to appreciate what made a great painting great. The zoo at Prospect Park was our lab when we studied natural history, and we learned about plants and flowers not only from books but from the live exhibits at the Botanical Gardens.

1. The author suggests that growing up in Brooklyn was\_\_\_\_\_
  - A)a lesson in independence.
  - B)a study of cultures.
  - C)an enriching experience.
  - D)a confusing existence.
2. The paragraph implies that city children compared to country children\_\_\_\_\_
  - A)mature sooner
  - B)become independent earlier
  - C)have more opportunities.
  - D)have more problems
3. The Brooklyn schools apparently felt that\_\_\_\_\_
  - A)real learning is based on experience.
  - B)discipline comes first, teaching second.
  - C)field trips were too expensive
  - D)young people mature when they make moral decisions.
4. Which of the following lines suggest that Brooklyn had everything a city should have. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A)Line1                      B)Lines2—3
  - C)Lines4—6              D)Lines11—14

### Passage3

The general filled both glasses, and said: "God makes some men poets. Some He makes kings, some beggars. Me he made a hunter. My hand was made for the trigger, my father said. He owned a quarter of a million acres in the Crimea, and he was an ardent sportsman. When I was only five years old he gave me a little gun, specially made in Moscow for me, to shoot sparrows with. When I shot some of his prize turkeys with it, he did not punish me. Instead, he complimented me on my marksmanship. I killed my first bear in the Caucasus when I was ten. My whole life had been one prolonged hunt. I went into the army because it was expected of a nobleman's son. And for a time I commanded a division of Cossack cavalry, but my real interest was always the hunt. I have hunted every kind of game in every land. It would be impossible for me to tell you how many animals I have killed.

1. From the paragraph we can infer that the general is \_\_\_\_\_
  - A)distrustful of others.
  - B)obsessed with war.

- C) bored with killing.                      D) impressed with himself.
2. Evidence in the paragraph suggests that the general is \_\_\_\_\_  
 A) Spanish.      B) Russian.      C) French.      D) German.
3. "It would be impossible for me to tell you how many animals I have killed" suggests that the general \_\_\_\_\_  
 A) regrets having killed so many animals.  
 B) prides himself on his hunting ability.  
 C) prefers to forget his violent past.  
 D) appreciates learning and the fine arts.
4. All but one of the following expressions suggest the general is from the wealthy family \_\_\_\_\_  
 A) a million acres.                      B) a nobleman's son.  
 C) marksmanship.                      D) prize turkeys.

#### Passage 4

The most remarkable weapon invented by primitive man is the boomerang. It is still used by the natives of Australia. Made of hard wood, it is shaped into a curve over hot coals. It is from two to four feet long, flat on one side and rounded on the other, with a sharp edge. There are several kinds of boomerangs. They are used for war, for hunting, and for amusement. The well-known "return" boomerang is really a toy. Instead of going straight forward, it slowly rises in the air. It whirls around in a curved line until it reaches a certain height, after which it returns to the thrower. This effect is produced by the action of the air on the bulging side of the boomerang. The other types are effective weapons because of their size and irregular motion. It is said that with one of these weapons, a native can cut a small animal almost in two at a distance of 400 feet.

1. The boomerang is "remarkable" probably because of \_\_\_\_\_  
 A) its unusual and varied performance.  
 B) its great size and weight.  
 C) its ability to withstand stress.  
 D) its manner of construction.
2. The reader may assume that \_\_\_\_\_  
 A) the boomerang is not useful beyond 400 feet.  
 B) the boomerang is the only weapon invented by primitive man.  
 C) boomerangs used for hunting and war are similar.  
 D) many boomerangs are lost in hunting.
3. The "toy" boomerang is probably \_\_\_\_\_  
 A) made by native children  
 B) smaller and lighter.  
 C) made from a different wood.  
 D) accurate and deadly.
4. From the last sentence what can we infer?

- A)Boomerangs can kill only small animals.
- B)Only a native person can use a boomerang.
- C)The natives of Australia use boomerangs expertly.
- D)Boomerangs are useful only within400feet.

#### Passage5

The telephone rang and I picked it up and the voice said, "Block party tonight."Right then, I knew summer had arrived in North Dakota.

I'll tell you, there is nobody who enjoys summer more then North Dakotans, possibly because it takes such a long time getting here.We emerge from our cocoons blinding into the sun and ready to go.We flood to the parks and the swimming pools and the golf courses and the hiking trails and the lakes.

You ask a dozen North Dakotans what summer means to them and you will get a dozen different answers.

1. The reader can infer that in North Dakota\_\_\_\_\_
  - A)a block party is an early sign of summer.
  - B)indoor sports are popular in winter.
  - C)the people are hardy and healthy.
  - D)winter snows are unusually deep.
2. To the North Dakotans winter probably seems\_\_\_\_\_
  - A)short but severe.      B)confining but exciting
  - C)long and dull.          D)quiet and satisfying.
3. The sentence, "You ask a dozen North Dakotans what summer means to them and you will get a dozen different answers"suggests that North Dakotans\_\_\_\_\_
  - A)are unsure of themselves.
  - B)are hostile to questioning
  - C)dislike making decisions.
  - D)have varied interests.
4. What can we infer from the sentence "We flood to the parks and the swimming pools and the golf courses and the hiking trails and the lades"?
  - A)North Dakotans enjoy outdoor sports.
  - B)North Dakotans do not enjoy outdoor sports.
  - C)People go to parks and swimming pools because there are many activities there.
  - D)The author is complaining there are too many people in parks and swimming pools and other places.

#### Passage6

Although commonly thought to be one of man's feared deepsea enemies, the octopus is generally a harmless animal that rarely bothers man.In fact, most types of this powerful, eightarmed creature are afraid of

people. There have been some cases in which octopuses have attacked divers. But even these scattered attacks have not been very serious. In the midnineteenth century, Victor Hugo is said to have started the idea that the octopus is a vicious monster of the deep. In his *Toilers of the Sea*, he described how this devilish eats a human being. The tale became so popular that other novelists, and later the movies, used episodes which depict a man struggling in the arms of this marine monster. And thus, the misconception of the octopus as a vicious, merciless killer was spread.

1. The reader can infer from the paragraph that\_\_\_\_\_
  - A) the octopus is a dangerous animal.
  - B) Hugo was a marine biologist.
  - C) Usually, octopuses do not attack people.
  - D) The octopus is a friendly creature to human being.
2. The paragraph suggests that novelists\_\_\_\_\_
  - A) always deal with facts
  - B) sometimes stretch the truth.
  - C) intentionally go far away from the truth.
  - D) like to write about violence.
3. The author of the paragraph implies that\_\_\_\_\_
  - A) deep—sea diving is always dangerous.
  - B) many sea creatures are harmless.
  - C) stories of the octopus have been exaggerated.
  - D) sea stories were popular in the 1800s.
4. The sentence "The tale became so popular that other novelists, and later movies, used episodes which depict a man struggling in the arms of this marine monster" suggests that\_\_\_\_\_
  - A) Writers often borrow ideas from each other.
  - B) Writers and film makers all rewrote Hugo's story.
  - C) Stories about sea animals became popular because of Hugo's story.
  - D) The octopus became more and more dangerous.

#### Passage7

I have taught in high school for ten years. In that time I have given assignments to many students, including a murderer, an evangelist, a boxer, a thief, and an imbecile. The murderer was a quiet, little boy who sat on the front seat and looked at me with pale blue eyes. The evangelist, easily the most popular boy in the school, had the lead in the junior play. The boxer lounged by the windows and let loose at intervals with a raucous laugh that startled even the geraniums. The thief was a gay—hearted soul with a song on his lips. And the imbecile was a soft —eyed little fellow who preferred to remain unnoticed.

All of these pupils once sat in my room, sat and looked gravely

across worn, brown desks. it must have been a great help to these boys. I taught them the rhyming scheme of the Elizabethan sonnet and how to diagram a complex sentence.

1. The paragraph suggests that\_\_\_\_\_
  - A)adult personality can be predicted.
  - B)school grades influence the future.
  - C)schools ignore individual needs.
  - D)people are unpredictable.
2. Apparently the author feels\_\_\_\_\_
  - A)threatened            B)self—satisfied.
  - C)discouraged.        D)hateful.
3. The narrator seems to be making a plea for\_\_\_\_\_
  - A)more meaningful education.
  - B)revision of English courses.
  - C)better classroom discipline.
  - D)guidance in the elementary grades.
4. The first two sentences of the first paragraph suggests that\_\_\_\_\_
  - A)the author does not like teaching.
  - B)the author is an experienced teacher.
  - C)the author is tired of being a teacher.
  - D)the author has given too much work for his students to do.

#### Passage8

Animals in the desert have a problem getting water and keeping it. Insect—eaters get their liquids from their food. Most desert dwellers avoid the drying heat as much as possible, spending their time in burrows, where the damp earth and coolness cut down the amount of evaporation from their breathing. With the exception of the coyote which adapts to have its home in the shelter of rocks or in dense vegetation, nearly all mammals have burrows of one sort or another. All birds seek whatever shade they can find. Reptiles have an added reason for avoiding the desert sun. They are cool—blooded creatures which lack the protection of fur, feathers, and other cooling devices. They can be killed by a relatively short exposure to full sunshine. Many desert animals have an additional source of water through the breakdown of body fats. Lizards, for example, store fat in their tails much as the camel stores it in his hump.

1. As a whole the paragraph suggests that\_\_\_\_\_
  - A)desert animals can survive without water.
  - B)desert animals are all cold—blooded.
  - C)animals adapt to their surroundings.
  - D)heredity does not affect survival.
2. The opening sentence suggests that\_\_\_\_\_

- A)desert animals live short lives.
  - B)water cannot be found in the desert.
  - C)rain never falls on the desert.
  - D)water is scarce and it evaporates quickly.
3. The author implies that on the edesert\_\_\_\_\_
- A)reptiles are harmless during daylight.
  - B)birds sleep by day and hunt by night.
  - C)coyotes are vegetarians.
  - D)insects store eater in their bodies.
4. From the paragraph we can infer that burrows are\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)underground holes for animals
  - B)small ponds of water
  - C)streams
  - D)nestles that protect animals

#### Passage 9

Visitors from space may have landed on our planet dozens, even hundreds of times during the long, empty ages while Man was still a dream of the distan future. Indeed, they could have landed on 90 percent of the earth as recently as two or three hundred years ago, and we would never have heard of it.If one searches through old newspapers, and local records, one can find many reports of strange incidents that could be interpreted as visits from outer space.A stimulating writer, Charles Fort, has made a collection of U.F.O(Unidentified Flying Object) sightings in his book Lo!

One is tempted to believe them more than any modern reports, for the simple reason that they happened long before anyone had ever thought of space travel.Yet at the same time, one cannot take them too seriously, for before scientific education was widespread, even sightings of meteors, comets, auroras,and so on, gave rise to the most incredible stories, as they still do today.

1. The author implies that\_\_\_\_\_
- A)all observations of U.F.O's are unreliable.
  - B)visitors from space could not live on earth.
  - C)many books have been written about U.F.O's
  - D)older civilization may exist on other planets.
2. If visitors from other planets have actually landed earth, one can assume that they came to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A)make war            B)explore
  - C)settle down        D)communicate
3. The author implies that the space age has\_\_\_\_\_
- A)weakened the authenticity of reported sightings.
  - B)increased the number of U.F.O's sightings.
  - C)allowed more scientific study of U.F.O's



- D)solved the age—old mystery of U.F.O's
4. The sentence "If one searches through old newspapers, and local records, one can find many reports of strange incidents that could be interpreted as visits from outer space."suggests that\_\_\_\_\_
- A)U.F.O sightings are not new.
  - B)U.F.O sightings were reported only in the past.
  - C)Reports about U.F.O sightings were not true in the past.
  - D)U.F.O sightings were seldom reported in the past.

#### Passage10

Charles Dickens visited America in the fall of 1867.Wherever he went, the reception was always the same.The night before tickets went on sale , crowds arrived and lined up before the door.By morning, the streets became campgrounds with men, women, and children sitting or sleeping on blankets.Hustlers were asking \$25 for \$2 tickets and \$ 50 for \$ 5 seats.In New York City, over 5 000 people waited from nine o'clock in the morning for the evening performance.everywhere the readings were successful, but audiences were surprised to hear their favorite novel characters speak with an English accent.After 76 readings, Dickens boarded a ship for England.When his fellow passengers requested a reading, he replied that rather than read a word, he would assault the captain and be put in irons.

1. The reception which Dickens received suggests that\_\_\_\_\_

  - A)his arrival had been well advertised.
  - B)Americans loved his books.
  - C)people wanted to impress him.
  - D)he was the first English novelist to visit America.

2. Dickens' refusal to read to his fellow passengers on the return ship to England suggests that he\_\_\_\_\_

  - A)was insulted by their request.
  - B)disliked the passengers.
  - C)was exhausted from the tour.
  - D)needed time to prepare for his next tour.

3. We can infer from this selection that\_\_\_\_\_

  - A)people spend money foolishly.
  - B)theater tickets were expensive in 1867.
  - C)novelists usually become noted lecturers.
  - D)response to a popular performer has not changed in 100 years.

4. The sentence "The night before tickets went on sale, crowds arrived and lined up before the door."suggests that\_\_\_\_\_

  - A)people were willing to wait and pay to see and hear Dickens.
  - B)tickets were sold the night before each reading.
  - C)People crowded together to buy tickets.
  - D)In order to see Dickens, people waited outside the lecture hall.

### 第三节 专项训练答案

Passage1:	1. C	2. A	3. B	4. A
Passage2:	1. C	2. C	3. A	4. A
Passage3:	1. D	2. C	3. B	4. C
Passage4:	1. A	2. C	3. B	4. C
Passage5:	1. A	2. C	3. D	4. A
Passage6:	1. C	2. B	3. C	4. A
Passage7:	1. D	2. C	3. A	4. B
Passage8:	1. C	2. D	3. D	4. A
Passage9:	1. D	2. B	3. A	4. A
Passage10:	1. B	2. C	3. D	4. A

## 第七章 阅读理解综合练习及答案

### 第一节 阅读理解综合练习

#### Passage1

It is natural for young people to be critical of their parents at times and to blame them for most of the misunderstandings between them. They have always complained, more or less justly, that their parents are out of touch with modern ways; that they are possessive and dominant; that they do not trust their children to deal with crises; that they talk too much about certain problems—and that they have no sense of humor, at least in parent—child relationships.

I think it is true that parents often underestimate their teenage children and also forget how they themselves felt when young.

Young people often irritate their parents with their choices in clothes and hairstyles, in entertainers and music. This is not their motive. They feel cut off from the adult world into which they have not yet been accepted. So they create a culture and society of their own. Then, if it turns out that their music or entertainers or vocabulary or clothes or hairstyles irritate their parents, this gives them additional enjoyment. They feel they are superior, at least in a small way, and that they are leaders in style and taste.

Sometimes you are resistant, and proud because you do not want your parents to approve of what you do. If they did approve, it looks as if you are betraying your own age group. But in that case, you are assuming that you are the underdog: you can't win but at least you can keep your honor. This is a passive way of looking at things. It is natural enough after long years of childhood, when you were completely under your parents' control. But it ignores the fact that you are now beginning to be responsible for yourself.

If you plan to control your life, cooperation can be part of that plan. You can charm others, especially your parents, into doing things the way you want. You can impress others with your sense of responsibility and initiative, so that they will give you the authority to do what you want to do.

1. In this passage, the author is primarily addressing\_\_\_\_\_.

- A) parents of teenagers
- B) newspaper readers
- C) teenagers
- D) those who give advice to teenagers

2. The first paragraph is mainly about\_\_\_\_\_.

- A) the teenagers' criticism of their parents
- B) misunderstandings between teenagers and their parents
- C) the dominance of the parents over their children

- D)the teenagers' ability to deal with crises
3. Teenagers tend to have strange clothes and hairstyles because they\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)want to irritate their parents  
B)have a strong desire to be leaders in style and taste  
C)have no other way to enjoy themselves better  
D)want to show their existence by creating a culture of their own
4. Teen agers do not want their parents to approve of whatever they do because they\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)have a desire to be independent  
B)feel that they are superior in a small way to the adults  
C)are not likely to win over the adults  
D)have already been accepted into the adult world
5. To improve parent-child relationships, teenagers are advised to be\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)obedient                      B)responsible  
C)independent                D)co-operative

## Passage2

The long years of food shortage in this country have suddenly given way to apparent abundance.Stores and shops are choked with food.Rationing is virtually suspended, and overseas suppliers have been asked to hold back deliveries.Yet, instead of joy, there is wide—spread uneasiness and confusion.Why do food prices keep on rising, when there seems to be so much more food about?Is the abundance only temporary, or has it come to stay?Does it mean that we need to think less now about producing more food at home?No one knows what to expect.

The recent growth of export surpluses on the world food market has certainly been unexpectedly great, partly because astrange sequence of two successful grain harvests in North America is now being followed by a third.Most of Britain's overseas suppliers of meat, too, are offering more this year and home production has also risen.

But the effect of all this on the food situation in this country has been made worse by a simultaneous rise in food prices, due chiefly to the gradual cutting down of government support for food.The shops are overstocked with food not only because there is more food available, but also because people, frightened by high prices, are buying less of it.

Moreover, the rise in domestic prices has come at a time when world prices have begun to fall, with the result that imported food, with the exception of grain, s often cheaper than the home—produced variety.And now grain prices, too, are falling.Consumers are beginning to ask why they should not be enabled to benefit from this trend.

The significance of these developments is not lost on farmers.The

older generation have seen it all happen before. Despite the present price and market guarantees, farmers fear they are about to be squeezed between cheap food imports and a shrinking home market. Presently, production is running at 51 percent above pre-war levels, and the government has called for an expansion to 60 percent by 1956; but repeated Ministerial advice is carrying little weight and the expansion program is not working very well.

1. Why is there "widespread uneasiness and confusion" about the food situation in Britain?
  - A) The abundant food supply is not expected to last.
  - B) Despite the abundance, food prices keep rising.
  - C) Britain's importing less food.
  - D) Britain will cut back on its production of food.
2. The main reason for the rise in food prices is that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) people are buying less food
  - B) imported food is driving prices higher
  - C) domestic food production has decreased
  - D) the government is providing less support for agriculture
3. Why didn't different government expansion programme work very well?
  - A) Because the farmers were uncertain about the financial support the government guaranteed.
  - B) Because the farmers were uncertain about the benefits of expanding production.
  - C) Because the farmers were uncertain whether foreign markets could be found for their products.
  - D) Because the older generation of farmers were strongly against the program.
4. The decrease in world food prices was a result of \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) a sharp fall in the purchasing power of the consumers
  - B) a sharp fall in the cost of food production
  - C) the overproduction of food in the food-importing countries
  - D) the overproduction on the part of the main food-exporting countries
5. What did the future look like for Britain's food production at the time this article was written?
  - A) It looks depressing despite government guarantees.
  - B) An expansion of food production was at hand.
  - C) British food producers would receive more government financial support.
  - D) The fall in world food price would benefit British food producers.

### Passage 3

It is hard to predict how science is going to turn out, and if it

is really good science it is impossible to predict. If the things to be found are actually new, they are by definition unknown in advance. You cannot make choices in this matter. You either have science or you don't, and if you have it you are obliged to accept the surprising and disturbing pieces of information, along with the neat and promptly useful bits.

The only solid piece of scientific truth about which I feel totally confident is that we are profoundly ignorant about nature. Indeed, I regard this as the major discovery of the past hundred years of biology. It is, in its way, an illuminating piece of news. It would have amazed the brightest minds of the 18th century Enlightenment (启蒙运动) to be told by any of us how little we know and how bewildering seems the way ahead. It is this sudden confrontation with the depth and scope of ignorance that represents the most significant contribution of the 20th century science to the human intellect (智能). In earlier times, we either pretended to understand how things worked or ignored the problem, or simply made up stories to fill the gaps. Now that we have begun exploring in earnest we are getting glimpses of how huge the questions are, and how far from being answered. Because of this, we are depressed. It is not so bad being ignorant if you are totally ignorant; the hard thing is knowing in some detail the reality of ignorance, the worst spots and here and there the not-so-bad spots, but no true light at the end of the tunnel nor even any tunnels that can yet be trusted.

But we are making a beginning, and there ought to be some satisfaction. There are probably no questions we can think up that can't be answered, sooner or later, including even the matter of consciousness. To be sure, there may well be questions we can't think up, ever, and therefore limits to the reach of human intellect, but that is another matter. Within our limits, we should be able to work our way through to all our answers, if we keep at it long enough, and pay attention.

1. According to the author, really good science \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) would surprise the brightest minds of the 18th century Enlightenment
  - B) will help people to make the right choice in advance
  - C) will produce results which cannot be foreseen
  - D) will bring about disturbing results
2. It can be inferred from the passage that scientists of the 18th century \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) knew that they were ignorant and wanted to know more about nature
  - B) were afraid of facing up to the realities of scientific research
  - C) thought that they knew a great deal and could solve most problems of science

- D) did more harm than good in promoting man's understanding of nature
3. Which of the following is NOT mentioned about scientists in earlier times?
- A) They invented false theories to explain things they didn't understand.
  - B) They falsely claimed to know all about nature.
  - C) They did not believe in results from scientific observation.
  - D) They paid little attention to the problems they didn't understand.
4. What is the author's attitude towards science?
- A) He is confident though he is aware of the enormous difficulties in scientific research.
  - B) He is doubtful because of the enormous difficulties in scientific research.
  - C) He is depressed because of the ignorance of scientists.
  - D) He is delighted because of the illuminating scientific findings.
5. The author believes that \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) man can not solve all the problems he can think up because of the limits of human intellect
  - B) man can find solutions sooner or later to whatever questions concerning nature
  - C) sooner or later man can think up the questions concerning nature and answer them
  - D) questions concerning consciousness are outside the scope of scientific research

#### Passage 4

Greenspace facilities are contributing to an important extent to the quality of the urban environment. Fortunately it is no longer necessary that every lecture or every book about this subject has to start with the proof of this idea. At present it is generally accepted, although more as a self-evident statement than on the base of a closely-reasoned scientific proof. The recognition of the importance of greenspaces in the urban environment is a first step on the right way, this does not mean, however, that sufficient details are known about the functions of greenspace in towns and about the way in which the inhabitants are using these spaces. As to this rather complex subject I shall, within the scope of this lecture, enter into one aspect only, namely the recreative function of greenspace facilities.

the theoretical separation of living, working, traffic and recreation which for many years has been used in town-and-country planning, has in my opinion resulted in disproportionate attention for

forms of recreation far from home, whereas there was relatively little attention for improvement of recreative possibilities in the direct neighborhood of the home. We have come to the conclusion that this is not right, because an important part of the time which we do not pass in sleeping or working, is used for activities at and around home. So it is obvious that recreation in the open air has to begin at the street-door of the house. The urban environment has to offer as many recreation activities as possible, and the design of these has to be such that more obligatory activities can also have a recreative aspect.

The very best standard of living is nothing if it is not possible to take a pleasant walk in the district,, if the children cannot be allowed to play in the streets, because the risks of traffic are too great, if during shopping you can nowhere find a spot for en-joying for a moment the nice weather, in short, if you only feel yourself at home after the street-door of your house is closed after you.

1. According to the author, the importance of greenspaces in the urban environment \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) is still unknown
  - B) has been fully recognized
  - C) is being closely studied
  - D) is usually neglected
2. The theoretical separation of living, working, traffic and recreation has led to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) the disproportion of recreation facilities in the neighborhood
  - B) the improvement of recreative possibilities in the neighborhood
  - C) relatively little attention for recreative possibilities
  - D) the location of recreation facilities far from home
3. The author suggests that the recreative possibilities of greenspace should be provided \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) in the neighborhood of the house
  - B) in the suburbs
  - C) in special areas
  - D) in gardens and parks
4. According to the author, greenspace facilities should be designed in such a way that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) an increasing number of recreative activities might be developed
  - B) more and more people might have access to them
  - C) more obligatory activities might take on a recreative aspect
  - D) recreative activities might be brought into our homes.
5. The main idea of this passage is that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) attention must be directed to the improvement of recreative possibilities
  - B) better use of greenspace facilities should be made so as to improve the quality of our life



- C) the urban environment is providing more recreation activities than it did many years ago
- D) priority must be given to the development of obligatory activities

#### Passage 5

There is a popular belief among parents that schools are no longer interested in spelling. No school I have taught in has ever ignored spelling or considered it unimportant as a basic skill. There are, however, vastly different ideas about how to teach it, or how much priority it must be given over general language development and writing ability. The problem is, how to encourage a child to express himself freely and confidently in writing without holding him back with the complexity of spelling.

If spelling becomes the only focal point of his teacher's interest, clearly a bright child will be likely to play safe. He will tend to write only words within his spelling range, choosing to avoid adventurous language. That's why teachers often encourage the early use of dictionaries and pay attention to content rather than technical ability.

I was once shocked to read on the bottom of a sensitive piece of writing about a personal experience "This work is terrible. There are far too many spelling errors and your writing is illegible." It may have been a sharp criticism of the pupil's technical abilities in writing, but it was also a sad reflection on the teacher who had omitted to read the essay, which contained some beautiful expressions of the child's deep feelings. The teacher was not wrong to draw attention to the errors, but if his priorities had centered on the child's ideas, an expression of his disappointment with the presentation would have given the pupil more motivation (动机) to seek improvement.

1. Teachers are different in their opinions about \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) the difficulties in teaching spelling
  - B) the role of spelling in general language development
  - C) the complexities of the basic writing skills
  - D) the necessity of teaching spelling
2. The expression "play safe" probably means \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) to write carefully
  - B) to do as teachers say
  - C) to use dictionaries frequently
  - D) to avoid using words one is not sure of
3. Teachers encourage the use of dictionaries so that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) students will be able to express their ideas more freely
  - B) students will have more confidence in writing
  - C) teachers will have less trouble in correcting the mistakes

- D) students will learn to be independent of teachers
4. The writer seems to think that the teacher's judgment on that sensitive piece of writing is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) unfair                      B) foolish  
C) reasonable                D) careless
5. The major point discussed in the passage is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) the importance of developing writing skills  
B) the complexities of spelling  
C) the correct way of marking compositions  
D) the relationship between spelling and the content of a composition

#### Passage 6

A breakthrough in the provision of energy from the sun for the European Economic Community (EEC) could be brought forward by up to two decades, if a modest increase could be provided in the EEC's research effort in this field, according to the senior EEC scientists engaged in experiments in solar energy at EEC's scientific laboratories at Ispra, near Milan.

The senior West German scientist in charge of the Community's solar energy program, Mr. Joachim Gretz, told journalists that at present levels of research spending it was most unlikely that solar energy would provide as much as three percent of the Community's energy requirements even after the year 2,000. But he said that with a modest increase in the present sums, devoted by the EEC to this work it was possible that the breakthrough could be achieved by the end of the next decade.

Mr. Gretz calculates that if solar energy only provided three per cent of the EEC's needs, this could still produce a saving of about a billion pounds in the present bill for imported energy each year. And he believes that with the possibility of utilizing more advanced technology in this field it might be possible to satisfy a much bigger share of the Community's future energy needs.

At present the EEC spends about \$2.6 millions a year on solar research at Ispra, one of the EEC's official joint research centres, and another \$3 millions a year in indirect research with universities and other independent bodies.

1. The phrase "be brought forward" in Line 2 most probably means \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) be advanced              B) be completed  
C) be expected              D) be introduced
2. Some scientists believe that a breakthrough in the use of solar energy depends on \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) advanced technology      C) sufficient funding

- B) further experiments      D) well-equipped laboratories
3. According to Mr. Gretz, the present sum of money will enable the scientists to provide \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) less than 3% of the EEC's needs before the year 2000  
B) 3% of the EEC's needs before the year 2000  
C) a little more than 3% of the EEC's needs after the year 2000  
D) less than 3% of the EEC's needs even after the year 2000
4. Which of the following is NOT true according to the passage?
- A) the desired breakthrough could be obtained by the end of the next decade if investment were increased.  
B) At the present level of research spending, it is difficult to make any significant progress in the provision of energy from the sun.  
C) The EEC's spends one billion pounds on imported energy each year.  
D) The total yearly spending of the EEC on solar energy re-search amounted to almost 6 million dollars.
5. The application of advanced technology to research in solar energy \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) would lead to a big increase in research funding  
B) would make it unnecessary to import oil  
C) would make it possible to meet the future energy needs of the EEC  
D) would provide a much greater proportion of the Community's future energy needs

#### Passage 7

Just seven years ago, the Jarvik-7 artificial heart was being cheered as the model of human creativeness. The sight of Barney Clark Glark — alive and conscious after trading his diseased heart for a metal-and-plastic pump — convinced the press, the public and many doctors that the future had arrived. It hadn't. After monitoring production of the Jarvik—7, and receiving its effects on the 150 or so patients (most of whom got the device as a temporary measure), the U.S. Food and Drug Administration concluded that the machine was doing more to endanger lives than to save them. Last week the agency canceled its earlier approval, effectively banning the device.

The recall may hurt Symbion Inc., maker of the Jarvik—7, but it won't end the quest for an artificial heart. One problem with the banned model is that the tubes connecting it to an external power source created a passage for infection. Inventors are now working on new devices that would be fully placed, along with a tiny power pack, in the patient's chest. The first sample products aren't expected for another 10 or 20 years. But some people are already worrying that

they'll work — and that America's overextended health — care programs will lose a precious \$2.5 billion to \$5 billion a year providing them for a relatively few dying patients. If such expenditures cut into funding for more basic care, the net effect could actually be a decline in the nation's health.

1. According to the passage the Jarvik—7 artificial heart proved to be \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) a good life—saver
  - B) a technical wonder
  - C) a technical failure
  - D) an effective means to treat heart disease.
2. From the passage we know that Symbin Inc. \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) has been banned by the government from producing artificial hearts
  - B) will review the effects of artificial hearts before designing new models
  - C) may continue to work on new models of reliable artificial hearts
  - D) can make new models of artificial hearts available on the market in 10 to 20 years
3. The new models of artificial hearts are expected \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) to have a working life of 10 or 20 years
  - B) to be set fully in the patient's chest
  - C) to be equipped with an external power source
  - D) to create a new passage for infection
4. The word "they" in Line 8, Para.2 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) doctors who treat heart diseases
  - B) new models of artificial hearts
  - C) America's health—care programs
  - D) makers of artificial hearts
5. Some people feel that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) artificial hearts are seldom effective
  - B) the country is not spending enough money on artificial hearts
  - C) the country should not spend so much money on artificial hearts
  - D) America's health—care programs are not doing enough for the nation's health.

#### Passage 8

A rapid means of long distance transportation became a necessity for the United States as settlement spread ever farther westward. The early trains were impractical curiosities, and for a long time the railroad companies met with troublesome mechanical problems. The most serious ones were the construction of rails to bear the load, and the development of a safe, effective stopping system. Once these were solved, the railroad was established as the best means of land

transportation. By 1860 there were thousands of miles of railroads crossing the eastern mountain ranges and reaching: westward to the Mississippi. There were also regional southern and western lines.

The high point in railroad building came with the construction of the first, transcontinental system. In 1862 Congress authorized two western railroad companies to build lines from Nebraska westward and from California eastward to a meeting point, so as to complete a transcontinental crossing linking the Atlantic seaboard with the Pacific. The Government helped the railroads generously with money and land. Actual work on the project began four years later. The Central Pacific Company, starting from California, used Chinese labor, while the Union Pacific employed crews of Irish laborers. The two groups worked at remarkable speed, each trying to cover a greater distance than the other. In 1869 they met at a place called Promontory in what is now the state of Utah. Many visitors came there for the great occasion. There were joyous celebrations all over the country, with parades and the ringing of church bells to honor the great achievement.

The railroad was very important in encouraging westward movement. It also helped build up industry and farming by moving raw materials and by distributing products rapidly to distant markets. In linking towns and people to one another it helped unify the United States.

1. The major problems with America's railroad system in the mid 19th century lay in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) lack of financial support for development
  - B) poor quality rails and unreliable stopping systems
  - C) limited railroad lines
  - D) lack of a transcontinental railroad
2. The building of the first transcontinental system \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) brought about a rapid growth of industry and farming in the west
  - B) attracted many visitors to the construction sites
  - C) attracted laborers from Europe
  - D) encouraged people to travel all over the country
3. The best title for this passage would be \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) Settlements Spread Westward
  - B) The importance of Railroads in the American Economy
  - C) American Railroad History
  - D) The Coast—to—Coast Railroad: A Vital Link
4. The construction of the transcontinental railroad took
  - A) 3 years      B) 7 years
  - C) 4 years      D) 9 years
5. What most likely made people think about a transcontinental railroad?
  - A) The possibility of government support for such a task.

- B) The need to explore Utah.
- C) The need to develop the railroad industry in the west.
- D) The need to connect the east coast with the west.

#### Passage 9

Researchers have established that when people are mentally engaged, biochemical changes occur in the brain that allow it to act more effectively in cognitive areas such as attention and memory. This is true regardless of age.

People will be alert and receptive if they are faced with information that gets them to think about things they are interested in. And someone with a history of doing more rather than less will go into old age more cognitively sound than someone who has not had an active mind.

Many experts are so convinced of challenging the brain that they are putting the theory to work in their own lives. "The idea is not necessarily to learn to memorize enormous amounts of information," says James Fozard, associate director of the National Institute on Aging. "Most of us don't need that kind of skill. Such specific training is of less interest than being able to maintain mental alertness." Fozard and others say they challenge their brains with different mental skills, both because they enjoy them and because they are sure that their range of activities will help the way their brains work.

Gene Cohen, acting director of the same institute, suggests that people in their old age should engage in mental and physical activities individually as well as in groups. Cohen says that we are frequently advised to keep physical active as we age, but older people need to keep mentally active as well. Those who do are more likely to maintain their intellectual abilities and to be generally happier and better adjusted. "The point is, you need to do both," Cohen says. "Intellectual activity actually influences brain—cell health and size."

1. People who are cognitively healthy are those \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) who can remember large amounts of information.
  - B) who are highly intelligent.
  - C) whose minds are alert and receptive.
  - D) who are good at recognizing different sounds.
2. According to Fozard's argument, people can make their brains work more efficiently by \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) constantly doing memory work
  - B) taking part in various mental activities
  - C) going through scientific training.
  - D) making frequent adjustments.
3. The findings of James and other scientists in their work \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) remain a theory to be further proved.

- B) have been challenged by many other experts.
  - C) have been generally accepted.
  - D) are practised by the researchers themselves
4. Older people are generally advised to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) keep fit by going in for physical activities
  - B) keep mentally active by challenging their brains
  - C) maintain mental alertness through specific training
  - D) maintain a balance between individual and group activities
5. What is the passage mainly about?
- A) How biochemical changes occur in the human brain.
  - B) Why people should keep active not only physically but also mentally.
  - C) How intellectual activities influence brain—cell health.
  - D) Why people should receive special mental training as they age.

#### Passage 10

Attention to detail is something everyone can and should do — especially in a tight job market. Bob Crossley, a human—resources expert notices this in the job applications that come across his desk every day. "It's amazing how many candidates eliminate themselves," he says.

"Resumes arrive with stains. Some candidates don't bother to spell the company's name correctly. "Once I see a mistake, I eliminate the candidate," Crossley concludes. "If they cannot take care of these details, why should we trust them with a job?"

Can we pay too much attention to details? Absolutely. Perfectionists struggle over little things at the cost of something larger they work toward. "To keep from losing the forest for the tree," says Charles Garfield, associate professor at the University of California, San Francisco, "we must constantly ask ourselves how the details we're working on fit into the larger picture. If they don't, we should drop them and move to something else."

Garfield compares this process to his work as a computer scientist at NASA. "The Apollo 11 moon launch was slightly off—course 90 percent of the time," says Garfield. "But a successful landing was still likely because we knew the exact coordinates of our goal. This allowed us to make adjustments as necessary." Knowing where we want to go helps us judge the importance of every task we undertake.

Too often we believe what accounts for others' success is some special secret or a lucky break (机遇). But rarely is success so mysterious. Again and again, we see that by doing little things within our grasp well, large rewards follow.

1. According to the passage, some job applicants were rejected \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) because of their carelessness as shown in their failure to present a clean copy of a resume
  - B) because of their inadequate education as shown in their poor spelling in writing a resume
  - C) because they failed to give a detailed description of their background in their applications
  - D) because they eliminated their names from the applicants' list themselves
2. The word "perfectionists" (Para.3, Line 1—2) refers to those who \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) demand others to get everything absolutely right
  - B) know how to adjust their goals according to the circumstances
  - C) pay too much attention to details only to lose their major objectives
  - D) are capable of achieving perfect results in whatever they do
3. Which of the following is the author's advice to the reader?
- A) Although too much attention to details may be costly, they should not be overlooked.
  - B) Don't forget details when drawing pictures.
  - C) Be aware of the importance of a task before undertaking it.
  - D) Careless applicants are not to be trusted.
4. The example of the Apollo II moon launch is given to illustrate that \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) minor mistakes can be ignored in achieving major objectives
  - B) failure is the mother of success
  - C) adjustments are the key to the successful completion of any work
  - D) keeping one's goal in mind helps in deciding which details can be overlooked
5. The best title for this passage would be \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) Don't Be a Perfectionist
  - B) Importance of Adjustments
  - C) Details and Major Objectives
  - D) Hard Work Plus good luck

#### Passage 11

Britain almost more than any other country in the world must seriously face the problem of building upwards, that is to say, of accommodating a considerable proportion of its population in high blocks of flats. It is said that the Englishman objects to this type of existence, but if the case is such, he does in fact differ from the inhabitants of most countries of the world today. In the past our own blocks of flats have been associated with the lower-income groups and they have lacked the obvious provisions, such as central heating, constant hot water supply, electrically operated lifts from top to



bottom, and so on, as well as such details, important notwithstanding, as easy facilities for disposal of dust and rubbish and storage places for baby carriages on the ground floor, playgrounds for children on the top of the buildings, and drying grounds for washing.

It is likely that the dispute regarding flats versus individual houses will continue to rage on for a long time as far as Britain is concerned. and it is unfortunate that there should be hot feelings on both sides whenever this subject is raised. Those who oppose the building of flats base their case primarily on the assumption that everyone prefers an individual home and garden and on the high cost per unit of accommodation. The latter ignores the higher cost of providing full services to a scattered community and the cost in both money and time of the journeys to work for the suburban resident.

1. We can infer from the passage that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) English people, like most people in other countries, dislike living in flats
  - B) people in most countries of the world today are not opposed to living in flats
  - C) people in Britain are forced to move into high blocks of flats
  - D) modern flats still fail to provide the necessary facilities for living
2. What is said about the blocks of flats built in the past in Britain?
  - A) They were mostly inhabited by people who did not earn much.
  - B) They were usually not large enough to accommodate the big families.
  - C) They were sold to people before necessary facilities were installed.
  - D) They provided playgrounds for children on the top of the buildings.
3. the word "rage" means "\_\_\_\_\_".
  - A) be ignored
  - B) develop with great force
  - C) encourage people greatly
  - D) be in fashion
4. Some people oppose the building of flats because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) the living expenses for each individual family are higher
  - B) it involves higher cost compared with the building of houses
  - C) they believe people like to live in houses with gardens
  - D) the disposal of rubbish remains a problem for those living in flats
5. The author mentions that people who live in suburban houses \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) don't have access to easy facilities because they live away from

the city

- B) have to pay a lot of money to employ people to do service work
- C) take longer time to know each other because they are a scattered community
- D) have to spend more money and time traveling to work every day

#### Passage 12

Where do pesticides(杀虫剂) fit into the picture of environmental disease? We have seen that they now pollute soil, water, and food, that they have the power to make our streams fishless and our gardens and woodlands silent and birdless. Man, however much he may like to pretend the contrary, is part of nature. Can he escape a pollution that is now so thoroughly distributed throughout our world?

We know that every single exposure to these chemicals, if the amount is large enough, can cause extremely severe poisoning. But this is not the major problem. The sudden illness or death of farmers, farm workers, and others exposed to sufficient quantities of pesticides is very sad and should not occur. For the population as a whole, we must be more concerned with the delayed effects of absorbing small amounts of the pesticides that invisibly pollute our world.

Responsible public health officials have pointed out that the biological effects of chemicals are cumulative over long periods of time, and that the danger to the individual may depend on the sum of exposures received throughout his lifetime. For these very reasons the danger is easily ignored. It is human nature to shake off what may seem to us a threat of future disaster. "Men are naturally most impressed by diseases which have obvious signs," says a wise physician, Dr. Rene Duhos, "yet some of their worst enemies slowly approach them unnoticed."

1. Which of the following is closest in meaning to the sentence "Man, ... is part of nature." (Para. 1, Lines 4—5)?
  - A) Man appears indifferent to what happens in nature.
  - B) Man acts as if he does not belong to nature.
  - C) Man can avoid the effects of environmental pollution.
  - D) Man can escape his responsibilities to environmental protection.
2. What is the author's attitude towards the environmental protection.
  - A) Pessimistic.
  - B) Indifferent.
  - C) Defensive.
  - D) Concerned.
3. In the author's view, the sudden death caused by exposure to large amounts of pesticides \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) is not the worst of the negative consequences resulting from the use of pesticides
  - B) now occurs most frequently among all accidental deaths

- C)has sharply increased so as to become the center of public attention
  - D)is unavoidable because people can't do without pesticides in farming
4. People tend to ignore the delayed effects of exposure to chemicals because\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)limited exposure to them does little harm to people's health
  - B)the present is more important for them than the future
  - C)the disaster does not become apparent immediately
  - D)humans are capable of withstanding small amounts of poisoning
5. It can be concluded from Dr. Dubos' remarks that\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)people find invisible diseases difficult to deal with
  - B)attacks by hidden enemies tend to be fatal
  - C)diseases with obvious signs are easy to cure
  - D)people tend to overlook hidden dangers caused by pesticides

### Passage 13

A new era is upon us. Call it what you will : the service economy, the information age, the knowledge society. It all translates to a fundamental change in the way we work. Already we're partly there. The percentage of people who earn their living by making things has fallen dramatically in the Western World. Today the majority of jobs in America, Europe and Japan (two thirds or more in many of these countries) are in the service industry, and the number is on the rise. More women are in the work force than ever before. There are more part-time jobs. More people are self-employed. But the breadth of the economic transformation can't be measured by numbers alone, because it also is giving rise to a radical new way of thinking about the nature of work itself. Long-held notions about jobs and careers, the skills needed to succeed, even the relation between individuals and employer—all these are being challenged.

We have only to look behind us to get some sense of what may lie ahead. No one looking ahead 20 years possibly could have foreseen the ways in which a single invention, the chip (集成块), would transform our world thanks to its applications in personal computers, digital communications and factory robots. Tomorrow's achievements in biotechnology, artificial intelligence or even some still unimagined technology could produce a similar wave of dramatic changes. But one thing is certain: information and knowledge will become even more vital, and the people who possess it, whether they work in manufacturing or services, will have the advantage and produce the wealth. Computer knowledge will become as basic a requirement as the ability to read and write. The ability to solve problems by applying information instead of performing routine tasks will be valued above all else. If

you cast your mind ahead 10years, information services will be predominant. It will be the way you do your job.

1. A characteristic of the information age is the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) most of the job opportunities can now be found in the service industry
  - B) manufacturing industries are steadily increasing
  - C) people find it harder and harder to earn a living by working in factories
  - D) the service industry is relying more and more on the female work force
2. One of the great changes brought about by the knowledge society is the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) the difference between the employee and the employer has become insignificant
  - B) people have to change their jobs from time to time
  - C) Most people have to take part-time jobs
  - D) people's traditional concepts about work no longer hold true
3. By referring to computers and other inventions, the author means to say the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) people should be able to respond quickly to the advancement of technology
  - B) the importance of high technology has been overlooked
  - C) future achievements in technology will bring about inconceivable dramatic changes
  - D) computer science will play a leading role in the future information services
4. The future will probably belong to those who \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) give full play to their brain potential
  - B) possess and know how to make use of information
  - C) involve themselves in service industries
  - D) cast their minds ahead instead of looking back
5. Which of the following would be the best title for the passage?
  - A) Computers and the Knowledge Society
  - B) Service Industries in Modern Society
  - C) Features and Implications of the New Era
  - D) Rapid Advancement of Information Technology

#### Passage 14

Beauty has always been regarded as something praiseworthy. Almost everyone thinks attractive people are happier and healthier, have better marriages and have more respectable occupations. Personal consultants give them better advice for finding jobs. Even judges are on attractive defendants. But in the executive circle, beauty can become a liability.

While attractiveness is a positive factor for a man on his way up the executive ladder, it is harmful to a woman.

Handsome male executives were perceived as having more integrity than plainer men; effort and ability were thought to account for their success.

Attractive female executives were considered to have less integrity than unattractive ones; their success was attributed not to ability but to factors such as luck.

All unattractive women executives were thought to have more integrity and to be more capable than the attractive female executives. Interestingly, though, the rise of the unattractive overnight successes was attributed more to personal relationships and less to ability than was that of attractive overnight successes.

Why are attractive women not thought to be able? An attractive woman is perceived to be more feminine (女性的) and an attractive man more masculine (男性的) than the less attractive ones. Thus an attractive woman has an advantage in traditionally female jobs, but an attractive woman in a traditionally masculine position appears to lack the "masculine" qualities required.

This is true even in politics. "When the only clue is how he or she looks, people treat men and women differently," says Anne Bowman, who recently published a study on the effects of attractiveness on political candidates. She asked 125 undergraduate students to rank two groups of photographs, one of men and one of women, in order of attractiveness. The students were told the photographs were of candidates for political offices. They were asked to rank them again, in the order they would vote for them.

The results showed that attractive males utterly defeated unattractive men, but the women who had been ranked most attractive invariably received the fewest votes.

1. The word "liability" (Para. 1. Line 6) most probably means \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) disadvantage    B) instability  
C) misfortune    D) burden
2. In traditionally female jobs, attractiveness \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) makes women look more honest and capable  
B) reinforces the feminine qualities required  
C) is of primary importance to women  
D) often enables women to succeed quickly
3. Bowman's experiment reveals that when it comes to politics, attractiveness \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) turns out to be an obstacle for men  
C) is more of an obstacle than a benefit to women  
B) affects men and women alike  
D) has as little effect on men as on women.

4. It can be inferred from the passage that people's views on beauty are often\_\_\_\_\_.
- A) practical                      B) radical  
C) old-fashioned              D)prejudiced
5. The author writes this passage to \_\_\_\_.
- A)give advice to job-seekers who are attractive  
B)discuss the negative aspects of being attractive  
C)demand equal rights for women  
D)emphasize the importance of appearance.

#### Passage 15

The importance and focus of the interview in the work of the print and broadcast journalist is reflected in several books that have been written on the topic. Most of these books, as well as several chapters, mainly in, but not limited to, journalism and broadcasting handbooks and reporting texts, stress the "how to" aspects of journalistic interviewing rather than the conceptual aspects of the interview, its context, and implications. Much of the "how to" material is based on personal experiences and general impressions. As we know, in journalism as in other fields, much can be learned from the systematic study of 'professional practice, such study bring together evidence from which broad generalized principles can be developed.

There is, as has been suggested, a growing body of 'research literature in journalism and broadcasting. but very little significant attention has been devoted to the study of the interview itself. On the other hand, many general texts as well as numerous research articles on interviewing in fields other than journalism have been written. Many of these books and articles present the theoretical and empirical (经验的) aspects on the interview as well as the training of the interviewers. Unhappily, this plentiful general literature about interviewing pay little attention to the journalistic interview. The fact that the general literature on interviewing does not deal with the journalistic interview seems to be surprising for two reasons. First, it seems likely that most people in modern Western societies are more familiar, at least in a positive manner, with journalistic interviewing than with any other form of interviewing. Most of us are probably somewhat familiar with the clinical interview, such as that conducted by physicians and psychologists. In these situations the professional person or interviewer is interested in getting information necessary for the diagnosis (诊断) and treatment of the person seeking help. Another familiar situation is the job interview. However, very few of us have actually been interviewed personally by the mass media, particularly by television. And yet, we have a vivid acquaintance with the journalistic interview by virtue of our roles as readers,

listeners, and viewers. Even so, true understanding of the journalistic interview, especially television interviews, requires thoughtful analyses and even study, as this book indicates.

1. The main idea of the first paragraph is that\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) generalized principles for journalistic interviews are the chief concern for writers on journalism.
  - B) concepts and contextual implications are of secondary importance to journalistic interviewing.
  - C) importance should be attached to the systematic study of journalistic interviewing
  - D) personal experiences and general impressions should be excluded from journalistic interviews
2. Much research has been done on interviews in general\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) but journalistic interviewing as a specific field has unfortunately been neglected.
  - B) though the study of the interviewing techniques hasn't received much attention
  - C) so the training of journalistic interviewers has likewise been strengthened
  - D) and there has also been a dramatic growth in the study of journalistic interviewing
3. Westerners are familiar with the journalistic interview,\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) but most of them wish to stay away from it
  - B) and many of them hope to be interviewed some day
  - C) but most of them may not have been interviewed in person,
  - D) and many of them would like to acquire a true understanding of it.
4. Who is the interviewee in a clinical interview?
  - A) The psychologist.
  - B) The physician.
  - C) The journalist.
  - D) The patient.
5. The passage is most likely a part of\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) a news article
  - B) a preface
  - C) a research report
  - D) a journalistic interview

#### Passage 16

The relationship between the home and market economies has gone through two distinct stages. Early industrialization began the process of transferring some production processes (e.g. clothmaking, sewing and canning foods) from the home to the marketplace. Although the home economy could still produce these goods, the processes were laborious (费力的) and the market economy was usually more efficient. Soon, the more important second stage was evident—the marketplace began producing goods and services that have never been produced by the home

economy, and the home economy was unable to produce them(e.g. electricity and electrical appliances, the automobile, advanced education, sophisticated medical care).In the second stage, the question of whether the home economy was less efficient in producing these new goods and services was irrelevant; if the family were to enjoy these fruits of industrialization, they would have to be obtained in the marketplace.

The traditional ways of taking care of these needs in the home, such as in nursing the sick, became socially unacceptable (and, in most serious cases, probably less successful).Just as the appearance of the automobile made the use of the horsedrawn carriage illegal and then impractical, and the appearance of television changed the radio from a source of entertainment to a source of background music, so most of the fruits of economic growth did not increase the options available to the home economy to either produce the goods or services or purchase them in the market.Growth brought with it increased variety in consumer goods, but not increased flexibility for the home economy in obtaining these goods and services.Instead, economic growth brought with it increased consumer reliance on the marketplace. In order to consume these new goods and services,the family had to enter the marketplace as wage earners and consumers.The neoclassical(新古典主义的) model that views the family as deciding whether to produce goods and services directly or to purchase them in the marketplace is basically a model of the first stage.It cannot accurately be applied to the second (and current) stage.

1. The reason why many production processes were taken over by the marketplace was that\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) the marketplace was more efficient with respect to these processes
  - B) they depended on electricity available only to the marker economy
  - C) it was troublesome to produce such goods in the home
  - D) it was a necessary step in the process of industrialization
2. It can be seen from the passage that in the second stage\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) some traditional goods and services were not successful when provided by home economy
  - B) whether new goods and services were produced by the home economy became irrelevant
  - C) producing traditional goods at home became socially unacceptable
  - D) the market economy provided new goods and services never produced by the home economy
3. During the second stage, if the family wanted to consume new goods and services, they had to enter the marketplace\_\_\_\_\_.



- A) as wage earners
  - B) both as manufacturers and consumers
  - C) as customers
  - D) both as workers and purchasers
4. Economic growth did not make it more flexible for the home economy to obtain the new goods and services because\_\_\_\_\_.
- A) the family was not efficient in production
  - B) it could not supply them by itself
  - C) it was illegal for the home economy to produce them
  - D) the market for these goods and services was limited
5. The neoclassical model is basically a modes of the first stage, because at this stage\_\_\_\_\_.
- A) the family could rely either on the home economy or on the marketplace for the needed goods and services
  - B) many production processes were being transferred to the marketplace
  - C) consumers relied more and more on the market economy
  - D) The family could decide how to transfer production processes to the marketplace

#### Passage 17

Nursing at Beth Israel Hospital produces the best patient care possible. If we are to solve the nursing shortage, hospital administration and doctors everywhere would do well to follow Beth Israel's example.

At Beth Israel each patient assigned to a primary nurse who visits at length with the patient and constructs a full—scale health account that covers everything from his medical history to his emotional state. Then she writes a care plan centered on the patient's illness but which also includes everything else that is necessary.

The primary nurse stays with the patient through his hospitalization, keeping track with his progress and seeking further advice from his doctor. If a patient at Beth'Israel is not responding to treatment, it is not uncommon for his nurse to propose another approach to his doctor. What the doctor at Beth Israel has in the primary nurse is a true colleague.

Nursing at Beth Israel also involves a decentralized nursing administration every floor, every unit is a self — contained organization. There are nurse—managers instead of head nurses; in addition to their medical duties they do all their own hiring and dismissing, employee advising, and they make salary recommendations. Each unit's nurses decide among themselves who will work what shifts and when. Beth Israel's nurse—in—chief ranks as an equal with vice presidents of the hospital. She also is a member of the

Medical Executive Committee, which in most hospitals include only doctors.

1. Which of the following best characterizes the main feature of the nursing system at Beth Israel Hospital?
  - A) The doctor gets more active professional support from the primary nurse.
  - B) Each patient is taken care of by a primary nurse day and night.
  - C) The primary nurse writes care plans for every patient.
  - D) The primary nurse keeps records of the patient's health conditions every day.
2. It can be inferred from the passage that\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) compared with other hospitals nurses at Beth Israel Hospital are more patient
  - B) in most hospitals patient care is inadequate from the professional point of view
  - C) in most hospitals nurses get low salaries
  - D) compared with other hospitals nurses have to work longer hours at Beth Israel Hospital
3. A primary nurse can propose a different approach of treatment when\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) the present one is refused by the patient
  - B) the patient complains about the present one
  - C) the present one proves to be ineffective
  - D) the patient is found unwilling to cooperate
4. The main difference between a nurse—manager and a head nurse is that the former\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) is a member of the Medical Executive Committee of the hospital
  - B) has to arrange the work shifts of the unit's nurses
  - C) can make decisions concerning the medical treatment of a patient
  - D) has full responsibility in the administration of the unit's nurses
5. The author's attitude towards the nursing system at Beth Israel Hospital is\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) negative    B) neutral
  - C) critical    D) positive

#### Passage 18

For some time past it has been widely accepted that babies—and other creatures—learn to do things because certain acts lead to “rewards”; and there is no reason to doubt that this is true. But it used to be widely believed that effective rewards, at least in the early stages, had to be directly related to such basic physiological “drives” as thirst or hunger. In other words, a baby would learn if he got food or drink or some sort of physical comfort, not otherwise.

It is now clear that this is not so. Babies will learn to behave in ways that produce results in the world with no reward except the successful outcome.

Papousek began his studies by using milk in the normal way to “reward” the babies and so teach them to carry out some simple movements, such as turning the head to one side of the other. Then he noticed that a baby who had had enough to drink would refuse the milk but would still go on making the learned response with clear signs of pleasure. So he began to study the children's response in situations where no milk was provided. He quickly found that children as young as four months would learn to turn their heads to right or left if the movement “switched on” a display of lights—and indeed that they were capable of learning quite complex turns to bring about this result for instance, two left or two right, or even to make as many as three turns to one side.

Papousek's Light display was placed directly in front of the babies and he made the interesting observation that sometimes they would not turn back to watch the lights closely although they would “smile and bubble” when the display came on. Papousek concluded that it was not primarily the sight of the lights which pleased them, it was the success they were achieving in solving the problem, in mastering the skill, and that there exists a fundamental human urge to make sense of the world and bring it under intentional control.

1. According to the author, babies learn to do things which\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) are directly related to pleasure
  - B) will meet their physical needs
  - C) will bring them a feeling of success
  - D) will satisfy their curiosity
2. Papousek noticed in his studies that a baby\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) would make learned responses when it saw the milk
  - B) would carry out learned movements when it had enough to drink
  - C) would continue the simple movements when it had enough to drink
  - D) would turn its head to right or left when it had enough to drink
3. In Papousek's experiment babies make learned movements of the head in order to\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) have the lights turned on
  - B) be rewarded with milk
  - C) please their parents
  - D) be praised
4. The babies would “smile and bubble” at the lights because\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) the lights were directly related to some basic “drives”
  - B) the sight of the lights was interesting
  - C) they need not turn back to watch the lights
  - D) they succeeded in “switching on” the lights

5. According to Papousek, the pleasure babies get in achieving something is a reflection of\_\_\_\_\_.
- A) a basic human desire to understand and control the world
  - B) the satisfaction of certain physiological need
  - C) their strong desire to solve complex problems
  - D) a fundamental human urge to display their their learned skills

#### Passage 19

When a consumer finds that an item she or he bought is faulty or in some other way does not live up to the manufacturer's claim for it, the first step is to present the warranty ( 保单), or any other records which might help, at the store of purchase. In most cases, this action will produce results. However, if it does not, there are various means the consumer may use to gain satisfaction.

A simple and common method used by many consumers is to complain directly to the store manager. In general the "higher up" the consumer takes his or her complains the faster he or she can expect it to be settled. In such a case, it is usually settled in the consumer's favor, assuming he or she has a just claim.

Consumers should complain in person whenever possible, but if they cannot get to the place of purchase, it is acceptable to phone or write the complaint in a letter.

Complaining is usually most effective when it is done politely but firmly, and especially when the consumer can demonstrate what is wrong with the item in question. If this cannot be done, the consumer will succeed best by presenting specific information as to what is wrong, rather than by making general statements. For example, "The left speaker does not work at all and the sound coming out of the right one is unclear" is better than "This stereo does not work."

The store manager may advise the consumer to write to the manufacturer. If so, the consumer should do this, stating the complaint as politely and as firmly as possible. But if a polite complaint does not achieve the desired result, the consumer can go a step further. She or he can threaten to take the seller to court or report the seller to a private or public organization responsible for protecting consumers' rights.

1. When a consumer finds that his purchase has a fault in it, the first thing he should do is\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) complain personally to the manager
  - B) threaten to take the matter to court
  - C) write a firm letter of complaint to the store of purchase
  - D) show some written proof of the purchase to the store
2. If a consumer wants a quick settlement of his problem, it's better to complain to\_\_\_\_\_.

- A) a shop assistant    B) the store manager  
C) the manufacturer    D) a public organization
3. The most effective complaint can be made by\_\_\_\_\_.  
A) showing the faulty item to the manufacturer  
B) explaining exactly what is wrong with the item  
C) saying firmly that the item is of poor quality  
D) asking politely to change the item
4. The phrase "Live up to" (Para.1,Line 2) in the context means\_\_\_\_\_.  
A) meet the standard of    B) realize the purpose of  
C) fulfill the demand of    D) keep the promise of
5. The passage tells us\_\_\_\_\_.  
A) how to settle a consumer's complaint about a faulty item  
B) how to make an effective complaint about a faulty item  
C) how to avoid buying a faulty item  
D) how to deal with complaints from customers

#### Passage 20

If women are mercilessly exploited year after year, they have only themselves to blame. Because they tremble at the thought of being seen in public in clothes that are out of fashion, they are always taken advantage of by the designers and the big stores. Clothes which have been worn only a few times have to be put aside because of the change of fashion. When you come to think of it, only a woman is capable of standing in front of a wardrobe packed full of clothes and announcing sadly that she has nothing to wear.

Changing fashions are nothing more than the intentional creation of waste. Many women spend vast sums of money each year to replace clothes that have hardly been worn. Women who cannot afford to throw away clothing in this way, waste hours of their time altering the dresses they have. Skirts are lengthened or shortened; neck-lines are lowered or raised, and so on.

No one can claim that the fashion industry contributes anything really important to society. Fashion designers are rarely concerned with vital things like warmth, comfort and durability(耐用). They are only interested in outward appearance and they take advantage of the fact that women will put up with any amount of discomfort as long as they look right. There can hardly be a man who hasn't at some time in his life smiled at the sight of a woman shaking in a thin dress on a winter day, or delicately picking her way through deep snow in high-heeled shoes.

When comparing men and women in the matter of fashion, the conclusions to be drawn are obvious. Do the constantly changing fashions of women's clothes, one wonders, reflect basic qualities of inconstancy and instability? Men are too clever to let themselves be

cheated by fashion designers. Do their unchanging styles of dress reflect basic qualities of stability and reliability? That is for you to decide.

1. Designers and big stores always make money \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) by mercilessly exploiting women workers in the clothing industry  
B) because they are capable of predicting new fashions  
C) by constantly changing the fashions in women's clothing  
D) because they attach great importance to quality in women's clothing
2. To the writer, the fact that women alter their old-fashioned dresses is seen as \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) a waste of money  
B) a waste of time  
C) an expression of taste  
D) an expression of creativity
3. The writer would be less critical if fashion designers placed more stress on the \_\_\_\_\_ of clothing.  
A) cost  
B) appearance  
C) comfort  
D) suitability
4. According to the passage, which of the following statements is TRUE?  
A) New fashions in clothing are created for the commercial exploitation of women.  
B) The constant changes in women's clothing reflect their strength of character.  
C) The fashion industry makes an important contribution to society.  
D) Fashion designs should not be encouraged since they are only welcomed by women.
5. By saying "the conclusions to be drawn are obvious" (Para. 4, Lines 2), the writer means that \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) women's inconstancy in their choice of clothing is often laughed at  
B) women are better able to put up with discomfort  
C) men are also exploited greatly by fashion designers  
D) men are more reasonable in the matter of fashion

#### Passage 21

"High tech" and "state of the art" are two expressions that describe very modern technology. High tech is just a shorter way of saying high technology. And high technology describes any invention, system or device that uses the newest ideas or discoveries of science and engineering.

What is high tech? A computer is high tech. So is a communications satellite. A modern manufacturing system is surely high tech.

High tech became a popular expression in the United States during the early 1980's. Because of improvements in technology, people could buy many new kinds of products in American stores, such as home

computers, microwave ovens, etc.

"State of the art" is something that is as modern as possible. It is a product that is based on the very latest methods and technology. Something that is "state of the art" is the newest possible design or product of a business or industry. A state of the art television set, for example, uses the most modern electronic design and parts. It is the best that one can buy.

"State of the art" is not a new expression. Engineers have used it for years, to describe the best and most modern way of doing something.

Millions of Americans began to use the expressions in the late 1970's. The reason was the computer revolution.

Every computer company claimed that its computers were "state of the art." Computer technology changed so fast that a state of the art computer today might be old tomorrow. The expression "state of the art" became as common and popular as computers themselves. Now all kinds of products are said to be "state of the art."

1. What is the purpose of the passage?

- A) To tell how "high tech" and "state of the art" have developed.
- B) To give examples of high tech.
- C) To tell what "high tech" and "state of the art" are.
- D) To describe very modern technology.

2. What can we infer from the passage?

- A) American stores could provide new kinds of products to the people.
- B) High tech describes a technology that is not traditional.
- C) "State of the art" is not as popular as "high tech".
- D) A wooden plough pulled by oxen is "state of the art".

3. All the following examples are high tech EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) a microwave oven      B) a home computer
- C) a hand pump              D) a satellite

4. Which of the following statements is NOT true?

- A) Since the computer revolution, the expression "state of the art" has become popular.
- B) "State of the art" means something that is the best one can buy.
- C) With the rapid development of computer technology, a state of the art computer may easily become out of date.
- D) All kinds of products are "state of the art" nowadays.

5. The best title for the passage is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) Computer Technology.
- B) High Tech and State of the art.
- C) Most Advanced Technology.
- D) Two new Expressions

## Passage 22

In the Arctic Circle, it is not that Eskimos lack ability or in

dustry, but the surroundings restrict constructive effort to the barest necessities of existence. This effectually retards progress to higher development.

Agriculture is impossible all along the thousands of miles of the north shore. The only wood is driftwood. Other than this driftwood, the only available building materials are snow, ice, stone, and bones of animals. All of these have been used for habitations and storage places, differing in various tribes according to the requirements and skill of the workers.

The lack of necessary timbers to build walls and span wide spaces is probably one reason why these tribes construct their houses at least partly beneath the surface of the ground. This device also makes the houses more impervious to the cold.

Most of us are inclined to think that the Eskimo lives always in an igloo or snow house. This is not entirely true. After the long cold winter, the family is very likely to move, when the weather permits, into a tent of sealskin. The actual construction of such a tent is similar to that used by other, more southerly tribes and will be described later.

The snow house, however, is an interesting and unique delicate habitation. Our summer campers will not build with snow, but the delicate art is worth recording and some of our winter camps in the mountains might try to make snow houses.

1. Eskimos' efforts to build houses \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) result in various building.
  - B) are limited by a hostile environment
  - C) are restricted by their ability
  - D) retard progress to higher development
2. Which of the following about the construction of houses is true?
  - A) Building materials differ from tribe to tribe.
  - B) Building materials are the same for all the houses.
  - C) Building materials are selected according to weather.
  - D) Building materials are decided by skilled workers.
3. Why do Eskimos build their houses partly under the ground?
  - A) They like to live under the ground.
  - B) They are short of essential materials for walls and roofs.
  - C) They want their houses less affected by the cold.
  - D) It is much safer to live under the ground.
4. In the long winter, Eskimos commonly live in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) a snow house
  - B) a stone house
  - C) a storage place
  - D) a tent of sealskin
5. What does the author think of snow houses?
  - A) Interesting
  - B) Artistic
  - C) Unique
  - D) All of the above.



### Passage23

A person may have an idea about himself that will prevent him from doing good work. He may have the idea that he is not capable of it. A child may think he is stupid because he does not understand how to make the most of his mental faculties, or he may accept another person's mistaken estimate of his ability. Older people may be handicapped by the mistaken belief that they are incapable of learning anything new because of their age.

A person who believes that he is incapable will not make a real effort, because he feels that it would be useless. He won't go at a job with the confidence necessary for success. He is therefore likely to fail, and the failure will strengthen his belief in his incompetence.

Alfred Adler, a famous doctor, had an experience which illustrates this. When he was a small boy he got off to a poor start in arithmetic. His teacher got the idea that he had no ability in arithmetic, and told his parents what she thought in order that they would not expect too much of him. In this way, they too developed that idea, "Isn't it too bad that Alfred can't do arithmetic?" He accepted their mistaken estimate of his ability, felt that it was useless to try, and was very poor at arithmetic, just as they expected.

One day Adler succeeded in solving a problem which none of the other students had been able to solve. This gave him confidence. He rejected the idea that he couldn't do arithmetic and was determined to show them that he would. His new found confidence stimulated him to attack arithmetic problems with a new spirit. He now worked with interest, determination, and purpose, and he soon became extraordinarily good at arithmetic.

This experience makes him realize that many people have more ability than they think they have, and that lack of success is as often the result of lack of knowledge of how to apply one's ability, lack of confidence, and lack of determination as it is the result of lack of ability.

1. According to the passage, which statement is NOT true?

- A) A child may accept another person's underestimate of his ability.
- B) He may think that he is too young to make the most of his mental faculties.
- C) A person may have the idea that he is incapable of doing good work.
- D) Some old people don't believe that they are capable of learning anything new.

2. A person who believes in his incompetence will \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) make no real efforts

- B)fail to go at a job
  - C)show a complete lack of confidence.
  - D)all of the above.
- 3.As a boy, Alfred Adler was poor at arithmetic because\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)he lost his self-confidence
  - B)he was mentally retarded
  - C)his teacher had no confidence in herself
  - D)his parents expected too much of him.
- 4.Which of the following is the most important factor to Adler's success?
- A)Spirit and experience
  - B)Interest
  - C)Confidence and determination
  - D)Purpose and knowledge
- 5.Adler's experience made him realize that\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)people are not as capable as they think
  - B)people can be more capable than they think
  - C)lack of knowledge leads to failure
  - D)lack of ability results in lack of determination.

#### Passage 24

In some ways the employment interview is like a persuasive speech because the applicant (interviewee) seeks to persuade the employer (interviewer) to employ him or her. Several suggestions might prove helpful to the applicant as preparation is made for the actual interview.

A job applicant has the responsibility for ascertaining certain types of information prior to the interview. First, the applicant should know what kind of job he wants and how that job relates to his career objective. It is important that the applicant be able to state his reasons for wishing to work for a particular company. Second, the applicant should seek as much information as possible concerning the company. Relevant information for the applicant to locate includes such items as the location of the home and regional offices, the financial status of the company, plan for expansion, and company philosophy. Information about most major corporations is available in reference books and periodicals.

After gathering information concerning the company, the applicant is ready for the interview. The interviewer's first impression comes from the interviewee's appearance. For most interviews, appropriate dress for man is a conservative dark colored suit with a long sleeve white or light blue shirt and conservative tie. For woman a conservative, tailored suit or dress is appropriate. Both men and women should have neat, conservative length hair.

Although hairstyle and dress are matters of personal taste, many personnel directors form initial impressions from these characteristics. For example, one recent college graduate, who felt himself qualified, interviewed for a public relations job. However, the personnel manager considered this young man's long hair, sloppy dress, and overly casual manner unsuited for this particular position.

1. For whom is the passage most likely written?  
A) An employee                      B) An employer  
C) An interviewee.                  D) An interviewer.
2. As the author suggests, what the applicant should know before the interview is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) the type of work and his career expectation.  
B) his career objective a particular company will decide  
C) the reasons a particular company has to employ him  
D) all of the above
3. Before the interview, the applicant should obtain some information about  
A) most major corporations  
B) the company he wants to work for  
C) reference books and periodicals  
D) business and philosophy.
4. What the applicant wears, as the author suggests, can make him look \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) personal                      B) persuasive  
C) informative                  D) conservative
5. What is the author trying to tell us through the example in the last paragraph?  
A) The importance of personal taste.  
B) The importance of public relations.  
C) The importance of self confidence.  
D) The importance of first impression.

#### Passage 25

If European thought a drought was something that happened only in Africa, they know better now. After four years of below-normal rainfall (in some cases only 10 percent of the annual average), vast areas of France, Spain, Water is so low in the canals of northern France that waterway traffic is forbidden except on weekends. Oyster growers in Brittany report a 30 percent drop in production because of the loss of fresh water in local rivers necessary for oyster breeding. In southeastern England, the rolling green hills of Kent have turned so brown that officials have been weighing plans to pipe in water from Wales. In Portugal, farmers in the southern Alentejo region have held prayer meetings for rain so far, in vain.

Governments in drought-plagued countries are taking drastic measures. Authorities in hard-hit areas of France have banned washing cars and watering lawns. In Britain, water will soon be metered, like gas and electricity. "The English have always taken water for granted," says Graham Warren, a spokesman of Britain's National Rivers Authority. "Now they're putting a price on it." Even a sudden end to the drought would not end the misery in some areas. It will take several years of unusually heavy winter rain, the experts say, just to bring existing water reserves up to their normal levels.

1. What does the author mean by saying "they know better now?"
  - A) They know more about the causes of the drought.
  - B) They have a better understanding of the drought.
  - C) They have realized that the drought in Europe is the most serious one.
  - D) They have realized that droughts hit not only Africa but also Europe.
2. The drought in Europe has brought about all the following problems EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) below-normal rainfall
  - B) difficult navigation
  - C) a sharp drop in oyster harvest
  - D) done-dry hills.
3. The British government intends to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) forbid the car-washing service
  - B) increase the price of the water used
  - C) end the misery caused by the drought
  - D) charge fees for the use of water.
4. Which of the following statements is true according to the passage?
  - A) Germany is the only country free from the drought.
  - B) Water reserves are at their lowest level in years due to the drought.
  - C) The drought is more serious in Britain than in France.
  - D) Europe will not have heavy rain until several years later.
5. Which of the following is the most appropriate title for the passage?
  - A) Europe in Misery
  - B) Drought Attacks Europe
  - C) Be economical with Water
  - D) Europe, a Would-be Africa

#### Passage 26

By far the most common snake in Britain is the adder. In Scotland, in fact, there are no other snakes at all. The adder is also the only British snake with a poisonous bite. It can be found almost anywhere, but prefers sunny hillsides and rough open country, including high

round. In Ireland there are no snakes at all.

Most people regard snake bites as a fatal misfortune, but not all bites are serious, and very few are fatal. Sometimes attempts at emergency treatment turn out to be more dangerous than the bite itself, with amateurs heroically, but mistakenly, trying do-it-yourself surgery and other unnecessary measures.

All snakes have small teeth, so it follows that all snakes can bite, but only the bite of the adder presents any danger. British snakes are shy animals and are far more frightened of you than you could possibly be of them. The adder will attack only if it feels threatened, as can happen if you take it by surprise and step on it accidentally or if you try to catch it or pick it up, which it dislikes intensely. If it hears you coming, it will normally get out of the way as quickly as it can, but adders cannot move very rapidly and may attack before moving if you are very close.

The effect of a bite varies considerably. It depends upon several things, one of which is the body-weight of the person bitten. The bigger the person, the less harmful the bite is likely to be, which is why children suffer far more seriously from snake bites than adults. A healthy person will also have better resistance against the poison.

Very few people actually die from snake bites in Britain, and though these bites can make some people very ill, there are probably just as many cases of bites having little or no effect, as there are of serious illness.

1. According to the passage, adders are most likely to be found\_\_\_\_\_.

- A) in wilder parts of Britain and Ireland
- B) in Scotland and nowhere else
- C) on uncultivated land throughout Britain
- D) in shady fields in England

2. We are told that British snakes are\_\_\_\_\_.

- A) afraid of human beings
- B) poisonous including the adder
- C) dangerous except the adder
- D) friendly towards human beings

3. When will the adder not attack you?

- A) when you try to catch it
- B) when you are some distance away from it.
- C) when you happen to step on it.
- D) when you try to pick it up.

4. If an adder hears you coming, it will usually\_\_\_\_\_.

- A) attack you immediately
- B) disappear very quickly
- C) wait to frighten you
- D) move out of the way

5. According to the passage, a snake bite is\_\_\_\_\_.

- A) more harmful to a healthy man than to a sick man
- B) less harmful to an adult than to a child
- C) more dangerous than any serious illness
- D) always fatal in Britain

#### Passage 27

Concern with money, and then more money, in order to buy the conveniences and luxuries of modern life, has brought great changes to the lives of most Frenchmen. More people are working than ever before in France. In the cities the traditional leisurely midday meal is disappearing. Offices, shops, and factories are discovering the greater efficiency of a short lunch hour in company lunchrooms. In almost all lines of work emphasis now falls on ever-increasing output. Thus the "typical" Frenchman produces more, earns more, and buys more consumer goods than his counterpart of only a generation ago. He gains in creature comforts and ease of life. What he loses to some extent is his sense of personal uniqueness, or individuality.

Some say that France has been Americanised. This is because the United States is a world symbol of the technological society and its consumer products. The so-called Americanization of France has its critics. They fear that "assembly-line life" will lead to the disappearance of the pleasures of the more graceful and leisurely (but less productive) old French style. What will happen, they ask, to taste, elegance, and the cultivation of the good things in life—to joy in the smell of a freshly picked apple, a stroll by the river, or just happy hours of conversation in a local cafe?

Since the late 1950's life in France has indeed taken on qualities of rush, tension, and the pursuit of material gain. Some of the strongest critics of the new way of life are the young, especially university students. They are concerned with the future, and they fear that France is threatened by the triumph of this competitive, goods-oriented culture. Occasionally, they have reacted against the trend with considerable violence.

In spite of the critics, however, countless Frenchmen are committed to keeping France in the forefront of the modern economic world. They find that the present life brings more rewards, conveniences, and pleasures than that of the past. They believe that a modern, industrial France is preferable to the old.

1. Which of the following is NOT related to the new French way of life?

- A) Shorter lunch hour.
- B) greater output.
- C) Creature comforts.
- D) Leisurely cafe talk.

2. Which of the following is NOT true about Frenchmen?

- A) Many of them prefer the modern life style.

- B)They actually enjoy working at the assembly line.
  - C)They are more concerned with money than before.
  - D)They are more competitive than the older generation.
3. The passage suggests that\_\_\_\_\_.
- A)While France is pursuing material gains the French are suffering losses elsewhere
  - B)it's now unlikely to see a Frenchman enjoying a stroll bythe river
  - C)the French are fed up with the smell of freshly picked apples
  - D)great changes have occurred in the life style of all Frenchmen
- 4.Which of the following is true about the critics?
- A)Critics are greater in number than people enjoying the new way of life
  - B)Student critics are greater in number than critics in other fields.
  - C)Student critics have, on occasion, resorted to violent means against the trend.
  - D)Critics are concerned solely with the present and not the future.
- 5.Which of the following best states the main idea of the passage?
- A)Changes in the French way of life.
  - B)Criticism of the new life style.
  - C)The Americanization of France
  - D)Features of the new way of life.

#### Passage 28

Ultralight (超轻型的) airplanes are a recent development in aviation that provide what aviation enthusiasts have long been seeking: an inexpensive airplane that is easy to fly. The ultra light plane was born of the marriage of the hang glider and the go-kart (微型单座赛车) engine around 1974, when John Moody mounted a 12-horsepower go-kart engine on his IcarusII hang Glider.

Today's ultralights are not just hang gliders with engines; they are "air recreation vehicles." Modern ultralight planes use snowmobile engines that let them cruise at about 50 miles per hour, climb at about 500 feet per minute, and carry combined payloads of pilot and fuel up to about 200 pounds, which is about equal to an ultralight plane's weight when sold last year at prices ranging from \$2, 800 to \$7, 000. But the main reason for the increasing popularity of these aircrafts is not that they are inexpensive, but that they are fun to fly.

The modern ultralight plane would look very familiar to the earliest pioneers of aviation. Otto Lillenthal made more than 2000 flights in Germany in the 1890's in what were actually hang gliders. Octave Chanute designed and built many early hang gliders. Augustus Herring, Chanute's assistant, used these gliders as

models for a glider that he built for himself. On this Glider, Herring installed a compressed air motor and flew 267 feet in 1898. The Wright brothers' Flyer was the grandfather of today's ultralight planes. The pilot sat right out in the open, just as in modern ultralights, and used controls that were much the same as those used in today's machines.

Though most ultralight planes are used for pleasure flying, some are also used for crop dusting, aerial photography, and even military observation service. The likelihood is that further uses will be found for ultralight planes, but their greatest use will continue to be as air recreational vehicles.

1. The author seems to feel that ultralight airplanes are \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) a toy for the rich
  - B) nothing but hang gliders
  - C) a new development that meets the needs of aviation enthusiasts
  - D) the most important development in aviation since the Wright brothers' Flyer
2. According to the passage, today's ultralight airplanes \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) are inexpensive but difficult to fly
  - B) are more like go-karts than like hang gliders
  - C) cannot climb as fast or as high as hang gliders
  - D) are not too different from the earlier aircraft
3. The author compares John Moody's use of a go-kart engine on a hang glider to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) a marriage
  - B) the flight of Icarus
  - C) cruising in a snowmobile
  - D) soaring and gliding from a high altitude
4. Which of the following statements is an opinion?
  - A) Ultralight planes use snowmobile engines that let them cruise at about 50 miles per hour.
  - B) John Moody used a 12-horsepower engine to power his Icarus II hang glider.
  - C) The use of ultralight planes will increase in such areas as crop dusting and aerial photography.
  - D) Otto Lilienthal made more than 2000 flights in Germany in the 1890's in what were actually hang gliders.
5. The author finds great similarity between \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) the weight of the hang glider and that of the ultralight airplane
  - B) ultralight airplanes and military aircraft
  - C) the inventiveness of John Moody and that of Octave Chanute
  - D) the controls used in the Wright brothers' Flyer and those used in today's ultralight airplanes



All Eskimos live most of their lives close to salt or fresh water. They may follow game inland for several hundred miles, but they always return to the shores of rivers, lakes, or seas. Eskimo land has a bare look. Large rocks, pebbles, and sand cover much of the surface. Plants called lichen(地衣) grow right on rock. And where there is enough soil, even grass, flowers, and small bushes manage to live. No trees can grow on Eskimo land, so geographers sometimes call this country the Arctic plains. Some animals, such as rabbits and caribou(北美驯鹿), eat the plants. Others, like the white fox and gray wolf, eat the rabbits and caribou. The Eskimo is a meat-eater, too, and may even eat a wolf when food is scarce.

The Eskimo year has two main parts: a long, cold winter and a short, cool summer. Spring and fall are almost too short to be noticed. Summer is the good time, when food is usually plentiful. But it is also the time when the Eskimos are very busy. Winter is never far away, and the men must bring home extra meat for the women to prepare and store. For seldom can enough animals be killed winter to feed a family.

The Far North is sometimes called the land of the midnight sun. This is true in the middle of summer, for between April 21st and August 21st the sun never sets in Northern Greenland. But in midwinter the Far North is a land with no sun shining at all. Around Oct. 21st the Eskimos of Northern Greenland see the sun setting straight south of them, and they don't see it again until February 22nd. All places on earth get about the same amount of daylight during a year. As a result, if summer is lighter, winter has to be darker.

Winter nights in the Far North are seldom pitch-black. As in the rest of the world, the stars and moon provide a little light. The northern lights also help the Eskimo to see. And with the ground covered with snow, even a little light is reflected back to the Eskimo's eyes.

1. On Eskimo land, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) rabbits live on the plants
  - B) soil is rich and plentiful
  - C) grass grows more easily than lichen
  - D) lichen is found only on rock
2. In the Eskimo year, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) there are no spring and fall
  - B) winter is cold and summer is hot
  - C) summer is a time for growing food
  - D) winter comes early and goes late
3. From the passage, we can infer all except that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) Eskimos are more likely to eat wolves in summer
  - B) Eskimo women are responsible for housework
  - C) animal meat is Eskimos' main source of food
  - D) hunting is an important part of Eskimo life

4. In midwinter there is no sun shining in the Far North because \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) the Far North is too far away from the sun
  - B) the sun is not seen again for six months
  - C) the sun never sets in midsummer
  - D) people see the sun setting straight south of them
5. Winter nights are seldom pitch-black in the Far North because of \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) the moon and stars
  - B) the northern lights
  - C) snow on the ground
  - D) all of the above mentioned factors

### Passage 30

At the bottom of the world lies a mighty continent still wrapped in the Ice Age and, until recent times, unknown to man. It is a great land mass crisscrossed by mountain ranges whose extent and elevation are still uncertain. Much of the continent is a complete blank on our maps. A 1000-mile stretch of the coastline has never been reached by any ship. Man has explored, on foot, less than one per cent of its area.

Antarctica differs fundamentally from the Arctic regions. The Arctic is an ocean, covered with drifting packed ice and hemmed in by the land masses of Europe, Asia, and North America. The Antarctic is a continent almost as large as Europe and Australia combined, centred roughly on the South Pole and surrounded by the most unobstructed water areas of the world---the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans.

The continental ice sheet is more than two miles high in the centre; thus, the air over the Antarctic is far more refrigerated than it is over the Arctic regions. This cold air cascades off the land with such force that it makes the nearby seas the stormiest in the world and renders unliveable those regions whose counterparts at the opposite end of the globe are inhabited. Thus, more than a million persons live within 2,000 miles of the North Pole in an area that includes most of Alaska, Siberia, and Scandinavia -- a region rich in forest and mining industries. Apart from a handful of weather stations, within the same distance of the South Pole there is not a single tree, industry, or settlement.

1. At the time this article was written, our knowledge of Antarctica was \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) very limited
  - B) vast
  - C) suppressed
  - D) nonexistent
2. The Antarctic is made uninhabitable primarily by \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) cold air
  - B) calm seas
  - C) ice
  - D) lack of knowledge
3. According to this article \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) 2000 people live on the Antarctic Continent
  - B) a million people live within 2 000 miles of the South Pole
  - C) weather conditions within a 2 000-mile radius of the South Pole make settlements impractical
  - D) only penguins inhabit Antarctica
4. When this article was written, the only human inhabitants in Antarctica were \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) miners
  - B) meteorologists
  - C) Scandinavians
  - D) Siberians
5. The best title for this selection would be \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) Iceland
  - B) Land of Opportunity
  - C) The Unknown Continent
  - D) Utopia at Last

#### Passage 31

The ancient people who lived near the sea must have wondered what lay beneath its vast surface. As many as 24 centuries ago, a Mediterranean captain on a voyage to Egypt knew that when the plummet at the end of his ten-fathom sounding line reached a mud bottom, he was over the toe of the Nile's delta. Another day's travel should bring him within sight of a port at the delta's head. The navigator, with only a short sounding line for a tool, had learned something about the bottom of the Mediterranean Sea.

The marine geologist wants to know all that can be learned about the floors of the seas--a vast area covering about two-thirds of the earth's surface. This information will help serve mankind's practical needs. The efforts and talents of marine geologists will greatly expand the usefulness of the ocean floors.

The marine geologist compiles data about the topography of shape of the ocean floors, the location and character of the bottom sediments, the composition and structure of the underlying rocks, and the geological processes that have been at work during the eons of the sea floor's history. With this information the marine geologist may be able to assess the mineral resources of the sea floor and to predict and lessen the effects of certain hazards. Most of the tools and methods that make it possible to study the land beneath the ocean have been

invented and developed within the past century. Parts of the ocean floor have now been mapped by echo soundings and other advanced methods. Underwater photographs, taken at great depths, show surface features such as outcrops of bedrock, rugged mountains, and deep canyons, with a greater total relief than the dry land.

With modern sampling methods, far more can be learned about the loose sediment on the ocean floor than was possible a half century ago. Although numerous random samples have been collected from the bottom of the seas in the last century, it was not until World War II that an account of the results obtained by an intensive study of core samples was published.

Cores are obtained by driving a metal tube into the bottom sediment, then drawing the tube up by cable and removing the core. Certain layers in these cores give information about geological history--for example, the relative dates of volcanic eruptions and periods of glaciation.

1. This passage is primarily about the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) seas in the ancient time.
  - B) life processes beneath the seas.
  - C) work of the marine geologist.
  - D) inventiveness of navigators.
2. One aspect of a marine geologist's work involves the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) classification of fish and other sea life.
  - B) history of the earth's formation.
  - C) development of navigational techniques.
  - D) study of changes of the life in the seas.
3. Most of the geologist's tools have been invented during the last \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) 10 years.
  - B) 20 years.
  - C) 45 years.
  - D) 100 years.
4. The author creates interest in his subject by using \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) a great many facts concerning the oceans of the world.
  - B) precise argument in conjunction with strong criticism.
  - C) a lot of figurative speeches, such as metaphor, simile.
  - D) interesting description with historical background.
5. We can conclude from the passage that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) marine geology is a specialized field.
  - B) the sea is teeming with millions of life forms.
  - C) ships are now equipped with sonar and radar.
  - D) None of the above.

#### Passage 32

Industrial safety does not just happen. Companies with low

accident rates plan their safety programs, work hard to organise them, and continue working to keep them alive and active. When the work is well done, a climate of accident-free operations is established where time lost due to injuries is kept at a minimum.

Successful safety programs may differ greatly in the emphasis placed on certain aspects of the program. Some place great emphasis on mechanical guarding. Others stress safe work practices by following rules or regulations covering working conditions. Still others depend on an emotional appeal to the worker. But, there are certain basic ideas that must be used in every pro-gram if maximum results are to be obtained.

Every plant needs a safety program designed for its specific need. Surveys have shown that the highest injury frequency rates are often found in the medium-sized plants, those with from 50 to 500 employees. Somewhat better rates are often found in small plants, fewer than 50 employees. Large plants, with 500 or more employees, tend to have the best rate. However, the need for a safety plan exists regardless of size.

Small companies, because of their closer relationship between management and worker, can conduct an accident prevention program with a few organisational details. Such a program can usually operate with a part-time safety director.

There can be no question about the value of a safety program. From a financial standpoint alone, safety pays off. The fewer the injury claims, the better the workmen's insurance rate. This may mean the difference between operating at a profit or at a loss.

There are other intangible benefits. Operating costs can be reduced because of less damage to equipment and product. Production increases because people can work without the fear of injury. These are tangible benefits that make everyone happy.

Less tangible benefits are a direct result of a successful safety program. A plant with a poor accident record does not attract or hold the best workers. On the other hand, a clean, safe plant creates the climate where good work habits can be cultivated. A safety program will help to attract good workers and to conserve their skills. A safe plant is a well-organised plant that soon becomes known as a good place to work. Management's attitude toward its workers is seen in such a plant. And the result is good public relations.

1. The author describes a safe plant as one with \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) lowest accident rates.
- B) positive management activities.
- C) flexible scheduling.
- D) advanced production concepts.

2. The author implies that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) plant safety occurs naturally from careful work.
  - B) many factories are unwilling to try safety programs.
  - C) accident-free operations must be well planned.
  - D) low accident rates will help plants to make more money.
3. The author suggests that large plants \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) cannot possibly avoid high accident rates.
  - B) are more aware of safety needs.
  - C) regard safety as an outgrowth of strict discipline.
  - D) post safety regulations at all building exits.
4. This passage could be titled \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) Increasing Production Through Safety.
  - B) Improving Working Conditions.
  - C) Mechanical Safety Procedures in Plants.
  - D) Awareness of Safety in All Plants.
5. We can conclude that \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) safety must be achieved even at the expense of production.
  - B) the federal government pays for many safety programs.
  - C) safety programs are beneficial to plants of all sizes.
  - D) products reflect the cost of safety programs.

### Passage 33

The Statue of Liberty was declared a national monument by President Calvin Coolidge on October 15, 1924. The boundaries of the monument were set at the outer edge of old Fort Wood.

On August 3, 1956, a joint resolution of the Congress approved the change of the island's name to Liberty Island. This was done in recognition of the special importance of the Statue and of the plan to construct at its base, within the walls of old Fort Wood, the American Museum of Immigration. This museum honours all those who came to this land in search of freedom and opportunity and to whom the Statue of Liberty was a shining beacon.

While Liberty Island, with an area of about 12 acres, is located in the upper bay of New York Harbour, it is geographically in the territorial water of New Jersey. Liberty Island is almost three-eighths of a mile offshore from Jersey City, New Jersey, its source of telephone, power, and water services. It is about one and five-eighths miles from the Battery, at the southern tip of Manhattan Island, New York City. Transportation and mail services are provided by boat from the Battery. At present a privately owned ferry line is operating under contract with the government.

The monument is open daily, Sundays and holidays included, from 9 A . M. to 5 P. M. Souvenirs, postcards, and food are provided through the facilities of a private concessioner. Postal and telephone facilities are also available. Seatwalls are provided on the grounds

and there are benches along the walk around the statue. Monument personnel are on duty and will be glad to answer any questions.

There are a number of interpreters in the lobby of the administration building, as well as historical and interpretive markers along the pedestal passageway beyond the elevator shaft. More historical and interpretive markers are on the fourth level at the top of the elevator shaft. Outside along the railings of the overlook, a series of sketch drawings show silhouette the scene directly in front of the viewer. The drawings identify various features and buildings of New York Harbour and the skyline. By the use of these sketch drawings, one may identify practically all of the points of interest that can be seen from the four sides of the overlook, with its magnificent panoramic view of New York Harbour, Manhattan Island, Staten Island, and the New Jersey waterfront.

1. Which of the following statements is true according to the passage?
  - A) The Statue of Liberty was made by the order of President Calvin Coolidge.
  - B) The name "Statue of Liberty" was not approved by the congress until 1956.
  - C) The Statues of Liberty honors all those who came to America from other continents.
  - D) The island where the Statue of Liberty stands did not use to be called Liberty Island.
2. In the Statue of Liberty a visitor can find \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) an impressive library.
  - B) signs printed in several languages.
  - C) a collection of Presidential letters.
  - D) markers of the wars in the past.
3. The Statue's power, telephone, and water services originate in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) New York City.
  - B) New York State.
  - C) New Jersey.
  - D) The Liberty Island.
4. According to the author, the Statue of Liberty symbolizes \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) freedom
  - B) justice
  - C) wealth
  - D) hope
5. We can conclude that the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) Statue of Liberty attracts tourists.
  - B) arm of Statue has been closed to tourists.
  - C) United Nations building is situated next to the Statue.
  - D) None of the above.

#### Passage 34

Forest campgrounds grow more popular each year with experienced, as well as amateur, campers. To visitors, the Forest Service says, "Welcome to the National Forests--yours to enjoy, protect, keep clean!" This is the Forest Service's way of asking the co-operation of the one visitor in a thousand who might misuse or damage tables, signs, or other structures. Dollars saved by lowering repair and replacement costs can be used to build new recreation areas in order to accommodate the increasing numbers of Americans using the forests.

If you've never camped, join those thousands who this year will camp in the woods for the first time. Get the advice of an experienced woodsman, or study camping magazines and books.

Then plan a simple trip--don't be too ambitious your first time out--and head for the woods. The campers you'll meet will be friendly and glad to share their woods lore.

Really experienced campers prefer to simply throw packs on their backs and head into backcountry--the wilder parts of the National Forest system. There they try to recapture the pioneer spirit of their forefathers by fending for themselves.

Hikers explore old trails and beat their way across country, making camp whenever day ends. Horse riders travel wilderness trails, sleep beneath the stars, and return to civilization refreshed. Fishermen trek to remote streams and high-country lakes, and hunters search the hills for the next winter's venison and bear steaks. Families, too, enjoy the get-away-from-it-all experience of primitive travel and deep woods camping.

To help backcountry campers, the Forest Service has blazed miles of trails and provided crude campsites--a few with three-sided shelters and fire pits.

The supreme camping experience for many people is a wilderness trip. No roads cross the wilderness and no motorized vehicles are allowed. The only trails are for horse riders and hikers. Some of the better known areas, where popular use has made it necessary to provide sanitation and safety, have a few special campsites with simple facilities,

Backcountry camping deep in a wilderness requires careful planning and proper equipment. Before heading into the wilds, study a detailed map of the area and learn the terrain. Plan menus and select equipment carefully to keep loads light for horses and backpackers. Carry a first aid kit for emergencies.

And always have a map and compass to keep you on trail.

1. According to the passage, all that the Forest Service expects from the campers is \_\_\_\_\_.



- A) protection of tree.
  - B) caution against danger.
  - C) friendliness with others.
  - D) co-operation.
2. Regarding fire, the article implies that \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) forest fires destroy many good camping trails yearly.
  - B) food may be cooked in fire pits on some trails.
  - C) campfires are not allowed in National Forests.
  - D) without permission, fires should not be made.
3. This article states that money not spent on the repair of campsites \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) may be used for the construction of new schools.
  - B) may be spent on new recreational facilities.
  - C) can be applied to the publication of camping magazines.
  - D) may be used to protect trees and plant more trees.
4. The author advises first-time campers not to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) expect help from experienced campers.
  - B) carry heavy backpacks.
  - C) plan long trips.
  - D) lose their trail.
5. The primary motivation behind camping probably lies in \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) the spirit of conquest.
  - B) a need for exercise.
  - C) the challenge of survival.
  - D) a need for fresh air.

### Passage 35

People's tastes in recreation differ widely. At a recent festival of pop music in the Isle of Wight, crowds of teenagers flocked to listen to their favorite singers and musicians. They went with single railway tickets and slept in the open, a very risky thing to do in the climate of Britain, even in August. They were packed together like sardines for four days. There were innumerable thieves, a gang of roughs tried several times to break things up, and police were everywhere. At the end of the festival many young fans found themselves broke, with no money left, and they had difficulty in getting back home. Most people would consider these conditions a nightmare of discomfort: the fans appeared to enjoy it all enormously.

Even in the overcrowded United Kingdom there are large tracts of open unspoiled country, where people with more traditional tastes can go for quiet, and for the sense of freedom they derive from contact with nature. In the national parks especially, modern development of housing and industry is strictly controlled. Visitors may walk for miles through landscape of the greatest beauty and wildness, and often

of considerable historic or scientific interest. Along the coasts of some of the maritime counties, public pathways have been created; these paths stretch for many miles along cliffs that look out on the Atlantic Ocean or the English Channel. Another path, lying inland, goes along the range of mountains in the north of England. It is called the Pennine Way. Here, the long-distance walker and the nature —lover can find much to enjoy, without feeling hemmed in by large numbers of their fellows.

Yet few people make full use of the national parks established for everyone's benefit. The commonest thing nowadays is for family groups to motor out to a beautiful spot and park their cars in a lay-by. A picnic basket is produced, along with a folding table and chairs, a kettle and a portable stove. They then settle down to a picnic in the lay-by beside the car. Apparently their idea of enjoyment is to get into the fresh air and amongst the country sights and sound without having to walk a yard. They seem almost to like to hear and smell the traffic.

1. According to the passage, people \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) differ widely in all aspects
  - B) think recreation suits different tastes
  - C) have different opinions about recreation
  - D) have great differences of taste in recreation
2. In Britain it is very risky to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) go with a single railway ticket
  - B) listen to pop - music at festivals
  - C) sleep in the open air
  - D) pack together in crowds
3. At the end of the festival, many young fans \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) were dealt with by the police
  - B) had spent all their money
  - C) packed sardines
  - D) were sleeping out
4. Even in the overcrowded United Kingdom there are large \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) tracks through the open country
  - B) areas of country without soil
  - C) areas of countryside not developed
  - D) expanses of land where nobody works
5. Family groups nowadays like to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) have meals out of doors by the road - side
  - B) go for a walk away from home
  - C) drive out past the beautiful places
  - D) hear and smell the animals

Because Ireland is an island geographically near the main-land of the United Kingdom, English rulers have fought since the Middle Ages to retain political control over it. Attracted by the lush farmland, English and Scottish landowners settled there, and in time of famine or political unrest, the local workers suffered, while their landlords were cushioned by their wealth. The history of modern Ireland is, in fact, largely a story of antagonism and resentment between the Irish and their English and Scottish rulers.

Since the 1920's, Ireland has been divided into two parts: Northern Ireland (Ulster) and the Republic of Ireland (Eire). The north is still part of the United Kingdom and is predominantly Protestant; the majority in Ulster accept this political compromise, but the active and mainly Catholic minority are fighting for union with the independent republic of Southern Ireland. The IRA, the Irish Republican army, have mounted bombing campaigns on military and civil targets in Ulster and England, they have sent letter-bombs to public figures, they have shot fellow Irishmen who support the British or belong to opposing, and now equally militant Protestant groups. As a result of this, the British have stationed an army in Belfast, the IRA have been outlawed, and several of them have spent many years in prison or have died in support of their cause. Whether this level of violence and repression is justifiable, and whether the violence that could result from political change would be worthwhile are the controversial issues that divide everybody involved.

1. This passage suggests that the central problem is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) many centuries old
  - B) about three centuries old
  - C) about sixty years old
  - D) a few years old
2. It suggests that the central problem is relationships between \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) Britain and Ireland
  - B) Ulster and Eire
  - C) Catholics and Protestants
  - D) the Irish Republican Army and Ulster
3. According to the passage, the IRA is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) part of the British army
  - B) part of the Ulster police force
  - C) a group of militant priests
  - D) a terrorist organization
4. Bomb attacks occur \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) only in England
  - B) only in military buildings
  - C) in England and Northern Ireland

- D) when public figures talk about Ireland
5. The writer's attitude towards the Irish is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) intolerant  
B) sympathetic  
C) aggressive  
D) militant

### Passage 37

There are many reasons for the tidal action which is a very complicated phenomenon involving many factors all of which must be considered to predict tide in any one place and at any one time. The alternate rise and fall of the surface of the seas and the ocean is mainly caused by the attractive force of the moon alone. When the attraction is great, the tide is high; and conversely when the attraction is minimal, the tide is low. Between the high tide and the low tide is a period of a little over six hours, being called during its rise a flood tide, and during its fall an ebb tide.

The sun also exerts its effect on the tide, being a little less than half as much as the moon, although its mass is so much greater. When the moon and the sun are horizontal, the highest high tide occurs and when they are vertical the lowest low tide takes place.

The wind also plays an important part in the modification of the normal rise and fall of the tide. Thus these factors affect each other, either distracting or adding to the attractive forces to add or subtract from the height of the tide. But the tides still move inexorably on, rising twice a day, getting a little late each day and posing a problem of correctly predicting their heights and lows.

1. Which of the following factors will affect the action of the tide?  
A) The sun.  
B) The moon.  
C) The wind.  
D) All of the above mentioned factors.
2. The principal idea of the article is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) the attraction of the sun and the moon  
B) the changing tide  
C) the sun, the moon and the wind  
D) the factors affecting the tide
3. Which of the following factors is not mentioned as affecting the tide?  
A) The sun.  
B) The moon.  
C) The winds.  
D) The depth of the ocean.
4. It can be concluded from this article that the attraction of the

sun is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) less than half that of the moon
  - B) more than half that of the moon
  - C) more than that of the moon
  - D) less than twice that of the moon
5. According to the article, it is clear that the force of the moon \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) is not as important as that of the wind
  - B) is less than half as much as the sun
  - C) causes the alternate rise and fall of the surface of the seas
  - D) does not influence the rise and fall of the surface of the seas

### Passage 38

Steve Courtney wrote historical novels. Not, he was quick to explain, overcolourful love stories of the kind that made so much money for so many women writers, but novels set, and correctly set, in historical periods. Whatever difference he saw in his own books, his readers did not seem to notice it, and his readers were nearly all women. He had studied at university, but he had not been a particularly good student, and he had never afterwards let any academic knowledge he had gained interfere with his writing.

Helen, his wife, who did not have a very high opinion of her husband's ability as a novelist, had been careful to say when she married him that she was not historically minded.

Above all, Helen was doubtful whether her relationship with Steve would work at all in the village of Stretton, to which they had just moved. It was Steve who had wanted to move to the country, and she had been glad of the change, in principle, whatever doubts she was now having about Stretton as a choice. But she wondered whether Steve would not, before very long, want to live in London again, and what she would do if he did. The Stretton house was not a weekend cottage. They had moved into it and given up the London flat altogether, partly at least, she suspected, because that was Steve's idea of what a successful author ought to do. However, she thought he was not going to feel like a successful author half as much in Stretton as he had in London. On the other hand, she supposed he might just start dashing up to London for the day to see his agent or have lunch with his publisher, leaving her behind in Stretton, and she thought on the whole she would like that.

1. What was Steve's attitude towards women who wrote love stories?
- A) He would have liked to earn as much money as they did.
  - B) He was afraid of being compared unfavorably with them.
  - C) He did not think he could write about the same subjects.
  - D) He had a low opinion of the kind of books they wrote.

2. What did Helen have to be careful to hide?
  - A) Her lack of interest in history.
  - B) Her low opinion of her husband's writing.
  - C) Her dislike of her husband's admirers.
  - D) Her inability to understand his books.
3. What were Helen's feelings about the move from London to Stretton?
  - A) She wanted to remain in the country.
  - B) She had been unwilling to leave London.
  - C) She thought it was time to return to London.
  - D) She would have preferred a weekend house in the country.
4. Helen thought Steve might not be content in Stretton because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) he would not be able to write so well in the country
  - B) he would not feel so important in Stretton
  - C) his relationship with Helen was changing
  - D) he would not be lonely without all his London friends
5. The passage as a whole suggests that Steve's novels were \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) popular but unimportant
  - B) serious works of literature
  - C) admired for their historical truth
  - D) written with women readers in mind

#### passage 39

New York State's environmentalists now have proof that the Catskill Mountain region has been receiving high levels of acid rainfall. This has been shown through a school project started by two teachers at the Giboa—Conesville School. The project found that a one thousand square mile area of the Catskills has been re-ceiving acid rain. The rain has an average PH factor much more than expected.

Scientists know that acid rain occurs when high amounts of air pollution from the Midwest industrial belts mix with local rainfall. The problem has been documented in the Adirondack mountains, but little research has been done in the Catskills.

Joe Farleigh, one of the teachers involved, said the project started several years ago when his seventh—grade class participated in an acid rain study conducted by Current Science magazine. "The results of that survey," Farleigh said, "indicated that the north—eastern United States is being threatened by acid rain. Since that area was receiving rain with higher levels of acidity than other sections of the United States. Since that time, I have been aware of acid rain as a potential environmental hazard".

Last year Farleigh and another science teacher began a study of their own. In their study, schools in the region serve as collection sites for the rainwater. the samples collected on a

regular basis and brought to Farleigh's school for testing.

Students in the shop classes made the collecting stations, following the designs used by the state's environmental conservation chemists. The collection stations were sent to the different schools in May 1979.

Study became fully operational in September 1979. Since then, Mr. Farleigh has been receiving weekly samples of precipitation from the seventeen participating schools.

Mr. Farleigh says that there have been some problems with the collection stations. High winds have damaged some of them, and school closings have interrupted some weekly collections.

But in spite of these problems, the project has documented the acid rainfall problem in the Catskills.

1. This passage is mainly about\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) acid rain in the Adirondack mountains
  - B) the causes of acid rain
  - C) a new study of acid rain
  - D) protests against acid rain
2. Joe Farleigh first became aware of the environmental dangers of acid rain\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) after conducting this study of acid rain in the Catskills
  - B) after his students participated in an acid rain study several years ago
  - C) after he visited the Midwest industrial belts
  - D) after wind damaged his collection stations
3. Which of the following is a fact stated in the article?
  - A) Teachers are concerned about the environment
  - B) Schools contribute a great deal to scientific study
  - C) The Adirondack mountains receive acid rainfall
  - D) Acid rain can kill fish
4. Precipitation, used in paragraph six, probably means\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) PH factor
  - B) rainwater
  - C) testing
  - D) pollution
5. According to this passage, acid rain\_\_\_\_\_.
  - A) has a high PH factor
  - B) is necessary
  - C) was first discovered in September 1979
  - D) interrupted weekly sample collections in the survey

#### Passage 40

Opinion polls are now beginning to show that, whoever is to blame and whatever happens from now on, high unemployment is probably here to stay. This means we shall have to find ways of sharing the available employment more widely.

But we need to go further. We must ask some fundamental questions

about the future of work. Should we continue to treat employment as the norm? Should we not rather encourage many other ways for self—respecting people to work? Should we not create conditions in which many of us can work for ourselves, rather than for an employer? Should we not aim to revive the household and the neighbourhood, as well as the factory and the office, as centres of production and work?

The industrial age has been the only period of human history in which most people's work has taken the form of jobs. The industrial age may now be coming to an end, some of the changes in work patterns which it brought may have to be reversed. This seems a daunting thought. But, in fact, it could offer the prospect of a better future for work. Universal employment, as its history shows, has not meant economic freedom.

Employment became widespread when the enclosures of the 17th and 18th centuries made many people dependent on paid work by depriving them of the use of land, and thus of the means to provide a living for themselves. Then the factory system destroyed the cottage industries and removed work from people's homes. Later, as transport improved, first by rail and then by road, people commuted longer distances to their places of employment until, eventually, many people's work lost all connection with their home lives and the places in which they lived.

Meanwhile, employment put women at a disadvantage. In pre-industrial times, men and women had shared the productive work of the household and village community. Now it became customary for the husband to go out to paid employment, leaving the unpaid work of the home and family to his wife. Tax and benefit regulations still assume this norm today, and restrict more flexible sharing of work roles between the sexes.

It was not only women whose work status suffered. As employment became the dominant form of work, young people and old people were excluded——a problem now, as more teenagers become frustrated at school and more retired people want to live active lives.

All this may now have to change. The time has certainly come to switch some effort and resources away from the idealist goal of creating jobs for all, to urgent practical task of helping many people to manage without full—time jobs.

1. Research carried out in the recent opinion polls shows that

- 
- A) available employment should be restricted to a small percentage of the population
  - B) new jobs must be created in order to rectify high unemployment figures
  - C) available employment must be more widely distributed among the unemployed



- D)the present high employment figures are a fact of life
- 2.The arrival of the industrial age in our historical evolution meant that \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)universal employment virtually guaranteed prosperity  
 B)economic freedom came with everyone's grasp  
 C)patterns of work were fundamentally changed  
 D)to survive, everyone had to find a job
- 3.As a result of the enclosures of the 17th and 18th centuries \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)people were no longer legally entitled to own land  
 B)people were forced to look elsewhere for means of supporting themselves  
 C)people were not adequately compensated for the loss of their land  
 D)people were badly paid for the work they managed to find
- 4.The effects of almost universal employment were overwhelming in that\_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)the household and village community disappeared completely  
 B)men now travelled enormous distances to their places of work  
 C)young and old people became superfluous components of society  
 D)the work status of those not in paid employment suffered
- 5.The article concludes that\_\_\_\_\_.  
 A)the creation of jobs for all is an impossibility  
 B)our efforts and resources in terms of tackling unemployment are insufficient  
 C)people should start to support themselves by learning a practical skill  
 D)we should help those whose jobs are only part—time

## 第二节 阅读理解综合练习答案

Passage 1	C	A	D	B	D	Passage 21	C	B	C	D	B
Passage 2	B	D	B	D	A	Passage 22	B	A	B	A	D
Passage 3	C	C	C	A	B	Passage 23	B	D	A	C	B
Passage 4	B	A	A	C	B	Passage 24	C	D	B	C	D
Passage 5	B	D	A	A	D	Passage 25	D	A	D	B	B
Passage 6	D	C	D	D	C	Passage 26	C	A	B	D	B
Passage 7	C	C	B	B	C	Passage 27	D	B	B	C	A
Passage 8	B	A	D	A	D	Passage 28	C	D	A	C	D
Passage 9	C	B	D	B	B	Passage 29	A	D	A	D	D
Passage 10	A	C	A	C	C	Passage 30	A	A	C	B	C
Passage 11	B	A	B	A	D	Passage 31	C	B	D	D	A
Passage 12	B	D	A	C	D	Passage 32	B	C	B	A	C
Passage 13	A	D	C	B	B	Passage 33	D	B	C	A	A
Passage 14	A	B	C	D	B	Passage 34	D	B	B	C	C

Passage 15	C	A	C	D	B	Passage 35	D	C	B	C	A
Passage 16	A	D	D	B	A	Passage 36	A	A	D	C	B
Passage 17	A	B	C	D	D	Passage 37	D	D	D	A	C
Passage 18	C	C	A	D	A	Passage 38	D	A	A	B	D
Passage 19	D	B	B	A	B	Passage 39	C	B	C	B	A
Passage 12	C	B	C	A	D	Passage 40	C	C	A	B	A

### 第三篇 英译汉

英译汉主要测试考生对英语书面材料的理解并将其译成汉语的综合能力，译文要求准确、通顺。考试大纲规定这部分占考试内容的 15%，翻译内容的总长度 100—120 个英文词。下面就考生在翻译过程中应注意的一些方面加以说明。

## 第一章 翻译的标准及步骤

衡量一篇译文好坏的标准是什么？这是翻译实践中首先要注意的一个问题。我国清末思想家严复提出的“信、达、雅”曾一直是翻译工作者们奉行的翻译标准，而作为考生，所从事的并不是翻译创作，应试时只需做到“忠实、通顺”即可。

所谓忠实，即指译者必须把原文的内容准确、完整地表达出来，既不能改变和歪曲，也不能增添和删减。例如，This car is small and cheap.这原是个简单明了的句子，将其译成“这架飞机体积小、价格低”就行了。可有的学生为了译得“漂亮”，将其译成“这架飞机小巧玲珑、价廉物美”。这便画蛇添足，违背了翻译“忠实”的标准。又如，有的学生将“It was a chilly day in early spring.”译成“这是早春二月，乍暖还寒的日子”。原文中的early spring只是“早春”的意思，并不一定指在早春的二月；chilly是“寒冷”的意思，并无“刚暖”的含义，译文中加进了“二月”和“乍暖”增加了原文中所没有的含义，背离了原文反而得不偿失。

所谓通顺，是指译文语言必须通顺懂，符合本族语的规范，即译文必须是明白通畅的现代汉语，既不逐字死译，也不生吞活剥。例如：Something inside me seemed to stop momentarily.如果将其逐字译成汉语，即使读者能够明白其义，也总让人觉得聱口，即不像是地道的汉语。所以不妨将其译为“我顿时呆住了”。又如，“His life was cut short by cancer”译作“他因癌症而夭折”。这样翻译，没有生硬地套用原文的结构，但符合汉语的表达习惯，读起来自然就顺口多了。

忠实与通顺是相辅相成的。忠实而不通顺，阅卷老师看不懂，也就谈不到忠实；通顺而不忠实，背离了原作的意思，通顺也便失去了意义。

要想做到忠实和通顺，首先必须对原文有透彻的理解，然后把理解的东西用本族语确切地表达出来。英译汉的过程包括理解、表达和校对三个阶段。理解是表达的前提，不能确切地理解就谈不上确切地表达，但理解与表达又是相互联系、往返反复的统一过程。因为理解的同时，我们已在挑选确切的表达手段，而用汉语表达的同时，又加深了对英语原文的理解。所以考生在考试时往往需要从英语到汉语，再从汉语到英语的反复推敲。下面我们对翻译的这三个阶段分别加以表述。

### 一、理 解

理解原文是整个翻译过程的第一步，也是最关键、最容易出错的一步。大部分的翻译错误都是由于译者的理解错误或理解不透而致。为了透彻理解原文，必须注意下列几点：

1. 通读全文 理解主要是通过原文的上下文来进行的。我们这里所说的上下文可以指一个句子，也可以指整个翻译段落。一个单词或句子只有在具体的上下文中才能体现出确切的含义来。只有弄清词与词、句与句之间的语法及逻辑关系才能从整体上把握全句或全段的内容。另外，通读全段、掌握大意，还有助于对个别难词、难句的理解和处理。翻译时要克服那种一上来就动手翻译的错误做法，因为这样做的结果往往是管中窥豹，见木不见林——一段快翻完了，猛然发现理解有误，又急忙回过头来修改，搞得卷面即不整

洁，又容易忙中出错。

2. 从语篇的角度来分析选择词义 理解句子的意思不仅仅是句子本身，还应该考虑全段的语言环境。这时要注意：A. 如果句子含有代词和其他具有指代意义的词，要根据上下文来确定它们指代的内容是什么；B. 如果句中有的单词或短语具有多种意义时，要根据上下文的逻辑推理来判断在这里的具体含义；如：It's good for him to do that. 这句话可以有两种意思：这样做对他有好处；他这样做是件好事。这时，只有通过上下文来推理，才能找出合乎逻辑的译法；C. 按照自己的理解，全段内容是否前后一致，有无矛盾之处。总之，只有树立一盘棋思想，才能使译文畅达贯通。

3. 分析句子结构 对一些结构较为复杂的句子，首先要分析结构，找出句子的骨架——主谓语，这是理解全句的必要条件。如：Don't trouble trouble until trouble troubles you. (在麻烦来麻烦你以前，别去自找麻烦。) 要想翻译准确，首先得理清句子结构，确定第一个 trouble 为动词，第二个为名词，作宾语，第三个 trouble 在从句中作主语，而最后一个则为动词作谓语。

## 二、表 达 阶 段

表达就是译者把自己从原文理解到的内容，通过规范的汉语表达出来。表达的好坏取决于对原文的理解程度及考生的汉语水平。理解是表达的基础，表达是理解的结果，但理解正确并不一定意味着有正确的表达。这就是我们常常感到对英语原文理解了，但就是找不到确切的汉语来表达的原因。关于翻译的方法，我们将在后面详细地讨论，这里先介绍两种最基本的方法：直译和意译。

1. 直译 所谓直译，就是在译文语言条件许可时，在译文中既保持原文的内容，又保持原文的形式。但直译不是死译和硬译，如果把 Nothing could be done. 译成“没事可以被做”就不伦不类了。

2. 意译 就是翻译时不拘泥于原文的形式，重点在于表达原文的内容。因为英语和汉语属于不同的语系。它们在词汇、语法结构及表达方式上存在着许多差异。当原文的思想内容与译文的表达形式有矛盾而不易采用直译法时，我们就可以采用意译法。如：Tom was upsetting the other children, so I showed him the door. 汤姆一直在扰乱别的孩子，我就把他撵了出去。如果把 so I showed him the door 直译为“我把门指给他看”，那就没有表达出原文的意思，会使读者感到莫名其妙。但我们所说的意译也不是胡译、乱译，在翻译过程中，我们应视具体情况采取灵活的方法。无论是直译还是意译，都要遵循“忠实、通顺”的原则。

## 三、校 对 阶 段

是对原文内容进一步核实及对译文语言进一步推敲的阶段。在翻译时难免会有错误、漏译、或用词不够妥贴的地方，因此校对也是使译文能符合“忠实、通顺”的翻译标准的必不可少的一个阶段。在校对时，一般应注意以下方面：1. 人名、地名、日期、数字等是否和原文一致；2. 译文中有无错译、漏译或字句欠妥之处；3. 有无错别字；4. 标点符号是否正确。

## 第二章 英汉语言的对比

英语和汉语分属于不同的语系。他们在词法、句法以及表达手段等方面各有其特点。对于翻译实践来说，对比英汉两种语言的异同，非常重要。通过对比，可以掌握两种语言的特点，在翻译时就可以自觉地运用这些特点，从而掌握一些英译汉的方法和技巧。下面就以实例分析的形式来说明英汉语言在一些方面的不同。

一、英语介词用得得多，汉语则动词用得得多。在英译汉时，介词多译为汉语的动词。如：

1. Father is on the telephone with mother. 父亲与母亲在通电话。

2. The bill for the drinks is on me. 酒账由我来付。

3. She is at the sewing machine. 她在缝纫。

4. With unemployment high, and the stock market in distress, the economy will be the President's sternest trial. 由于失业率增高、股票市场处于困境之中，经济问题将是总统所面临的最严峻的考验。

5. Gradually the river grows wider, the waters flow more quietly, and in the end, without any visible break, they become merged in the sea. 河面逐渐展宽，河水也流得较为平缓，最后流进大海，与海水浑然一体，看不出任何界线。

6. They worked long hours on meagre food, in cold caves, by dim lamps. 他们吃简陋的食品，住寒冷的窑洞，靠微弱的灯光长时间地工作。

7. The judge sat in the dining-room, amid his morning mail. 法官坐在餐厅里处理早上到的邮件。

8. Up the street they went, past stores, across a broad square, and then entered a huge building. 他们沿着大街走去，经过许多商店，穿过一个大广场，然后进入了一座大厦。

9. We drove home a bit after midnight, over the river and through the lovely old sleeping town. 时过午夜，我们驱车回家。先过了河，又穿过了这个在酣睡中的古老而可爱的城市。

10. The road to development is long but we are firmly on it. 发展的道路是漫长的，但是我们已经坚定地走上这条道路。

英语中的许多介词如 across, past, through, towards 等都含有动作意味，所以在译成汉语时往往把它们译成动词。

二、英语代词用得得多，汉语则实词用得得多。英语一般避免重复，不仅用代词来代替名词，还可以用代词来代替动词、形容词。汉语则不怕重复，实词用得得多。另外，在一个句子里，英语可以先出代词，后出实词，汉语则先出实词，后出代词。例如：

1. Mary opened her eyes. They were filled with tears. 玛丽睁开眼睛，眼里充满了泪水。

2. Each country has its own customs. 各有各国的风俗。

3. He hated failure; he had conquered it all his life, risen above it, despised it in others. 他讨厌失败，他一生中曾战胜失败，超越失败，并且藐视别人的失败。

4. Happy families also had their own troubles. 幸福家庭也有幸福家庭的苦恼。

5. Ignoring a problem does not solve it. 对于一个问题置之不理，并不能解决问题。

6. Smith seemed ill at ease with power, Paul sought it. 史密斯似乎对权力感到困恼不安，保尔则拚命追求权力。

7. English grammar is very difficult and few writers have avoided making mistakes in it. 英语语法十分困难，作家很少不犯语法错误的。(如果紧跟原文，这一句可以译作：“英语语法十分困难，作家很少不在这一方面犯错误的。”但汉语多用实词，而且不怕重复。所以后半句译作“作家很少不犯语法错误的”这样更符合汉语表达习惯。)

8. Are you married? If so, give your wife's name. 你结婚了没有？如果结了的话，把你夫人的名字告诉我。

9. One day, while I was playing with my new doll, Miss Sullivan put my big rag doll into my lap also, spelled “d-o-l-l” and tried to make me understand that “d-o-l-l” applied to both. 有一天我正在玩一个新娃娃，沙利文小姐把我的大布娃娃也放在我腿上，然后写了“d-o-l-l”这几个字母，她是想让我知道“d-o-l-l”可以指新娃娃，也可以指旧娃娃。

(原文中的 applied to both 非常简洁。但如果译作“指二者”，就显得不顺。如译作“两个都指”，意思既不清楚，句子也压不住。所以将代词 both 改成了实称。)

10. Before he came to China, George had been a French teacher in the United States for three years. 来中国之前，乔治在美国教了三年的法语。

11. If they are disappointed at one place, the drillers go to another. 钻探石油的人如果在一个地方得不到预期的结果，便到另一个地方去钻探。

(这种句子译成汉语，一定要先出实义词；如果需要的话，后面再用代词。此处用一个实义词作主语，管到底，后面便不需要再用代词了。)

三、英语被动语态用得少 尤其在科技英语中，被动语态随处可见，汉语中的被动语态则用得少。译成汉语时有时不用被动形式也可以表示被动的含义，有时也可用无主句来表达。如：

1. When the whale is killed, the blubber is stripped off and boiled down. 鲸鱼杀死以后，把鲸脂剥下来熬油。

(原文的被动语态译成汉语后不用“被”字仍可表示被动的含义。这种没有被动形式而有被动意义的格式在汉语里非常普遍。如：“信写好了”、“货送来了”。)

2. He is loved by all of us. 我们大家热爱他。(如果译成“他被我们大家热爱着”就很不自然，所以我们不必拘泥于原文结构，而要依照汉语习惯，在语态上做必要的变更。)

3. It was proved wrong to say things like that. 那样的说法证明是不对的。(如果译成“被证明...”就显得很别扭。)

4. Great sums of money have been spent in “prospecting” for oil.

在石油“勘探”方面，已经花了大笔的钱。

5. The movie will be shown tomorrow. 电影明天还要放映。(不应译作“电影明天将要被再放映。”) )

6. Some pictures were hung on the wall. 墙上挂了一些照片。(如果要拘泥与原结构，译作“一些照片挂在墙上”就不合汉语习惯说法。)

7. Children should be taught to speak the truth. 应该教导儿童说实话。

8. Yet, only a part of this energy is used by man. 然而，人类只利用了这种能的一部分。

9. My first thirty years were spent in Western America. 我的前三十年是在美国西部度过的。

10. The whole country was armed in a few days. 几天以内全国武装起来可了。

11. Television, it is often said, keeps one informed about current events, allows one to follow the latest developments in science and politics, and offers an endless series of programmes which are both instructive and entertaining. 人们常说，电视使人了解的事，熟悉科学政治领域的最新发展变化，并能源源不断地为观众提供各种既有教育意义又有趣的节目。

以上例子都说明英语被动语态的句子，译成汉语时，很多情况下都可译成主动句。关于英语被动语态的其他译法，我们将在后面的翻译技巧中详细讲解。

**四、改变词情或变换句子结构** 在词的搭配方面，英语中的一些搭配，如形容词与名词的搭配、副词和动词的搭配、主语和谓语的搭配等，翻译时往往不能按原来的结构直接译成汉语，需要做一些词情转换，或者改变句子的结构。例如：

1. By the end of November, two months after the accident, he was planning his new future. 事故发生后两个月，到十一月末，他已经在重新安排自己的未来了。

(原文是 planning his new future, 但汉语不好说“新的未来”，由于搭配的关系，译文将原来的形容词译成了副词，译成“重新安排自己的未来”)

2. This is sheer nonsense. 这完全是胡说(形容词转译成了副词)。

3. There is big increase in demand for all kinds of consumer goods in every part of our country. 目前我国各地对各种消费品的需求量已大大增加。(名词 increase 译成了汉语的动词，相应地，修饰名词的形容词 big 也转译成了副词。)

4. American prisoners were permitted to receive Red Cross food parcels and write censored letters. 允许美国俘虏接受红十字会的食品包裹，也允许他们写信，不过信要经过检查。(原文中 censored letters 这种形容词与名词的搭配不好直接译成汉语，所以，把它拆出来单独译。)

5. I was deeply impressed by his speech. 他的讲话给我留下了深刻的印象。(原来的过去分词转译为名词，随之，原文中的副也转译形容词。)

6. Traditionally, there had always been good relations between



then.他们之间一直有着传统的友好关系。(为了符合汉语表达习惯,原文修饰全句的副词转译为修饰名词的形容词。)

7. She was pardonably proud of her wonderful cooking. 她以高超的烹调技艺为傲,这是情有可原的。(原文的 pardonably proud 直译成汉语时,不能搭配在一起,所以就把其中的副词 proudly 单独拿出来译为一句。)

8. I tried vainly to put the pieces together. 我想把这些碎片拼在一起,可拼不起来了。(原句的 vainly 是状语,但在译文中无法保持其状语的地位,只好放在后面单独处理,译成谓语了。)

9. The road we have long been travelling is very easy, a smooth superhighway on which we progress with great speed, but at the end lies disaster. 我们一直在走的这条路表面上很好走,是一条平坦的超级公路,我们可以高速前进,但是走到尽头却遇到灾难。(原文 lies disaster, 这样的主谓搭配在汉语里是不可能的。关键在于动词。汉语选用“遇到”一词,整个句子的结构也发生了变化。这种换用别的动词并改变句子结构的现象在翻译中是常见的。)

10. The news that greeted us in Guangzhou and our visits later to various places turned anxiety into joy. 通过在广州的见闻以及随后在各地的访问,我们的忧虑已化为喜悦。(英语中经常用抽象名词作主语,这时的主谓搭配一般不适合直译成汉语的主谓结构,需要适当调整。这里如果把原文的两个并列主语直译成汉语的主语就显得不符合汉语的表达习惯,因此变动了结构,选择了原来的宾语作句子的主语。)

11. The little chap's good-natured honest face won his way for him. 这小伙子长相老实,看上去脾气也好,(因此)到处有人缘。(为了符合汉语的表达习惯,把原文的名词短语译成了汉语的分句。)

英译汉时,无论是转变词性,还是重新选择主语,其目的都是为了准确地重现原文的思想,而又符合汉语的规范和表达习惯。关于词性转变的规律问题,将在后面“翻译技巧”一章里专门论述。

**五、层次 结构** 英语中有作用灵活的不定式、介词短语、分词以及引导定语从句的关系代词 who, which 等,因此句子可以很长,但组织得很严密。汉语叙事,则多用并列结构,一层一层地把事情说清楚。在把英语的长句译成汉语时,我们可以通过改变语序或改变句子结构,如把长句拆成几个短句的手段来处理。例:

1. It is the business of the scientist to accumulate knowledge about the universe and all that is in it, and to find, if he is able, common factors which underline and account for the facts that he knows. 科学家要做的事就是积累有关宇宙中的一切事物的知识,而且要是可能的话,找出那些既能构成科学家所知事物的基础,又能解释这些事实的共同因素。

(原文中的“it”是句子的形式主语,而句子的真正主语是“to accumulate”和“to find”两个不定式,其中第一个不定式的宾语又有介词短语和定语从句来修饰,第二个不定式的宾语由含有定语从句的定语从句来修饰,翻译时把原来的主语和表语调了语序。)

2. As never before, the nations of the world demonstrated a willingness to put aside ideological and individual differences to

confront a common threat. 世界各国决心要把意识形态分歧和各国的不同意见放在一边而来重视这个共同的威胁，在这以前从来没有过。

（原文的第一个不定式作定语，译成了汉语的连动谓语，第二个不定式作状语，译文保持了原结构；原文句首的 as never before, 为了符合汉语表达习惯，放在了译文的句末。）

3. The first cause of the liberation of women was the development of effective birth—control methods, freeing women from the endless cycle of childbearing and rearing. 妇女的解放首先起因于有效的节育措施的出现，从而将女人从生养孩子的无尽循环中解放出来。

（原文的现在分词短语 freeing women... 作结果状语，译成了汉语相应的结果状语从句。）

4. At every crossway on the road that leads to the future, each progressive spirit is opposed by thousands of men appointed to guard the past. 在通往未来道路的每一个十字路口上，每一个具有进步思想的人都会遭到受命维护过去的千千万万名道士的反对。

5. I have never had much patience with the writers who claim from the reader an effort to understand their meaning. 有些作家，读者要费力气才能看懂他们的意思，我对这样的作家一向是没有多少耐心的。

（如果把原文的定语从句译成前置定语，未免显得太长，读起来很别扭，这样，先处理定语从句，句子就显得灵活一些。）

6. The 180-page document, with more than 300 articles and eight annexes, definitively covers every conceivable issue dealing with the seas, from the definition of what constitutes an island to the jurisdiction over fish that live in fresh water but spawn in the ocean. 这份长达一百八十页的文件，有三百余条，并有八个附件。它涉及每一个能够想到的与海洋有关的问题，从岛屿的定义，到对在淡水生长而在海洋产卵的鱼类的管辖权，都做了明确的规定。

（原文的主语带有一个介词短语作定语，译文若保持这样的结构，就会显得定语过长，因此译作主谓结构，独立成句。另外，definitively covers...，这个搭配直接译成汉语，也是不顺的。所以将 definitively 译作“都作了明确的规定”，放在句末。）

7. As I lie awake in bed, listening to the sound of those razor—sharp drops pounding on the pavement, my mind goes reeling down dark corridors teeming with agonizing flashbacks, and a chill from within fills me with dread. 我躺在床上，睡不着觉，听着雨点儿落在路面上啪啪作响。我思绪万千，恍恍惚惚进入了一条条幽暗的甬道，回想起许多痛苦的往事。心里一阵冰凉，不禁感到毛骨悚然。

（原文是一个长句，用 as, and 连接起来，中间还用了三个动词—ing 形式 listening, pounding, teeming 等，整个句子组织得很严密。译文如果也保持这种结构，译作“当...时”，则显得过于局促。汉语叙事，多用并列结构，一层一层地把事情说清楚。所以，这句译成了三个短句。）

从以上例子可看出，英语叙事往往把许多意思集中在一个句子里，多用主从结构，主要部分（主语和谓语）可能很短，从属部分可能很多，句中各个成分之间的关系显得比较紧密。这样一个英语句子所表达的思想，用汉语

来表达，往往多用并列结构，可以分成几个短句，层层展开，和英语的原句相比，结构显得较为松散。翻译时，如果注意到英汉两种语言各自的特点，就不必过分拘泥于原句子结构，而可以用比较自然的汉语来表达原文所表达的意思了。

关于处理英译汉长句的技巧问题，我们在下一章中还要作更深一步的讲述。

### 第三章 英译汉技巧

有人认为，翻译并无技巧可言，只要把原文意思准确地表达出来就行了，其实不然。任何事物都有一定的规律，翻译作为一门学问也应有一定的规律，这些规律就是在掌握英汉两种语言各自特点的基础上，在符合汉语表达的范围内，为保证实现译文和原文最大限度的等值而常采用的一些变通手段，也就是我们这里要讲的翻译技巧。

下面我们将以实例分析的形式分别加以说明。

#### 一、词性转换

在英译汉过程中，有些句子可以逐词对译，有些句子则由于英汉两种语言的表达方式不同，不能逐词对译。原文中有些词在译文中需要转换词性，才能使汉语译文通顺自然。词性转换的情况归纳起来主要有以下三种：

##### （一）名词转译成动词

英语和汉语相比较，汉语中动词用得较多，这是一个特点。翻译时，英语中一些具有动作意味的词往往可以译作汉语的动词。例如：

1. The sight and sound of our jet planes filled me with special longing. 看到我们的喷气式飞机，听见隆隆的机声，令我特别神往。

（含有动作意味的名词译成了汉语的动词。）

2. He admires the President's stated decision to fight for the job. 他对总统声明为保住其职位而决心奋斗表示钦佩。

（原文只有一个动词，而译成汉语时将其中的过去分词 stated，动词派生名词 decision 以及不定式 to fight 都译成了动词。汉语没有词形变化，但可以几个动词连用。）

3. I'm afraid I can't teach you swimming. I think my little brother is a better teacher than I am. 我未必会教你游泳。我想我的弟弟比我教得好。

（英语中一些加后缀—er 的名词有时在句中并不指身份和职业，而是含有较强的动作意味，可以译成汉语的动词。）

4. He is no smoker, but his father is a chain—smoker. 他倒是不吸烟，但他爸爸却一支接一支不停地抽。

5. She opened window to let fresh air in. 她把窗子打开，让新鲜空气进来。

（原文中具有动词意味的副词转译成了汉语的动词。）

6. They were not content with their present achievement. 他们不满足于现有的成就。

（原文的形容词转译成了汉语的动词。英语中表示知觉、感情、欲望等心理状态的形容词/，在系动词后作表语时，往往可转译成汉语动词。常见的这类形容词还有：confident, certain, careful, cautious, angry, sure, ignorant, afraid, doubtful, aware, concerned, delighted, sorry, ashamed, thankful, grateful, anxious, able 等。）

##### （二）动词转译成名词

英语中一些由名词派生的动词，以及由名词转用的动词，翻译说往往可

以译为汉语的名词。例如：

1. Formality has always characterized their relationship. 他们之间的关系，有一个特点，就是以礼相待。

2. To them, he personified the absolute power. 在他们看来，他就是绝对权威的化身。

3. It was generally held that the control system works well. 一般认为这种控制系统效果好。

4. He looked both resolute and relaxed. 他的神情坚定而安详。

5. His bedroom was very simply furnished. 在他的卧室内，陈设十分简单。

6. The Wilde family were religious. 王尔德全家都是虔诚的。（形容词转译成了名词。）

7. They were considered insincere. 他们被认为是伪君子。

8. On that day they were escorted to the Great Wall of China. 他们那天和陪同人员去参观中国的长城。

9. Our age is witnessing a profound political change. 我们的时代是深刻的政治变化的见证。

10. He was severely criticized by his comrades. 他受到同志们的严厉批评。（英语中的被动语态，有时可以用“受到（遭到、得到）+名词”的形式来译。

其他词性转译成形容词、副词

（三）英译汉时，词性转换最多的是转成名词和动词，其次就是转译成汉语的形容词和副词。例如：

1. The pallor of her face indicated clearly how she was feeling at the moment. 她苍白的脸色清楚地表时了她那时的情绪。

（原文的 pallor 是由形容词 pale 派生而来的名词，这里转译成了形容词。）

2. As he is perfect stranger in the city, I hope you will give him the necessary help. 他对这城市完全陌生，所以我希望你能给他必要的帮助。

（有些名词加不定冠词作表语时，往往可以转译成形容词。）

3. We found difficulty in solving this complicated problem. 我们感到解决这复杂的困难的。

4. She promptly shepherded them out of the crowded living room and into the privacy of the library. 她立即把他们领出拥挤的客厅，带到了没有注意的图书馆里去。

5. The volume of trade has increased tremendously to the advantage of both countries. 贸易量有很大的增加，给两国都带来了益处。

（原句的动词转译为名词，所以原来的副词也就相应地转译成了形容词。）

6. From the front, back and both sides we kept a strict watch on the enemy. 我们从前后左右严密监视敌人。（形容词转译成了副词。）

7. The new mayor earned some appreciation by the courtesy of coming to visit the city poor. 新市长有礼貌地前来访问城市贫民，获得了他们的

一些好感。

8. He didn't succeed in ringing her up, for he dialed the wrong number. 他没有给她打通电话，因为他拨错了号码。

（由于搭配的原因，形容词转译成了副词。）

9. He had the kindness to show me the way. 他好意地给我指路。

10. I had the fortune to meet him. 我幸运地遇到了他。

## 二、增 词

英汉两种语言，由于表达方式不尽相同，翻译时可能要在词量上加以增减。增词法就是在翻译时按意义和句法上的需要增加一些词来更忠实通顺地表达原文的思想内容。这当然不是无中生有地随意增词，而是增加原文中虽无其词但有其意的一些词，例如：

1. In the evening, after the banquets, the concerts, and the table tennis exhibitions, he would work on the drafting of the final communique. 晚上在参加宴会、出席音乐会、观看乒乓球表演之后，他还得起草最后公报。

（如果把原文的 after the banquet, the concerts and table tennis exhibitions 译为“在宴会、音乐会、乒乓球表演之后”，意思似乎不够明确。所以翻译时在名词前加了原文中虽无其词但有其意的三个动词，这样意思明确，读起来也能顺自然，符合汉语的习惯。）

2. My work, my family, my friends were more than enough to fill my time. 我干工作，我做家务，我有朋友往来。这些占用了我的全部时间。

3. the crowds melted away. 人群渐渐散开了。

（译文中加了“渐渐”这个副词是为了更确切地表达动词 melt 的意思。）

4. They lingered long over his letter. 他们不断地反复玩味着他的来信。

5. Day after day he came to his work—sweeping, scrubbing, cleaning. 他每天来干活——扫地，擦地板，收拾房间。

（英语中有些动词有时用作及物动词，有时用作不及物动词；当它作不及物动词用时，宾语实际上是稳含在动词后面的，译成汉语时往往需要把它表示出来。）

6. He began to see things and to understand. 他开了眼界，并懂得了一些名堂。

7. He was wrinkled and black, with scant gray hair. 他满脸皱纹，皮肤很黑，头发灰白稀疏。

（为了使形容词的意思更明确，更符合汉语表达习惯，在形容词前加上一个名词。）

8. He is a complicated man, moody and melancholy. 他是一个性格复杂的人，喜怒无常而又忧郁寡欢。

9. After all preparations were made, the planes were flown across the U.S. to San Francisco. 一切准备工作就绪以后，飞机就飞越美国去旧金山。

某些由动词或形容词派生来的抽象名词，翻译时可根据上下文在其后面

增添适当的名词，使抽象名词具体化。又如：persuasion 说服工作，backwardness 落后状态，tension 紧张局势，arrogance 自满情绪，madness 疯狂行为等。）

10. The old man had taught the boy to fish and the boy loved him. 原来是老头儿已教会了孩子捕鱼，所以孩子很爱他。

（英语动词的时态是靠动词词形变化或加助动词来表达的。汉语动词没有词形变化，表达时态要靠增加汉语特有的时态助词或一般表示时间的词。因此，翻译完成时往往用“曾”、“已经”、“过”、“了”；翻译进行时往往用“在”、“正在”、“着”；翻译将来时往往用“将”、“就”、“要”、“会”、“便”等等。除此之外，为了强调时间概念或强调时间上的对比，往往需要加一些其他的词。）

11. The old man said, “They say his father was a fisherman. Maybe he was as poor as we are.” 老头儿说：“听人说，从前他爸爸是个打鱼的。他过去也许跟我们现在一样穷。”

12. Yes, I like Chinese food. Lots of people do these days, sort of the fashion. 不错，我喜欢中国菜。现在很多人喜欢中国菜，这种情况算是有点儿赶时髦吧。

为了表达自然，加上承上启下的词“这种情况”。）

13. For mistakes had been made, bad ones. 因为已经犯了许多错误，而且还是很糟的错误。

14. Better be wise by the defeat of others than by your own. 从别人的失败中吸取教训比从自己的失败中吸取教训更好。

（原文全句应该是 It is better to be wise by the defeat of others than to be wise by the defeat of your own. 翻译成汉语时增补了原比较句中的省略部分。）

15. They would not have done such a thing without government approval. 如果没有得到政府的同意，他们是不会做这种事的。

（原文是含蓄条件句，译成汉语时通过增加“如果”，表达出了原句的条件。）

### 三、语 序

由于英汉两种语言表达上的差异，我们在做英译汉时有时要适当调整句子的先后次序，才能更符合汉语的表达习惯。

1. We ate to our heart's content at her home last Sunday. 我们上星期天在她家饱餐了一顿。

（一般情况下，英语中状语位置的次序是：方式—地点—时间，而汉语中则是：时间—地点—方式，所以英译汉时，状语的顺序艺术得加以调整。）

2. Two thinkers, born within the years of each other, who exerted a powerful and far—reaching influence on Western culture, were Charles Darwin and Charles Babbage. 查尔斯·达尔文和查尔斯·巴贝奇斯这两位思想家出生年份相差不过十年，他们都对西方文化产生了重大而深远的影响。

（原文的主语有过去分词短语和定语从句来限制，如果再按字面的顺序

译成汉语则不符合汉语的表达习惯，所以调整了语序。）

3. The most important day I remember in all my life is the one on which my teacher, Anne Mansfield Sullivan, came to me. 在我的记忆里，安妮·曼斯菲尔德·莎利文老师来的那一天，是我一生中最重要的日子。（英语在一个句子里往往先说个人的感受，再说与感受有关的动作，最后再说最初发生的事情。汉语则相反，往往按照事情发生的顺序来叙述，最后才说个人的感受。）

4. I was filled with wonder when I consider the immeasurable contrast between the two lives which it connects. 从这一天开始，我的生活和以前迥然不同，一想到这一点，我就感到非常兴奋。

（原文是典型的英语句子。先说个人感受 filled with wonder，再说与感受有关的动作 consider，最后再说最初发生的事情 contrast between the two lives，而译成汉语后，顺序恰恰相反，按照事情发生的顺序来叙述，最后才说个人的感受。）

5. I was keenly delighted when I felt the fragments of the broken doll at my feet. 娃娃摔碎了，我的脚碰着碎片，心里高兴极了。

（此句和例 3、例 4 的情况一样，译文先说“娃娃摔碎了”，再说“脚碰着碎片”，最后才表示“高兴”。）

#### 四、被动语态的译法

英语中被动语态的使用范围极其广泛，尤其是在科技英语中，被动语态几乎随处可见。汉语中被动语态的使用则少得多，因此英语中的被动语态在很多情况下都翻译成汉语的主动结构。对于英语原文的被动结构，我们一般采取以下方法：

##### （一）译成汉语的主动句

英语原文的被动结构译成汉语的主动结构又可进一步分为以下不同情况：

##### 1. 原文中的主语仍在句中作主语

(1) The novels of Dickens have already been translated into many languages. 狄更斯的小说已经译成了好几种语言。

(2) Mr. Black was given a prize. 布拉克先生得了奖。

(3) Other questions will be discussed briefly. 其他问题将简单地加以讨论。

(4) Nuclear power's danger to health, safety and even life itself can be summed up in one word: radiation. 核能对健康、安全、甚至对生命本身构成的危险可以用一个词来概括——辐射。

##### 2. 译成汉语的无主句

(1) Smoking is not permitted in this theatre. 本剧院里禁止吸烟。

(2) Great efforts should be made to inform young people especially the dreadful consequences of taking up the habit. 应该尽最大努力告诉年轻人吸烟的危害，特别是吸上隐后的可怕结果。

(3) Water can be shown as containing impurities. 可以证明水含有杂质。



另外，下列结构也可以通过这一手段来译：

It is reported that ...据报道...

It is hoped that ...希望...

It is said that ...据说...

It is supposed...据推测...

It may be said without fear of exaggeration that ...可以毫不夸张地说...

It must be admitted that ...必须承认...

It must be pointed out that ...必须指出...

It will be seen from this that ...由此可见...

3. 将英文的主语译为汉语的宾语，同时增补泛指性的词语（人们、大家等）作主语。

(1) It could be argued that the radio performs this service as well, but on television everything is much more living, much more real. 可能会有人指出，无线电广播同样也能做到这一点，但还是电视屏幕上的节目要生动、真实得多。

(2) It would be astonishing if that loss were not keenly felt. 如果（人们）不强烈地感到损失，那倒是奇怪了。

另外，下列的结构也可以通过这一手段来翻译：

It is asserted that...有人主张...

It is believed that...有人认为...

It is generally considered that...大家（一般人）认为...

It is well known that...大家知道（众所周知）...

It will be said that...有人会说...

It was told that...有人曾经说...

4. 用汉语的“把”字句来翻译，即把英文原文的 by, in, for, 等作状语的介词短语翻译成汉语的主语，原文的主语译成“把”字的宾语

(1) Rivers are controlled by dams. 拦河坝把河流控制住了。

(2) The famous hotel had been practically destroyed in the big fire. 大火把这座著名的旅馆几乎完全毁掉。

(3) He was regarded as best friend by everybody. 人人都把他当作最好的朋友看待。

5. 译成“是...的...”句式。英语里的被动句，有的并非强调被动的动作，只是以被动语态的形式描述事物的过程、性质和状况，实际上与系表结构很相近，这类被动句汉译时往往可采用“是...的...”句式。如：

(1) History is made by the people. 历史是人民创造的。

(2) The decision to attack was not taken lightly. 进攻的决定不是轻易做了的。

(3) The ship was destined for London. 这艘船是去伦敦的。

(4) But the march could not be stopped with bullets. 但这时游行已经不是子弹所能阻止得住的了。

(5) Rainbows are formed when sunlight passes through small drops of water in the sky. 彩虹是阳光透过天空中的小水滴时形成的。

（二）译成汉语的被动语态如果原文句子是要特别强调被动动作或强调受

动者时，可译成汉语的被动句，常用“被”、“给”、“遭”、“挨”、“为...所”、“使”、“由”、“受到”等来表示。

1. Our foreign policy is supported by the people all over the world. 我们的对外政策受到全世界人民的支持。

2. The things have been affected with damp. 东西受潮了。

3. She was caught in the down power. 她叫大雨淋着了。

4. He was severely criticized by the teacher. 他挨了老师严厉的批评。

5. They were hit by a natural calamity last year. 他们去年遭灾了。

6. I was so impressed by these words that I used them later for a Christmas card. 我为这些话所深深感动，后来我就把它们写到圣诞贺卡上。

7. Most letters from his wife, are read to him by the nurse in the hospital. 他妻子给他的信件，大多数是由医院里的护士念给他听的。

8. Early fires on the earth were certainly caused by nature, not by Man. 地球上早期的火肯定是由大自然而不是人类引燃的。

9. These signals are produced by colliding stars or nuclear reactions in outer space. 这些信号是由外层空间的星球碰撞或者核反应造成的。

## 五、定语从句的翻译

定语从句可以分为限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句两种，限制性定语从句对先行词起着比较严格的限制作用，与先行词关系密切，不用逗号分开；而非限制性定语从句不起限制作用，只起描述和解释的作用，常用逗号分开。翻译这两类定语从句时，我们经常采用以下方法：

（一）前置法把英文原文的复合句翻译成汉语的简单句，即把英文的定语从句翻译成汉语的带“的”的定语词组，放在被修饰词前面，这种方法一般只适用于限定定语从句比较短的情况。另外，一些较短的具有描述性的非限定定语从句有时也可采用前置法。例如：

1. The people who worked for him lived in mortal fear of him. 在他手下工作的人对他怕得要死。

2. Oxygen is a gas which unites with many substances. 氧是一种能和许多物质化合的气体。

3. The sun, which had hidden all day, now came out in all its splendor. 那个整天躲在云层里的太阳，现在又光芒四射地露面了。

4. But Giggie's laugh, which was very infectious, broke the silence. 但密格尔的富有感染力的笑声打破了静默。

5. Power, as explained in physics, is simply the rate at which work is performed. 物理学中所解释的功率，只是完成工作的速率。

6. Behaviourists, in contrast, say that difference in scores are due to the fact that blacks are often deprived of the educational and other environmental advantages that whites enjoy. 相反，行为主义者认为，成绩的差异是由于黑人常常被剥夺了白人在教育及其他外界环境方面所享有的许多有利条件所造成的。

(二) 后置法当定语从句较长时, 如果翻译成前置的定语, 就会不符合汉语的表达习惯, 这时, 往往把该定语从句翻译成并列的分句, 放在所修饰的词的最后。另外, 需要注意的是, 由于非限制性定语从句不限制先行词, 而只是给主语或宾语一种比较独立的描写或叙述, 所以, 大多数非限制性定语从句都翻译成并列句或独立句。

1. He made the sound of sympathy which comes so readily from those who have an independent income. 他发出了同情之声, 这种同情声是那些有独立收入的人最容易脱口而出的。

2. A fuel is material which will burn at a reasonable temperature and produce heat. 燃料是一种物质, 在适当温度下能够燃烧并放出热量。

3. I knew that John would tell his mother, who would probably tell Mary. 我知道约翰肯定会去告诉他的妈妈, 她妈妈多半又会说给玛丽听。

4. He said that this was a good suggestion, which he would look into. 他说这是个很好的建议, 一定要加以研究。

5. Nevertheless the problem was solved successfully, which showed that the computations were accurate. 不过问题还是圆满解决了。这说明计算很准确。

6. They are striving for the ideal which is close to the heart of every Chinese and for which, in the past, many Chinese have laid down their lives. 他们正在为实现一个理想而努力, 这个理想是每个中国人所珍爱的, 在过去, 许多中国人曾为了这个理想而牺牲了自己的命。

7. Perhaps light is some sort of electronic wave, whose nature we do not yet understand. 也许, 光是某种电波, 其性质我们尚不清楚。

8. The food supply will not increase nearly enough to match this, which means that we are heading into a crisis in the matter of producing and marketing food. 食品的供应将赶不上人口的增长, 这就意味着我们在粮食的生产和购销方面正陷如危机。

(三) 翻译成状语从句英语中有些定语从句, 兼有状语从句的职能, 在意义上与主句有状语关系, 说明原因、结果、目的、让步、假设等关系。翻译时应善于从原文的字里行间发现这些逻辑上的关系, 然后译成汉语各种相应的偏正复句。

1. We know that a cat, whose eyes can take in many more rays of light than our eyes, can see clearly in the night. 我们知道由于猫的眼睛比我们人的眼睛能吸收更多的光线, 所以猫在黑夜里也能看得很清楚。

2. He didn't remember his father who died when he was three years old. 他不记得他父亲了, 因为他父亲死时他才三岁。

3. He insisted on building another house, which he had no use for. 他坚持要再建一幢房子, 尽管他并无此需要。

4. He wishes to write an article that will attract public attention to the matter. 他想写一篇文章, 以便能引起公众对这件事的注意。

5. Anyone who thinks that rational knowledge need not be derived from perceptual knowledge is an idealist. 如果认为理性认识不必由感性认识得来, 那他就是一个唯心主义者。

6. My assistant, who had carefully read through the instructions

before doing his experiment, could not obtain satisfactory results, because he followed them mechanically. 虽然我的助手在做实验之前已从头到尾仔细阅读过说明书, 但由于他死搬硬套, 所以不能得到满意的结果。

7. We recognize the need to establish and develop institutions which help to tame the unbridled exercise of power. 我们认识到需要建立和发展一些机构来帮助限制滥用权力。

## 六、长句的翻译

以上我们讲述了英译汉的一些常用的基本方法, 但是, 我们通过所举的实例可以看出, 每一个英语句子的翻译, 并不只是使用一种翻译方法, 而是多种翻译方法的综合运用, 这在英语长句的翻译中尤为突出。

在翻译长句时, 首先要弄清英语原文的句法结构, 找出整个句子的中心内容及其各层意思, 然后分析几层意思之间的相互逻辑关系, 再按照汉语的特点和表达方式, 正确地译出原文的意思, 不必拘泥于原文的形式。

总的来说, 处理长句的基本原则有两条, 这就是拆句和改变顺序。拆句是把原文的一个句子拆成汉语的几个分句或句子。改变顺序指的是按汉语表达习惯, 重新排列拆出的句子或分句。一般说来, 长句的译法主要有以下四种:

(一) 顺序法当英语长句的内容的叙述层次与汉语基本一致时, 可以按照英语原文的顺序翻译成汉语:

1. If the resistance of the floor could be entirely removed any horizontal force could start the box moving and once started it would continue to move indefinitely unless a force were exerted to stop it.

分析: 这是一个并列复合句, 两个并列句各有一个条件状语从句, 前者在主句前, 后者在主句后, 后一个并列句前还有一个省略形式的时间状语从句。句子的逻辑关系及表达顺序与汉语完全一致, 因此, 我们可以通过顺序法, 把该句译:

假如地板的阻力能完全去掉的话, 那么任何水平力都能使箱子运动, 而且一旦开始运动, 它就无止境地运动下去, 除非施加一个力使这停止。

2. The committee prepared this paper because its members recognized that the government has failed to establish an energy policy capable of providing a comprehensive energy source mix that can meet our requirements for the last portion of this century and the greater portion of the next.

分析: 这句话由四个句子组成, 一个从属一个, 整个是纵的关系, 只第三句稍复杂一点, 主要是形容词 capable 引导的词组较长, 中间还有动名词 providing 引导的短语作为后置定语。总的来讲, 这个句子和汉语的表达法相符, 先说总的情况, 然后逐步加以说明。所以可顺序法译为:

该委员会制定这份文件, 是因为该委员会的成员看到政府已不能制定能提供全面能源的政策, 来满足我们在本世纪和下个世纪大半世纪的需要。

下面再举两个顺译的例子:

3. Even when we turn off the bedside lamp and are fast asleep, electricity is working for us, driving our refrigerators, heating our

water, or keeping our rooms airconditioned.

即使在我们关掉了床头灯深深地进入梦乡时,电仍在为我们工作:帮我们开动电冰箱,加热水,或使室内空调机继续运转。

4. If a listening—comprehension passage, for example, were taped many students would welcome the opportunity of listening to it repeatedly, either in small groups or individually, while the rest of the class was occupied with another task.

如果训练听力的材料有录音,很多学生将愿意重复听此录音,或者小组听,或者单个听,而班上其他学生就可以分派其他任务。

(二) 逆序法英语有些长句的表达次序与汉语表达习惯不同,甚至完全相反,这时必须从原文后面开始翻译,也就是逆着原文的顺序来译。例如:

1. It therefore becomes more and more important that, if students are not to waste their opportunities, there will have to be much more detailed information courses and more advice.

分析:该句由一个主句、一个条件状语从句和一个宾语从句组成,为了合乎汉语的表达习惯,我们将其译为:

因此,如果要使学生充分利用他们(上大学)的机会,就得为他们提供大量关于课程的更为详尽的信息,作更多的指导。这个问题显得越来越重要了。

2. And he knows how ashamed he would have been if she had known his mother and the kind of place in which he was born, and the kind of people among whom he was born.

分析:该句的宾语从句是一个虚拟条件句,条件句的从句又包含了两个定语从句。这是一个典型的英文句子,先说个人的感受(ashamed),再说与感受有关的动作(had known),最后再说最先发生的事情(born in what kind of place and among what kind of people)。由于汉语在这方面的表达习惯恰恰相反,所以汉译时采用逆序法:

他出生在这一类人中间,他出生在这种地方,他有这样的母亲;这些要是让她知道了的话,他知道该多么丢人。

3. It is probably easier for teachers than for students to appreciate the reasons why learning English seems to become increasingly difficult once the basic structures and patterns of the language have been understood.

一旦了解了英语的基本结构和句型,再往下学似乎就越来越难了,这其中的原因,也许教师比学生更容易理解。

4. It was our view that the United States could be effective in both the tasks assigned by the President, i. e., of ending hostilities, and making a contribution to a permanent peace in the Middle East—if we conducted ourselves so that we could remain in the permanent contact with all of these elements in the equation.

如果我们采取行动以便能继续与中东问题各方保持接触,美国就能担当起总统布置的两项任务,即结束中东敌对行动,从而对该地区的永久和平做出贡献。这就是我们的观点。

(三) 分句法 有时英语长句中主语或主句与修饰词的关系并不十分密

切，翻译时可以按照汉语多用短句的习惯，把那些从句、短语或并列成分分离出来，单独成句。

1. The little boy from the ground floor brought up her letters on the rare occasions when anything came.

分析：这外句子中的时间状语 on the rare occasion 后又跟了一个限制性定语从句，其中形容词 rare 和名词 occasion 的搭配不好直接译成汉语，为了符合汉语的表达习惯，可以把状语部分拆开来译：

她难得有信，偶尔有邮件寄了来，总是由一层的那个小男孩儿给她送上来。

2. The great difficulty of introducing radically new computer architectures which requires customers to rewrite most of their software excluded the possibility for these techniques to find their way to the commercial marketplace.

分析：原文句子的主语是带介词短语、其中又套定语从句的复杂结构，难以直译。翻译时不妨把原文结构重新调整：先把定语从句拆出来分译，再把“great difficulty”抽出来译为“难以付诸实现”，独立成句。整句可译为：

采用全新的计算机体系结构，势必要求用户改写其大部分软件，因此难以付诸实现。

3. Many man-made substances are replacing certain natural materials because either the quantity of the natural product can not meet our ever-increasing requirement, or, more often, because the physical property of the synthetic substance, which is the common name for man-made materials, have been chosen, and even emphasised, so that it would be of the greatest use in the fields in which it is to be applied.

分析：句中的非限定性定语从句“which is the common name for man-made materials”夹在中间，若按原句结构顺译，译文就会前后不连贯，所以可以把它抽出来分译，单独成句，放在句末，作为交待。最后的结果状语从句也可译成独立的句子。全句可译为：

人造材料通称为合成材料。许多人造材料正在代替某些天然材料，这或者是由于天然物产的数量不能满足日益增长的需要，或者往往是由于人们选择了合成材料的一些物理性质并加以突出而造成的。因此合成材料在拟用的领域中将具有极大的用途。

4. When Smith was drunk, he used to beat his wife and daughter; and the next morning, with a headache, he would rail at the world for its neglect of his genius, and abuse, with a good deal of cleverness, and sometimes with perfect reason, the fools, his brother painters.

史密斯喝醉之后常常打老婆和女儿；第二天带着头痛发牢骚，抱怨世人不能赏识他的才华。他痛骂同行的画家都是糊涂虫。话很尖刻，有时候也很道理。

5. The problem of possible damage to human populations from radiation exposures, including those resulting from the fallout from testing of atomic weapons, has quite properly claimed much popular

attention in recent years.

人类由于面临辐射威胁，其中包括原子武器试验产生的放射性散落物所造成的辐射威胁，很可能遭到基因损伤，这一问题近年来已经理所当然地引起人们的广泛重视。

（四）综合法 上面我们讲述了英语长句的顺序法、逆序法分句法，事实上，在处理有些长句时，单纯用一种方法往往不能把原文译成通顺、忠实的汉语，这就要求我们各种方法综合使用，顺逆结合、主次分明地对全句进行综合处理。例如：

1. Computer languages may range from detailed low level close to that immediately understood by the particular computer, to the sophisticated high level which can be rendered automatically acceptable to a wide range of computers.

分析：这个句子的难点在于有太多的修饰语（形容词短语、分词短语及定语从句），另外，“range from...to...”的结构在汉语中也没有相应的结构，若生搬硬套，译文必会显得生硬，我们不妨把它按汉语的表达灵活处理。另外，形容词短语和定语从句可以拆出来分译：

计算机语言有低级也有高级的。前者比较繁琐，很接近于特定计算机直接能懂的语言；后者比较复杂，适用范围广，能自动为多种计算机所接受。

2. People were afraid to leave their houses, for although the police had been ordered to stand by in case of emergency, they were just as confused and helpless as anybody else.

尽管警察已接到命令，要做好准备以应付紧急情况，但人们不敢出门，因为警察也和其他人一样不知所措和无能为力。

3. Thus, a tremendous chain reaction occurs, with more and more atoms being split as more neutrons are released.

这样，当越来越多的中子被释放出来时，便会有更多的原子被分裂，巨大的链式反应就发生了。

## 七、正反、反正表达法

英汉两种语言的表达方式差别极大。不少英语句子在形式上是肯定的而在实质上是否定的，或在形式上是否定的而在实质上是肯定的，还有双重否定的英语句子等。翻译时如果按字面直译，往往不合汉语的思维习惯和表达方式，这时需要从相反的角度来译，即肯定形式译成汉语的否定形式，否定形式译为汉语的肯定形式。下面试举一些典型的例子分别加以说明：

（一）英语的肯定形式译为汉语的否定形式：

1. Catch me doing that. 我不会干这种事情。

2. Did I get your name right? 我没弄错你的名字吧？（如果直译，虽能被理解，但不符合汉语表达习惯）

3. He would die before yielding. 他宁死不屈。

4. That lazy boy went to class before he had prepared his lessons. 那个懒惰的小孩不预习就去上课。

5. This problem is above me. 这个问题我不懂。

6. Your request is beyond my power. 你的请求我办不到。

7. My guess is as good as yours. 我的猜测并不比你的高明。
8. The news is too good to be true. 这消息好到不能相信的程度。
9. That little bridge is anything but safe. 那小桥极不安全。
10. She would have fallen but that I caught her. 如果我不拉住她，她便跌倒了。
11. He is anywhere to be found but in his office. 他总不在办公室里面。
12. Your temper is more than I can bear. 我不能忍受你的脾气。
13. There is more in it than you imagine. 其中还有你所想象不到的。
14. It is far from me to do anything to hurt you. 我绝不想做任何事来伤害你。
15. You ought to know better to do that sort of thing. 你不该做那种事。

(二) 英语的否定形式译为汉语的肯定形式

1. I can't agree more. 我百分之百同意。
2. You can never be too careful about English — Chinese translation. 对于英译汉，你越是细心越好。
- (“can't...too...”，意为“ It is impossible to overdo...”，或“no matter how much more you do, you'll never overdo it”，无论怎样也不为过)
3. We can't recommend this book too strongly. 这本书怎么推荐也不为过。
4. Don't lose time in posting this letter. 赶快把这封信寄出去。
5. The examination left no doubt that the patient had died of cancer. 调查结果清清楚楚说明病人死于癌症。
6. Your work leaves nothing to be desired. 你的工作做得十分令人满意。
7. The lion is no less cruel than the tiger. 狮子与老虎同样残忍。  
(no less=as...as)
8. The lion is no more merciful than the tiger. 狮子不比老虎更仁慈。(反语)
- (no more than 是反语，与它搭配的任何形容词一定要向相反意义转化，如 merciful 转化为 cruel，cruel 转为 merciful，good 转为 bad，bad 转为 good 等。人们都认识到狮子与老虎同样凶残，因而用 merciful 代替 cruel，借以表示人们在心理上对狮子与老虎的憎恶。这就是反语的修辞作用。而 nor more than 没有修辞作用)。
9. If I haven't repeated the mistake! 我真不该重犯这样的错误！。
- (这句话形式是否定的，而实质是肯定的，if...not...表示肯定的惊奇，是一种常见的修辞手段。 )。
10. The value of health is not esteemed until it is lost. 人直到失去了健康，才知道健康的可贵。
- (“not”、“no”、“never”、“little”、“few”、“seldom”等否定词后接 until，一般译为“要...才...”。)



11. Some take no thought of money until they come to an end of it, and many do the same with their time. 有些人要等到钱用完了才考虑到钱的事, 而更多的人对于时间也是这样。

(三) 双重否定: 英语双重否定的形式, 译为汉语时为了合乎汉语习惯, 有时译为肯定形式, 而有时为了加强语气, 翻译时仍可保留原文否定的结构。

1. He can't speak English without making mistakes. 他说英语每说必错。

2. No one can read it without crying. 无人读此书而不落泪。

3. We can't do without English—Chinese dictionaries. 我们需要英汉词典。

4. There is no rule but has exceptions. 条条规则都有例外。

(否定词后面的 but 是具有“which not”, “who not”, “that not”等否定意义的关系代词, 因而构成前后的双重否定, 可译成“没有...不是...”)

5. There is no one but knows that. 无人不知

6. There is scarcely a man but has his weak side. 人皆有缺点。

7. He never opens his mouth but he tells a lie. 他一开口就说谎。

(but=when not, 全句的意思是: he never opens his mouth when he does not tell a lie.)

8. She is not a little interested in certain techniques of English—Chinese translation. 她对英译汉的一些技巧有浓厚的兴趣。

(英语中的双重否定有时表示委婉肯定。)

9. She told him in no uncertain terms that she would not marry him. 她很坚决地告诉他她不愿嫁他。

10. That person is nothing but an ignoramus! 那人是一个十足的蠢货。(双重否定 nothing but 等于强调的肯定 perfectly is。)

11. Not for nothing does a weasel pay a New Year visit to a chick. 黄鼠狼向小鸡拜年一定有目的。

## 第四章 英译汉综合练习及题解

以上通过对英汉两种语言的对比，介绍了英译汉时常用的一些翻译技巧。但任何翻译技巧都是针对具体的上下文而言的，考生在考试中切忌生搬硬套。好的译文的前提是忠实于原文，任何技巧和变通手段的运用都是为了更好得表达原文的精神，所以在翻译实践中一定要把握好“度”。如果没有十足的把握。宁可直译。生硬的译文，如果忠实地表达了原文的意思，也比虽然流畅但准确的要好。

任何技巧都来源于翻译实践，如果没有平时的大量练习、只死记一些规则、技巧，只能是纸上谈兵。下面我们提供了三十篇翻译练习及部分题解，做这些练习时要先自己翻译，然后再对照参考译文和题解，这将有利于提高你的翻译水平。

Passage One All the wisdom of the ages, all the stories that have delighted mankind for centuries, are easily and cheaply available to all of us within the coveries of books but we must know how to avail ourselves of this treasure and how to get the most from it. The most unfortunate people in the world are thise who have never discovered how satisfying it is to read good books.

Reading is pleasure of the mind, which means that it is a little like a sport: your eagerness and knowledge and quickness make you a good reader. Reading is fun, not because the writer is telling you something, but because it makes your mind work. Your own imagination works along with the author's or even goes beyond his. Your experience, compared with his, brings you to the same or different conclusions, and your ideas develop as you understand his.

Every book stands by itself, like a one—family house, but books in a library are like houses in a city. Although they are separate, toghther they all add up to something, they are connected with each other and with other cities, The same ideas, or related ones, turn up in different places; the human problems that repeat themselves in life repeat themselves in literature, but with different solutions according to different writings at different times. Books influences each other; they link the past, the present and the future and have their own generations, like families. Wherever you start reading you connect yourself with one of the familes of ideas, and in the long run, you not only find out about the world and the people in it; you find out about yourself, too.

Reading can only be fun if you expect it to be. If you concentrate on books somebody tells you you "ought" to read, you probably won't have fun. But if you put down a book you don't like and try another till you find one that means something to you, and then relax with it, you will almost certainly have a good time—and if you become, as a result of reading, better, wiser, kinder, or more gentle, you won't have suffered during the process.

人类世世代代的聪明才智，千百年来令人们陶醉的故事，都可以轻而易举而又无需耗费许多钱财便从书中获得。不过，我们必须知道如何获取这一财富并从中吸取最大的效益。世界上最不幸者就是那些从未领略到阅读佳作乐趣的人。

读书是精神享受，也就是说读书有点像体育运动：你的求知欲望、你的知识和机智敏捷使你成为一个善于读书的人。读书之所以是一种乐趣，并非因为作者向你讲述了什么，而是因为读书使你开动脑筋思考。你的想象随作者的想象驰骋，甚至超越作者的想象。你的经历与作者经历相应对比，使你得出与他相同或不同的结论，而随着你对作者思想的理解，你的思想也会有发展。

每一部书都有如独门独户的房舍，孑然自立。而图书馆的藏书则像城市中鳞次栉比的建筑，尽管它们各成一体，但却共同构成一个整体；不仅它们之间相互联系，而且也与其他城市相互联系。相同的或者相关联的观点，在不同的地方出现。人类生活中所反复遇到的问题在文学作品中也反复出现，但其解决方法在不同时期的不同作品中却大相径庭。书本之间相互影响，把过去，现在、将来紧密地联系起来，一代一代，形同各个家族。无论你从何时何地读起，你都会把自己同某一观点联系起来；而从长远来看，你不仅仅从书中了解世界，理解人生，你也会认识自己。

只有你把读书当作一种乐趣，它才成其为乐趣。假如你把注意力放在别人告诉你“该”读的书上，你很可能觉得索然寡味。但是，假如你放下自己不喜欢的书，另试一本，直至找到对自己有意义的书，然后心情轻轻地读下去，那么，几乎可以肯定，你会感到其乐无穷。假如你由于博览群书而变得更为高尚、智慧、善良、文雅，你就不会觉得读书是一种负担了。

解析 此句的主语是一个并列主语，分别由一个介词短语和定语从句来修饰，谓语是一个系表结构，翻译时为了符合汉语习惯，把表语形容词转译成了动词“获得。”“avail oneself of sth.”是“利用”的意思；“get the most from”意思是“最大限度地利用”。

这句包含了过去分词短语 compared with...，译文把它译成了独立句。

wherever，引导的从句译成“无论何时”，这是因为这样更符合汉语的表达习惯，也更表达了原文的意思。in the long run 是“从长远看”，“not only...too”和“not only...but also...”的意思相同。

这是一个条件状语从句，第一个条件分句中包含了两个限制性定语从句，都译作了前置定语“...的”，“as a result of reading”是一个插入语，译成了从句中的原因从句。

#### passage Two

All of us have read thrilling stories in which the hero had only a limited and specified time to live. Sometimes it was as long as a year; sometimes as short as twentyfour hours. But always we were interested in discovering just how the doomed man chose to spend his last days or his last hours. I speak, of course, of free men who have a choice, not condemned criminals whose sphere of activities is strictly delimited.

Such stories set us thinking, wondering what we should do under similar circumstances. What events, what experiences, what

associations should we crowd into these last hours as mortal beings? What happiness should we find in reviewing the past, what regrets?

Sometimes I have thought it would be an excellent rule to live each day as if we should die tomorrow. Such an attitude would emphasize sharply the values of life. We should live each day with a gentleness, a vigor, and a keenness of appreciation which are often lost when time stretches before us in the constant panorama of more days and months and years to come.

There are those, of course who would adopt the epicurean motto of 'Eat, drink, and be merry', but most people would be chastened by the certainty of impending death.

#### 参考译文

我们大家都读过这样激动人心的故事，故事中的主人公活着的时间已屈指可数，多则一年半载，少则二十四个小时，然而，我们深感关切的却总是要看看好为厄运难逃的人，究竟选择怎样去度过他生命中最后的那些日子，或那几个小时。我所说的，当然是有权进行选择的自由人，而不是那些活动范围受到严格限制的囚犯。

这样的故事使人深思，催人自问：在同样的情况下，我们自己该怎么办？作为即将死去的人，我们应该用什么样的大事，什么样的经历，什么样的交往，去充实那最后的几个小时。当我们回首往事时，会感到多大的快乐，又会有多少遗憾？

有时，我会遐想，如果我们天天就好像明天就会死去那样，去过每天的日子，这将会是一个极好的准则，这样，生命的价值将被强调的异常突出的地位，我们以和善的态度，旺盛的精力，敏锐的感受力来度过每一天；而这日子像永无止境的画卷，日复一日，月复一月，年复一年地延伸下去，这态度、精力和敏锐的鉴别力，常常会悄然消失。自然，有些人会把“吃、喝、玩、乐”这样的享乐主义作为自己的信条；但大多数人都会因即将来临的死亡而纯洁自己的行为。

解析 这句的宾语有一个限制性定语从句来修饰，从句较长，如果翻译成前置定语，势必不通，所以译成了独立句。放在后面。

这一段当中有三个句子，第一句中有两个现在分词，第一个分词作宾语补足语，第二个分词短语 wondering...表示伴随状况，译文把两个分词译成了并列谓语，wondering 后面的宾语从句译成了独立句。第二句当中的 crowd into 意译成了“充实”，这样更符合汉语的习惯。第三句中的介词短语 in reviewing the past 表示时间，所以译成了时间状语从句。

这句可以直译为“这样的态度将使生命的价值得到突出的强调。”这样译多少有点生硬，所以译文中把原句子的主语 such an attitude 译作了独立的副词，句子的宾语得到了更好的强调，译文也就更忠实地传达了原文的精神。

这个长句实际上是个简单句，只是由于介词短语有一个包含了时间状语从句的定语从句来修饰，这便增加了翻译的难度。译文将三个抽象名词 gentleness, vigor, appreciation 具体化，分别译作“和善的态度，旺盛的精力和敏锐的感受力”；而又将后面的定语从句用了“拆句法”，使其中的

状语从句独立成句。

Passage Three To an observer on earth, the sun seems to move farther and farther away from the equator to the north until on June 21st it seems to reach its furthest point north. Then it seems to "pause" for one day before it turns round and goes back. Then it goes further and further south until on December 22nd it appears to "pause" again for one day before swerving back north again. These two days are called the Summer Solstice and Winter Solstice respectively.

Now we know that all this is caused by the movement of the earth around the sun. As the earth journeys around the sun, it spins on its own axis. This can be illustrated by a simple experiment. If we take you push a sharp stick through a rubber ball and twirl it with two fingers, the ball spins around in much the same way the earth is spinning at this very moment. The points where the stick comes through the ball correspond to the north and south poles. If you twirl this ball at night directly in front of a bright light, you will notice that half the ball is lighted up while the other half is in the shade. That is just like our night and day. If you keep the stick strictly vertical to the light and twirl it at an even speed, any spot on the ball's surface will be in the light and in the shade the same length of time.

#### 参考译文

在地球上的观察者看来，太阳似乎离开赤道一步步向北移动，到六月二十一日，移动到了北面最远的地方。接着太阳似乎“暂停”移动一天，然后就回头一步步向南移动，直到十二月二十二日，太阳似乎又“暂停”一天，再回头往北移动。这两天就分别叫做夏至和冬至。

现在我们知道，所有这一切现象都是由于地球围绕太阳转动而产生的。地球绕着太阳运行时是围绕自身的轴旋转的。这可以用简单的实验来说明。如果把一根尖头棒插进皮球，用两个手指使它转动起来，皮球的旋转与地球此时此刻的自转极为相似。尖头棒穿过的两处相当于南极和北极。如果在夜间、正对着明亮的灯光转动，就会发现半个皮球被照亮了，而另外半个在阴暗处。这种情况正好同我们白天黑夜的现象相同。如果使尖头棒完全与灯光垂直，以均匀的速度加以转动，球面的任何一点在亮处和暗处的时间长短是相同的。

解析 如果把句首的介词短语“to an observer on earth”直译为“对于地球上的观察者而言”，意思就不够明确，所以在翻译时又加进了名词 observer 原有的动词意味“看来”，这种方法在“第三章翻译技巧”中的“词性转换”中已详细介绍过。另外，until 引导的时间状语从句在译文中也译成了独立的分句，这种“断句”的方法也在前面讲述过。

这个句子中的“before”不宜直译为“在...之前”，按照汉语表达习惯，我们将其译为“然后”，在随后的句子中“before”的用法也相同。

译文将原文的“all this”译为“所有这些现象”，增加了原文中虽无其词但有其意的“现象”一词，增词法的运用是为更忠实地表达原文，更符合汉语的表达习惯。

这句及下文中的 if 条件从句中的主语 you 都是泛指代词，译成汉语时

往往要省去，译成汉语的无主句。

Passage Four We are so used to our life on the surface of the earth that it can be quite an effort for our minds to break free of all the ideas that we take for granted. We talk about "up" and "down", but we know that what is "down" for us is "up" for someone on the other side of the world.

Because we can feel that things are heavy, we think of "weight" as being a fixed quality in an object, but it is not really fixed at all. If you could take a one-pound packet of butter 4 000 miles out from the earth, it would weigh only a quarter of a pound.

Why would things weigh only a quarter as much as they do at the surface of the earth if we took them 4 000 miles out into space? The reason is this: All objects have a natural attraction for all other objects; this is called gravitational attraction. But this power of attraction between two objects gets weaker as they get farther apart. When the butter was at the surface of the earth, it was 4 000 miles from the centre (in other words the radius of the earth is 4 000 miles). When we took the butter 4 000 miles out, it was 8, 000 from the centre, which is twice the distance.

If you double the distance between two objects, their gravitational attraction decreases "two times two". If you treble the distance, it gets nine times weaker (three times three). If you take it four times as far away, it gets sixteen times weaker (four times four) and so on. So this is one of the first things we need to remember: that the weight of an object in space is not the same as its weight on the surface of the earth.

#### 参考译文

我们如此习惯于地面上的生活，以致很可能要做相当一番努力才能使我们的头脑摆脱我们认为是理所当然的一切传统观念。我们说“上”和“下”，但我们知道对我们来说“下”，对地球另一面的人来说就是“上”。

由于我们能感觉到物体有重量，我们就认为“重量”是物体所固有的一种特性，但它根本不是真正固有的。如果你能把一包一磅重的黄油送到地球外 4 000 英里的地方去，那么它的重量就只有四分之一磅了。

为什么我们把物体送到 4 000 英里外的太空时，它的重量就只有在地面时的四分之一了呢？其原因是：一切物体对其他所有的物体都有一个自然引力。这个引力称为万有引力。但是两个物体之间的引力会随着它们之间距离越来越大而变得越来越小。当黄油在地面时，它离地心 4 000 英里（换言之，地球的半径是 4 000 英里）。当我们把这包黄油送到 4 000 英里外时，它距地心 8000 英里，也就是原来距离的两倍。

如果你把两个物体之间的距离增加一倍，它们之间的引力就减少到  $(2 \times 2)$  分之一。如果把距离扩大到三倍，该引力就只是原来的九分之一  $(3 \times 3)$ 。如果增加到四倍，引力就只有原来的十六分之一  $(4 \times 4)$  依此类推。

所以，我们要记住的首要事情之一是：物体在太空中的重量与它在地面上的重量是不同的。

解析 这是一个用“so...that...”连接的结果状语从句，从句中的主语it是形式主语，后面的不定式“to break free of...”是真正的主语，翻译成汉语时采用了和主句相同的主语“我们”，而把原来的不定式译成了目的状语；另外，为了更准确地表达原文，将“all the ideas that we take for granted”译成了“我们认为是理所当然的一切传统观念”，增加了“传统”一词。

这一句当中应当注意比较级的译法，如果把“gets weaker as they get farther apart”译为“随着两物体之间距离的加大而引力变小”，就没有贴切表达原文的意思，“as”在这里是“during the course of”的意思，所以译作“随着它们之间距离越来越大而引力变得越来越小”。

这里要注意“decreases two times two”的译法，“two times two”是2的2倍，也就是说减少4倍，而汉语的表达习惯要说“减少到原来的四分之一”。

这里的“nine times weaker”和“sixteen times weaker”和中的“two times two”一样，要译成汉语的“减少到九分之一”和“减少到十六分之一”。

Passage Five What were the difficulties which the early pioneers had to overcome in making successful aeroplanes? One of them was to decide what general system ought to be used. Naturally the first idea was to use wings as birds do, and some men actually provided themselves with wings fastened to their arms; but they failed. It is interesting fact that when men try to do the same things as nature does, they usually have to do them in a different way. Carriages, trains and motor-cars use wheels instead of legs; aeroplanes have fixed wings, unlike those of birds; boats are moved by oars or by the wind, and ships by paddle—wheels or screws, though not one of these methods is used by any fish. In general, too, the wheel, a necessary part of most machines, never appears in nature. Thus the decision to use a

fixed wing was one that had to be made before any aeroplane could fly satisfactorily. Some of the early machines had a lot of wings of various sizes and in different positions. The number was soon reduced to a maximum of three, one above the other. The machine with three wings (it looks like one with three pairs of wings, for a wing stretches right across the machine from side to side) was known as a triplane; it disappeared from the sky long ago. The biplane, with two wings, lasted longer and could be seen fairly frequently up to the war of 1939, though it is now becoming a rarity. The monoplane is now the commonest type of aircraft. It has the advantage that it presents less resistance to the air than other types, and can therefore fly faster with the same power.

参考译文要顺利地制造出飞机，早期先驱们需要克服哪些困难呢？其中之一就是要确定应当采用什么样的总系统。很自然，最初的想法是像鸟一样用翅膀来飞。也真的有人在自己的双臂上绑上翅膀，但全失败了。有趣的是，人们在模拟自然界其他生物来做同样的事情时往往得采用不同于这些生

物的方法去做。马车、火车和汽车用的都是轮子，而不是腿。飞机装有固定的机翼，和鸟的翅膀不一样。小船靠桨和风力推动，轮船靠桨轮或螺旋桨行驶，而这些方法却没有一种是任何鱼类所使用的。同样，一般说来，轮子（是大多数机器的必要部件）也从来未在自然界出现过。因此，确定合作固定机翼是势在必行的，否则飞机就不能进行令人满意的飞行。

早期的飞机安装着许多大小不等方位不同的机翼。机翼的数目很快就减少到最多三个，上下重叠着。这类三个机翼的飞机看起来好像有三对机翼，因为每个机翼正好从一侧穿过机身伸展到另一侧，故称为三翼机，这种飞机在很久以前就在天空中消失了。

装有两个机翼的双翼机，虽然现在很少见，但它使用期较长。直到 1939 年，二次大战中还能常常看到。单翼机是现在最常见的一种类型，这类飞机和其他型式的飞机相比，其优点是空气阻力小，因此在功率相同的情况下，它能够飞行得更快。

解析 这是一个主语从句，以 it 作形式主语的主语从句在翻译时应根据具体情况确定主语从句置前还是置后，如果主语从句置后时，it 一般不用译出。又如：It is rumoured that the meeting will be held in June. 据传，这个会将在六月举行。

这句如果按字面直译，就会显得很别扭，所以采用了意译手法，其中又包括了词性转换的翻译方法—decision 译为“作出决定”。另外“before”这个词采用了正反表达法，译作“否则就不可能进行令人满意的飞行”。又如：“He got to his feet before I could protest”，译作“还没等我来得急提出异议，他已经站了起来”。

这句话用了词性转译法，因为如果把“rarity”在这里译作“稀罕物”，便有悖于汉语的表达习惯，所以转译为形容词“少见的”。

这是一个同位语从句，同位语从句是指在一个名词或代词后面的名词性从句，对前者做进一步的解释，说明该名词或代词的内容。在翻译同位语从句时，一般把同位语从句仍放在原来的位置，有时用冒号，破折号或“即”等词表示。又如：He expressed the hope that he would come over to visit China again. 他表示希望再到中国来访问；But consider realistically, we had to face the fact that our prospects were less than good. 但是现实地考虑一下，我们不得不正视这样的事实：我们的前景并不美妙。

Passage six Solids transmit sound very well. Try holding a wooden stick against part of a machine, and place your ear against the stick. The movement of the ball—bearings can be clearly heard. This is a good way of finding the exact source of trouble in a motor—car engine which sounds as if it is wrong and yet gives no information of where the trouble is.

The cocoa—tin telephone is another proof of the way in which solids transmit sounds. Two tins, connected by a string fixed through a hole in the bottom of each tin and stretched tight, form a good telephone over a few yards. A message whispered into one tin held against the mouth is clearly heard by your partner if he holds his ear against the other tin.

It is probably a good thing that sound cannot travel through a



vacuum, for we are thus limited to earth-made sounds. The violent disturbances which are seen occasionally in the sun, for example, may affect our magnetism and our radio; they do not affect our ears, which is a very good thing for our peace of mind. If we have used our eyes and ears, we have already realised that sound takes time to travel through the air. The sound of thunder nearly always follows the lightening flash although they happen together. And the appearance of a white cloud above a distant ship or train tells us, before anything is heard, that its whistle has sounded. Just how fast does sound travel through the air?

#### 参考译文

固体传声良好。拿一根木棒，抵住机器的某一部位，再把耳朵贴在木棒上，你就能清楚地听到滚珠轴承的转动声。在汽车发动机的声音听起来似乎有毛病但又找不出毛病所在时，这是发现其故障确切位置的好办法。

用可可罐头盒做的传话装置是对固体传声的又一证明。把一根线的两端分别固定在两个罐头盒底的洞眼里，然后把这根连接线拉紧就做成了一个能在数码距离以内传话的很好的传话器了。用嘴对着罐头盒轻声说话，另一头的人把耳朵紧贴在另一个罐头盒上就能清楚地听到这说话声。

声音不能通过真空来传播，这或许是件好事，因为这样我们就只限于听到地球上发出的声音。例如，我们偶而看到的太阳里剧烈扰动可能影响地球上的磁力和无线电，但它并不影响我们的耳朵，这对我们的心神安宁来说是件大好事。

如果我们耳目并用就会意识到声音穿过空气是需要一定时间的。尽管雷鸣和电闪同时发生，但总是先见其光而后闻其声。远处的轮船或火车开动时，我们总是先看到其上空出现的白色烟云，而后才闻其鸣笛。那到，声音穿过空气时的速度到底有多快呢？

解析 这句话包含了一个“of”引导的介词短语，而短语其中又含了一个定语从句，由于定语太长，所以，对定语从句采用了“拆译法”，把它放在句首，译成了时间状语从句。另外，原句中的表语很长，这是因为英文句子要做到“end—weight”，如果把原句子结构直接译成汉语，就显得很蹩脚，所以在翻译时用了“逆序法”，改变了原句子结构。

英语里被动语态用得更多，而汉语里被动语态用得少，所以在处理英语的被动语态时，往往译成汉语的主语动态，把原句中由“by”引导的短语译作主语。另外，过去分词“whispered”也译成主动式，无主句，“用嘴对着罐头盒轻声说话”。

以“it”作形式主语的主语从句译成汉语时，“it”往往略去，所以译为“声音不能通过真空来传播，这或许是件好事”。

这句的难点在于句中有一个以“before”引导的插入语，以“before”引导的句子翻译时一般不直接译为“在...之前”，而要按照汉语习惯，译成恰当的中文。

Passage Seven Food which is kept too long decays because it is attacked by yeasts, moulds and bacteria. The canning Process, however, seals the product in a container so that no infection can reach it, and then it is sterilized by heat. Heat sterilization destroys

all infections present in food inside the can. No chemical preservatives are necessary, and properly canned food does not deteriorate during storage.

The principle was discovered in 1809 by a Frenchman called Nicolas Appert. He corked food lightly in wide-necked glass bottles and immersed them in a bath of hot water to drive out the air, then he hammered the corks down to seal the jars hermetically. Appert's discovery was rewarded by the French government because better preserved food supplies were needed for Napoleon's troops on distant campaigns.

By 1814 an English manufacturer had replaced Appert's glass jars with metal containers and was supplying tinned vegetable soup and meat to the British navy. The next scientific improvement, in 1860, was the result of Louis Pasteur's work on sterilization through the application of scientifically controlled heat.

Today vegetables, fish, fruit, meat and beer are canned in enormous quantities. Within three generations the eating habits of millions have been revolutionized. Foods that were previously seasonal may now be eaten at any time, and strange foods are available far from the countries where they are grown. The profitable crops many farmers now produce often depend on the proximity of a canning factory.

#### 参考译文

保存得太久的食品会变坏，这是因为受到酵母菌、霉菌和细菌侵袭的缘故。而罐装的方法则可以把食品封在一个容器内，使传染病菌无法接近，然后再加热消毒。加热消毒法可以消灭罐内食品中原有的传染病菌。不需要化学防腐剂，以正确方法制成的罐头食品在储藏过程中不会变质。

这个原理是一位名叫尼古拉·阿佩尔的法国人在 1809 年发现的。他把食品装进广口玻璃瓶，轻轻塞上塞子，把瓶子浸入热水中排出空气，然后把软木塞敲下去使玻璃瓶密封。阿佩尔的发明受到法国政府的奖赏，因为拿破仑的远征部队需要保存得比较好的食品。

到 1814 年，一位英国制造商用金属容器代替了阿佩尔的玻璃瓶，向英国海军供应听装菜汤和肉。1860 年，由于路易·巴斯德的研究工作取得成果，通过运用科学方法控制加热来实行消毒，使得罐头的制作在科学上又一次得到改进。

现在，蔬菜、鱼肉、水果和啤酒大量制成罐头食品。在三代人的时间里，千百万人的饮食习惯大大改变。许多种以前是季节性的食物现在任何时候都可以吃到，许多珍奇的食物在远离生产国的地方也可以买到。很多农场主现在种植的有利可图的作物常常有赖于附近有一个罐头食品厂。

解析 这一句中有两个“cork”，第一个“cork”是动词，意思是“用木塞塞紧”，第二个“cork”是名词，“木塞”。为了确切地表达原文的意思，把第一个 cork 所包含的意思“放进”在译文中体现了出来，译为“...把食品装入广口玻璃瓶，轻轻塞上塞子”，这是“增词法”的运用。这句话里有三个抽象名词“improvement”、“sterilization”和“application”，在翻译抽象名词时，多把抽象名词具体化或转译成其中词根所表示的动词意

味，所以“sterilization”和“application”分别译作了“实行消毒”和“运用科学方法”。另外，过去分词“controlled”也转译为动词“控制加热”。

这句是被动语态的完成时，翻译时用了主动形式，而且也没有拘泥于原词“revolutionize”，而是用了更合乎汉语的说法“改变”。原文的“proximity of a canning factory”中的“proximity”是个抽象名词，译文将其译为具体名词“附近”，同时也改变了原句的结构，增了动词“有”，使译文更通顺自然。

Passage Eight Lending and borrowing are more matters of principle in the West than in the East, where a more careless and easy generosity prevails. Things borrowed in the West are definitely expected to be returned, whether it be fifty dollars or merely a friend's pencil, and one is considered dishonest if he does not do so, or undependable if he returns them long after the time he has promised to return them. Moreover, it is expected that the article borrowed will be returned in as good condition as when lent. If this is not possible, either through wear or breakage, it is the custom to return as exact a duplicate as possible, or failing that, to offer the owner the money for it. This may be refused by a generous person, but it must be offered. Borrowing is not so prevalent in the West as in the East, perhaps for these very reasons! One does not usually borrow except from a very close friend. It is better to avoid borrowing altogether as far as possible.

Don't be curious. This is another important Western manner. It is impolite to be curious about the private affairs of others—even your friends. It is exceedingly improper to read their letters or papers.

And on no account should a letter addressed to one person be opened by another unless he has been definitely asked to do so. It is very rude to look at what some person is writing. If you are waiting for someone in a room, don't go around examining things; it is all right to pick up and read a magazine or newspaper from the table but do not touch anything else. Never try to hear a conversation when it is not intended for you.

#### 参考译文

在西方，人们向别人借东西和借东西给别人时比东方更讲究原则。在东方，人们对这样的事比较随便，比较大方。在西方，向人借了东西一定要还，不管是五十元钱，还仅仅是朋友的一支铅笔，谁借了人家东西不还，人们就认为他不诚实，如果他答应在某个时间还，但过了很长时间才还，人们就认为他不可靠。而且，东西还给人家时应该完好无损。如果由于磨损或用坏，不可能完好无损地还给人家，按照惯例就应该购置一件尽可能一样的物品还给人家。如果为不到，就应该照价赔偿。大方的人也许会不接受这样的赔偿，但是借者却必须表示愿意照价赔偿。也许正是由于这些原因，西方人才不像东方人那样经常向人借东西！除了好朋友之外，人们一般不向别人借东西，最好是尽可能不向任何人借。

不要探问别人的隐私，这也是一条重要的西方礼节。对别人的私事，即使是你朋友的私事，东探西问也是不礼貌的。偷看别人的信或文件是极其不合适的；决不可拆阅写给别人的信件，除非人家明确地请你那样做。窥视别人正在写的东西是非常不礼貌的。在房间里等人时，不要到处查看室内的东西；你可以从桌上拿起一本杂志或一张报纸来看，但不可动任何别的東西。绝不要窃听人家并不想叫你听见的谈话。

解析 这句里的“are more matters of principle”如直译为“更是原则问题”则显得别扭，故把“principle”转译为动词“讲究原则”；后面的非限定定语从句“where a more careless and easy generosity prevails”在汉语中也没有对应的结构，故而把名词“generosity”转译为形容词，同时把它的修饰语“careless”分离出来，和“generosity”译为并列的形容词“比较随便、比较大方。”

It is expected that...这种主语从句的被动语态翻译成汉语时常常被译为“无主句”，类似的句型还有“It is hoped that...希望...”，“It is supposed that...据推测...”，“It must be admitted that...必须承认...”等；原文里从句中被动语态译成了汉语的主动形式，同时把“expected”的意思融入进去，“东西还给人家时应该完好无损”。

这是一个主从复合句，主句中的主语“it”是先行主语，代表后面并列的两个不定式“to return or to offer”，因为主语很长，而表语只有一个字“custom”，如果按原句的结构直译成汉语，就显得很别扭，所以把“custom”分离出来，译为副词“按照惯例”。

句首的“on no account”意为“绝不”、“切莫”，含有否定意义的词（如never, few, little, seldom等）放在句首，句子要用倒装语序；另外，原文的主、从句中都是被动语态，译成汉语时，主句中的被动语态译成了无主句，从句中的被动语态也译作了主动句，并加了表示泛指的人称代词“人家”。这是被动语态常用的翻译方法。

Passage Nine When plants and animals die, they normally decay, helped along by fungi, bacteria and the natural chemicals in the environment. Once decomposed, they provide nutrients for living organisms, and the respiration of the micro-organisms causing decay releases carbon dioxide into the atmosphere. Over a period of several hundred million years, however, comparatively small amounts of organic material have been trapped under layers of silt, soil or volcanic rock and, deprived of oxygen, have not fully decomposed. Instead, they have formed deposits of coal, natural gas and oil, often located far beneath the land surface or the sea-bed.

Oil is usually found in porous rock under a layer of impermeable rock which prevents it from escaping. It can then only be reached by drilling. The initial gushing of oil out of a drill pipe is caused by the pressure of the gas trapped and compressed immediately above the oil deposits. In time, this pressure decreases and the oil has to be pumped to the surface. The crude oil raised directly from wells is not yet ready for use. It has to be refined.

As more and more people own cars, the future looks less and less

hopeful. It has taken about 600 million years for the world's oil reserves to be formed. It will probably take us only a little over a hundred years to exhaust them. The age of the internal combustion engine may turn out to be short and highly destructive. Our grandchildren may well be the last generation to drive petrol—powered cars. We can only share scientists' hopes that alternative sources of energy to meet our needs will have been found by the time the world's coal and oil reserves finally run out.

考译文参 植物和动物死亡之后，在周围真菌、细菌和自然化学物不断的作用下，一般都要腐烂。腐烂后的动植物为活着的生物提供营养，那些导致动植物腐烂的微生物的呼吸向大气中释放出二氧化碳。然而，经过几亿年的长期过程，有小部分的有机物质被密封在淤泥、土壤或火山岩构成的地层下面，并由于缺氧而没有完全腐烂。它们往往在地表或海底以下很深的地方形成了煤、天然气和石油的矿床。

石油通常存在于多孔性的岩石中，上面覆盖着不可渗透的岩层，使石油不致散失。因此只有通过钻探才能接触到石油。最初石油喷出钻管，是由于受到紧压在石油层上的被密封的气体的压力。经过一定时间，压力减少了，石油就得用泵才能抽到地面上来。从油井采出的原油还不能马上使用，还需要提炼。

拥有汽车的人越来越多，前景也就越来越显得暗淡。世界上的石油储藏是经过大约六亿年才形成的，而我们也许只要一百年稍多一点的时间就会把全部用光。内燃机时代到头来可能是为时短暂而贻害非浅。我们的孙辈很可能是驾驶汽油动力汽车的最后一代。我们只有像科学家们那样希望：在世界上的煤和石油储藏最终用完以前就能找到其他可供选择的能源来满足我们的需要。

解析 这是省略的时间状语从句，= once they are decomposed 一旦动植物腐烂。为了更好地承接上句译文，灵活译为“腐烂后的动植物”，由句子变成了词组，可见，翻译时，只要忠实于原文的意思，而不必拘泥于原文结构。

句子后半部分的过去分词短语“often located...”对句子起补充说明作用，译文根据“located”的含义，将整个分词短语译为地点状语放在首句，调整语序后的句子读起来更显得通顺自然。

这是一个被动语态的句子，“...is found in...”不宜直译为汉语的被动语态，因而译文用了主动结构“...存在于...”；又将其中的限制性定语从句译为“目的状语”，“使石油不致散失”。

这句综合运用了多种翻译手法，“share scientists'hopes”用了词性转换的方法，译为“像科学家们一样希望”：“...will have been found”转译为汉语的主动语态“在...之前就能找到”；将原来作后置定语的不定式“to meet our needs”转译为目的状语，放在句末；由些可见，翻译实践实际上是各种方法的综合运用，我们在翻译时切莫生搬硬套某种技巧，而要在忠实于原文的前提下，译成合乎汉语表达习惯的中文。

Passage Ten There is a scientific—fiction story in which beings from another planet conquer the earth easily because they have a machine to turn off all the electricity. Well, what would be the effect of such

a machine? A century ago, nobody but a few scientists would have observed any difference, most people would simply have continued their lives. In our day, however, even the farthest corners of the world are being conquered by electricity, at least by the transistor radio.

Most of the trouble of a life without electricity, however, would come to the highly industrialized nations. Many, if not all, of our industries would cease production; all wheels would stop because the motors that power the machines would fail. The world's transport systems would fall apart without a supply of electricity. Electric trains and trams obviously depend on electric current, but motor vehicles could not be operated, either; they could neither be started (except with a hand—crank) nor would there be any ignition. For the same reason, aeroplanes could not fly.

Probably the worst effect would be felt on the world's communication systems. The telephone, radio, television and radar would become inventions of strictly theoretical interest. The world's leaders would hold meetings and establish committees to discuss the situation and inform the people; but how would people ever learn the results of these discussions, with even the printing presses out of service? In the meantime, scientists would try to find a way to turn the electricity on again or perhaps discover a substance that would replace it.

参考译文 有一篇科幻小说，说到来自另一行星上的生物轻而易举地征服了地球，因为他们有一种能切断一切电源的机器。那么，这种机器所带来的后果将会怎样呢？如若在一个世纪之前，除去少数科学家大概不会有人注意到会有什么异样，大多数人会照常生活下去。可是在当代，即使是地球上最偏僻的角落也离不开电，至少离不开晶体管收音机。

然而，如果没有电，高度工业化的国家所遇到的困难最多。许多（即使不是全部）工业都要停止生产，所有机轮将停止转动，因为供给机器能量的电动机将停止工作。全世界的运输系统也将因没有电力供应而陷于瘫痪。电气火车和电车固然要依靠电流，而汽车没有电也不能开动：它们既不能发动（除非用摇手柄），也不能点火。由于同样的理由，飞机也不能飞行。

受影响最严重的也许是全世界的通讯系统。电话、收音机、电视、雷达都只能变成纸上谈兵的发明。世界各国的首脑可能会召开会议，来讨论这种形势，并向世界人民发布消息。但是如果连印刷机也停止工作了，人民将如何获悉这些讨论的结果呢？在此期间，科学家们将致力于寻求一种把电流重新接通的方法，或是设法发现一种物质来代替电。

解析 这句是虚拟语气，英语中的虚拟语气有时不用 if 从句，而用介词短语或其他形式来表达，主句仍用虚拟语气的相应形式。如：But for your help, I should have been found. 要是没有你们的帮助，我早已淹死了。这句的“a century ago”相当于“If it had been a century ago”，“假如是在一个世纪以前”。

这句仍是虚拟语气，介词短语 without a supply of electricity 相当于 if 引导的从句，主句用虚拟语气的一般时，全句可译为“停止了供电，

全世界的运输系统将陷于瘫痪”。译文为了和上句的承接更为自然，译作“全世界的运输系统也将因为没有电的供应而陷于瘫痪”。此句中“the worst effect would be felt”不宜直接译成汉语，所以译文改换了句式，译作“受影响最严重的是全世界的通信系统”。

此句的“inventions of strictly theoretical interest”，如果按照字面意思直译为“严格理论意义上的发明”，读起来多少会令人有些费解，所以用了易懂的“纸上谈兵的发明”，这样译也没有歪曲原文的意思。

Passage Eleven But the illusory nature of the benefits such deception is meant to produce is now coming to be documented. Studies show that, contrary to the belief of many physicians, an overwhelming majority of patients do want to be told the truth, even about grave illness, and feel betrayed when they learn that they been misled.

We are also learning that truthful information, humanely conveyed, helps patients cope with illness: helps them tolerate pain better, need less medicine, and even recover faster after surgery.

Not only do lies not provide the "help" hoped for by advocates of benevolent deception; they invade the autonomy of patients and render them unable to make informed choices concerning their own health, including the choice of whether to be a patient in the first place.

We are becoming increasingly aware of all that can befall patients in the course of their illness when information is denied or distorted.

Dying patients especially—who are easiest to mislead and most often kept in the dark—can then not make decisions about the end of life: about whether or not they should enter a hospital, or to have surgery; about where and with whom they should spend their remaining time; about how they should bring their affairs to a close and take leave.

#### 参考译文

然而现在开始有人提出证据，说明这种欺骗旨在给病人带来好处的说法是虚幻的。研究结果表明，与许多医生的想法相反，绝大多数病人确实知道真实情况，甚至是严重的病情。当他们了解到医生没有对他们讲真话的时候，他们感到自己被玩弄了。我们还获悉，将真实情况妥当地告诉病人，能帮助他们与病魔作斗争，有助于他们更好地忍受疼痛，减少用药，甚至在手术后更快地恢复。

谎言不仅不能提供鼓吹“仁慈”欺骗的人们所希望的那种“帮助”，它还侵犯了病人的个人自由，使他们不能对有关自己健康的问题作出明达的判断，包括要不要就医，这一首要的选择。我们越来越意识到，病人发病期间，在不知病情或未被如实地告知病情的情况下，他们会遭到什么样的不幸。

特别是濒临死亡的病人——他们最易受骗也最会被人蒙在鼓里——因此而不能作出临终前的种种有关抉择：是否要住进医院，或进行手术，在何处与何人度过所剩下的一点时间，以及任何处理完自己的事务而后与世长辞。

解析 这句的主语很长，其中包括了介词短语，介词短语中又套了一个定语从句，处理时译成了前置定语。定语从句中的“is meant to”。是常用的英语被动式，译成汉语时多译为“旨在”、“目的”、“意欲”等。“document”，

常用的是名词“证件”、“文件”，这里是动词“用证据证明”之意。

句中的过去分词“humanely conveyed”是插入语，是对“truthful information”进一步说明，在译文中合二为一，并转译成了动词“将真实情况妥当地告诉病人”，虽未保留原结构，但仍忠实于原文的意思。

此句是以“not only...”连接的并列句，后半部分省略了“but also...”，但在译文中仍体现了出来，“谎言不仅不能提供.....，还侵犯了...”，这里需要注意的是否定词not置于句首，句子语序要倒装。“render”意为“使得...”。

“Befall”意为“happen to”。在表示时间的介词短语“in the course of their illness”后又跟了一个定语从句，从句中的两个并列谓语动词都是被动式，在译文中第一个译作了主动式，第二个仍译为被动式，这是因为“distort”所致；“distort”的主语应该是“distort”，宾语是“information”而非“patients”，现在要和前面的主语“他们(patients)”保持一致，就把“distort”译成了“未如实地告知”，这样，“告知”的宾语便成了“patients”，和前句自然顺为一体。可见，在翻译时只要忠实于原文的意思，句式是不必照搬的。

Passage Twelve Perhaps the most difficult aspect of the Japanese for Westerners to comprehend is the strong orientation to collective values, particularly a collective sense of responsibility. Let me illustrate with an anecdote about a visit to a new factory in Japan owned and operated by an American electronics company. The American company, a particularly creative firm, frequently attracts attention within the business community for its novel approach to planning, organizational design, and management systems. As a consequence of this corporate style, the parent company determined to make a thorough study of Japanese workers and to design a plant that would combine the best of East and West. In their study they discovered that Japanese firms almost never make use of individual work incentive, such as piece—work or even individual performance appraisal tied to salary increases. They concluded that rewarding individual achievement ability is always a good thing.

In the final assembly area of their new plant, long lines of young Japanese women wired together electronic products on a piece rate system: the more you wired, the more you got paid. About two months after opening, the head foreladies approached the plant manager. “Honorable plant manager”, they said humbly as they bowed, we are embarrassed to be so forward, but we must speak to you because all of the girls have threatened to quit work this Friday. “Why”, they wanted to know, “can't our plant have the same compensation system as other Japanese companies?” “When you hire a new girl, her starting age should be fixed by her age. Every year on her birthday, she should receive an automatic increase in pay. The idea that any one of us can be more productive than another must be wrong because none of us in final assembly could make a thing unless all of the other people in the plant



had done their jobs right first. To single one person out as being more productive is wrong and is also personally humiliating to us." The company changed its compensation system to the Japanese model.

#### 参考译文

西方人对日本人最不理解的一面可能就是他们很看重集体主义观念，特别是集体主义责任感。让我以一件轶事来说明这个问题。这件轶事是关于参观一家由美国电子公司拥有并经营的在日本的工厂。这家美国公司是一个极富创造力的公司，它经常以它新颖的规划、组织设计及管理体系而引起商界的注意。基于这种公司风格，母公司决定对日本工厂进行一次彻底研究并设计一家工厂使之将东西方的精华结合起来。在研究中他们发现，日本公司几乎从不使用个体工作奖励制，像记件制、个人表现评估，也不把评估与工资增加相联系。而他们最终认为奖励个人成果和个人能力总是件好事。

在新工厂的加工车间尾部，数长排的年轻日本女工正按记件制把电子产品缠绕在一起，绕的越多，拿的工资就越高。大约开工两个月以后，流水线上的女工负责人就找到了工厂经理。“尊敬的经理”，她们谦虚地鞠着躬说，“我们很不好意思如此真率地对您讲话，但是我们必须说，因为所有女工都威胁要在星期五辞工。”“她们想知道，为什么我们公司不能使用其他日本公司同样的付酬制度？”“当你们雇一个新女工时，她的起点工资应根据她的年龄来定，每年她生是时，她的工资自动上浮。那种认为我们中的某个人能比其他人干得更多的看法是错误的，因为要不是全厂职工都努力做好他们的工作，我们在流水线尾部的人是一件产品也生产不出来的。把某个人单独挑选出来作为更具有生产能力的人是不对的，也是对其他每个人的侮辱”。于是公司将他们的付酬制度改为日本模式。

解析 句中的“orientation”是“定向”，“位置”之意，是一个抽象名词。抽象名词在翻译时经常转译为动词词根所表示的意思，所以，在这里译成了“看重”，同时，原前面的定语形容词“strong”也相应地转译为副词“很”。“have an orientation to (towards) ...”译为“看重...”如：The school has an orientation towards practical skills. 这所学校看重实用技术的教学。

这句中的定语从句如果翻译成前置定语，就略显太长，所以这里将其译为目的状语“使之将东西方的精华结合起来”，并违背原文意思，又很自然。

原句的“she should receive an automatic increase in pay”如直译为“她会得到自动的工资增长”未免有些别扭，所以用原文的状语作主语，译为“她的工资会自动上浮”，这样，没有拘泥于原结构，但更符合汉语的表达习惯。

这句用了词性转换的翻译方法，形容词“humiliating”“侮辱人的”，译成了合乎汉语习惯的“是个侮辱”，转译成了名词。同时，修饰“humiliating”的副词“personally”转译成了形容词“对每个人的”。句中的“to single one person out”是“把某人挑出来加以特殊对待”之意。如“We all did well this semester, I don't understand why our teacher singled out the monitor for praise. 我们这学期都学得不错，我不明白老师为什么单单表扬了班长一个人。”

Passage Thirteen The first thing I want to insist on is that

reading should be enjoyable. Of course, there are many books that we all have to read, either to pass examinations or to acquire information, from which it is impossible to extract enjoyment. We are reading them for instruction, and the best we can hope is that our need for it will enable us to get through them without tedium. Such books we read with resignation rather than with alacrity. But that is not the sort of reading I have in mind. The books I shall mention in due course will help you neither to get a degree nor to earn your living, they will not teach you to sail a boat or get a stalled motor to run, but they will help you to live more fully. That, however, they cannot do unless you enjoy reading them.

Great books are the most readable. They will not let you down if you try to read them well. They have more ideas per page than most books have in their entirety. That is why you can read a great book over and over again and never exhaust its contents.

They can be read at many different levels of understanding, as well as with a great diversity of interpretations. Obvious examples are GULLIVER'S TRAVELS, ROBINSON CRUSOE and THE ODYSSEY. Children can read them with enjoyment, but fail to find therein all the beauty and significance which delight an adult mind.

Great books are the most instructive. This follows from the fact that they are original communications; they contain what cannot be found in other books. Whether you ultimately agree or disagree with what they say, these are the primary teachers of mankind; they have made the basic contributions to human thought.

It is almost unnecessary to add that the great books are the most influential books. In the tradition of learning, they have been most discussed by readers who have also been writers. These are the books about which there are many other books—countless and, for the most part, forgotten.

Great books deal with the persistently unsolved problems of human life. There are genuine mysteries in the world that mark the limits of human knowing and thinking. Inquiry not only begins with wonder, but usually ends with it also. Great minds acknowledge mysteries honestly. Wisdom is fortified not destroyed, by understanding its limitations.

#### 参考译文

我要坚决主张的第一点是，读书必须是为了乐趣。自然，为了通过考试，或是为了获得知识，我们大家都得读很多我们无法从中得到乐趣的书。我们读这些书只是为了受教育，我们最好的希望是，由于我们需要读它们，所以我们也就能读完它们而不感到厌烦。这样的书我们是无可奈何地而不是轻松愉快地去读的。可是这不是我心目中的读书。我在下面要提到的这些书，既不能帮助你获得一个学位，也不能帮助你挣钱谋生，更不能教你驾驶帆船或是把开不动的马达转动起来，可是这些书能使你生活得更丰富充实。而这一

点，要是你根本不喜欢读这些书，那是无法做到的。

名著隽永耐读。如果读法得当，你就会感到开卷有益。名著一页上的思想内容多于许多书籍的整本内容，这就是一部名著可以反复阅读，每读必有所获的道理。

名著可雅俗共赏，理解深浅程度不同，见仁见智，诠释各异。明显的例子有《格列佛游记》，《鲁滨逊漂流记》和《奥德赛》。儿童虽不能领略书中深为大人喜爱的优美文笔和深刻含义，但读起来同样津津有味。

名著最有启发教益，因为它们都有独创的见解，包含了其他书籍未见的内容。不管人们最终是否赞同书中所述，它们仍然是人类智慧的启蒙老师，对人类思想使作出了根本性的贡献。

毋庸赘言，名著最有影响力。在学术研究的传统中。许多本人也是作家的读者，讨论研究各种名著很多，并著书发表己见，这样的书籍数不胜数，绝大部分已被世人遗忘。

名著探讨的是人生长期未解决的问题。世界上确实存在人类知识与思维尚不能解释的奥秘。对问题的探讨不仅始于惊奇，往往也终于惊奇。伟大的思想家会坦诚地承认奥秘的存在。这种对个人局限性的认识和承认，并无损于人类智慧，反而会增长智慧。

解析 在这个“there be”句型中，有两个定语从句，第一个是限定性定语从句，第二个是非限定性定语从句。在第一个定语从句中 useful 并列连词“either...or...”连接的两个不定式作目的状语。这里要注意，“there be”句型在译成汉语时，可常常不译为“有...”，特别是当主语有定语来修饰时。为了合乎汉语的表达，译文把目的状语放在了句首，而把后一个非限定定语从句译作了前置定语。

如果按照原句子结构，译为“儿童读起来津津有味，但领略不到书中深为大人所喜爱的优美文笔和深刻含义来”，这样读起来就会觉得强调的是后面的部分——“但是却领略不到...”，但从全文来看，说的是“何为名著”，之所以称之为“雅俗共赏”，是因为“儿童虽不能领略到...，但读起来同样津津有味”，这样才忠实地表达了原意。可见，在翻译时，不一定要拘泥于原文结构，而要在理解原文的基础上，使全篇译文前后一致，不能有前后矛盾之处。

此句的原文是很地道的英文，要表达同样的思想，中国人很难写出这样的英文，由于思维习惯上的差异，表达同样的思想，不同的民族会采用不同的表达方式。翻译时，应该按照本民族的语言习惯进行表述。译文将这句和前一句合并翻译，将两句中的被动语态都译作了主动语态，并重新选择了主语，译为“许多本人也是作家的读者，讨论研究各种名著很多，并著书发表己见，这样的书籍数不胜数，.....”，这样的译法很巧妙。只有在吃透原文的基础上，才能使译文贴切传神。

如果把原句直译为“世界上确实存在标志着人类知识与思维局限性的奥秘”就显得生硬，且有些费解，所以将定语从句意译为“人类知识与思维尚不能解释的”，既贴切于原文，有符合汉语表达。另外，在此句译文中又采用了词性转换的方法，把原文的形容词“genuine”转译为副词“确实”。

Passage Fourteen Smoking, though very common, is very harmful to people's health. Chronic bronchitis is not the most serious illness proved to be directedly connected with cigarette smoking. Lung

cancer is now so closely associated with heavy smoking that cancer research organization and public health authorities throughout the world have launched intensive campaigns directed against smoking. In several countries not only are cigarette advertisements banned from cinema and television screens, but cigarette manufacturers have to print on each packet of cigarettes a warning announcing the dangers of smoking. A startling factor which has recently come to light is the great increase in the number of deaths from lung cancer at a time when deaths from other types of cancer have decreased. The increase in deaths from lung cancer, moreover, has closely paralleled the increase in smoking this century. Statistics clearly show that among sufferers from lung cancer there is a much higher proportion of smokers than non-smokers. For example, heavy smokers stand a one-in-eight chance of getting lung cancer as compared with non-smokers, who stand a one-in-three hundred chance. Moreover, the death rate for heavy smokers is much higher than that for moderate smokers.

In addition to being a possible cause of lung cancer and chronic bronchitis, smoking is harmful for several other reasons. In the first place, it has also been proved beyond all doubt that the nicotine in tobacco smoke is poisonous. One minute drop of pure nicotine injected into the bloodstream of a rat is sufficient to kill it. One tablespoonful of pure nicotine will kill two hundred men. Secondly, it is known that the nicotine contained in tobacco smoke increases the pulse rate and raises the blood pressure. Thirdly, there is strong evidence that the nicotine content in cigarettes is a primary cause of loss of appetite (hence loss of weight) in heavy smokers. Finally, in adolescents smoking is known to retard growth and reduce athletic ability.

#### 参考译文

吸烟尽管普遍，对人的健康却是十分有害的。慢性支气管炎在已被证实的与吸烟有关的疾病中还不是最严重的，肺癌与大量吸烟关系如此密切以至于癌症研究组织和全球公众健康组织发起了一场反对吸烟的大规模运动。很多国家在电影院及电视屏幕上禁止播放香烟广告。而且香烟制造商必须在烟盒上印出吸烟有害的忠告。人们最近十分惊讶地了解到，正当其他癌症的死亡人数有所下降时，死于肺癌的人数却有很大增长，更有甚者，死于肺癌的人数与本世纪吸烟者的人数同步增加。统计数字清楚地显示出在那些得肺癌的人当中，吸烟者比例比不吸烟者要高的多。比如大吸烟者得肺癌的机率是1：8而非吸烟者的机率是1：30。而且大量吸烟者的死亡率也比少量吸烟者的死亡率要高的多。

除了会引起肺癌的慢性支气管炎以外，吸烟有害还有下述几个原因：首先烟草里的尼古丁已被确切证实是有毒的。一小滴纯尼古丁注射到老鼠的血液里就足以将其致死，一汤匙纯尼古丁可以使二百人丧生。其次，人们都知道烟草香烟里的尼古丁可以使脉搏加速，使血压增高。第三，有力的证据表明香烟里的尼古丁是大量吸烟者食欲不佳（因此体重减轻的）的主要原因。

最后一点要说的是，青少年吸烟会导致发育缓慢，运动能力下降。

解析 这是“so...that...”引导的结果状语从句，这里要注意，在that引导的结果从句中的时态是“现在完成时”，所以在译文中用了汉语特有的时间助词“了”来表示。另外，“...intensive cam-paigns directed against smoking”译作“大规模的反吸烟运动”，过去分词短语“directed against”只译作一个“反”字，忠实地表达了原意，不必逐字死译。

要想译成通顺的汉语，必须先分析句子的结构，这个句子包含了两个定语从句。“which has recently come to light”意为“最近被人们了解到的”，整个主语可译为“一个最近被人们了解到的令人惊讶的情况”，这样多少显得有些罗索，所以译作“人们最近惊讶地了解到”，更通顺明了。第二个定语从句是修饰时间状语的，因而译作一个时间状语从句“正当死于他癌症的人数有所下降时”，相应地，原文的表语“the great increase in the number of deaths from lung cancer”，译为一个句子“死于肺癌的人数却有很大增长”，这样，句子结构虽作了改变，但表达得更通顺自然。

句中的谓语动词“parallel”是“与.....平行，相似”之意，所以，在这里译为“同步增长”。

这个“there be”句型中包括了一个同位语从句，在翻译中，there be通常不译出来，这样，句子就缺少了谓语动词，而汉语是多动词的语言，所以，把原文的主语“evidence”又拆出来一个动词“表明”，这样的译文既紧扣了原文的意思，又符合汉语的表达习惯。

Passage Fifteen One of the most exciting questions to which scientists are seeking an answer is, "Are there living things anywhere in the universe? Is the earth the only body in the whole enormous universe where human beings or anything like human beings exist?"

Living things, like everything else, are made up of atoms, and these atoms are grouped into molecules. The molecules of living things are made up of hundreds or thousands of atoms arranged in different, complicated patterns.

If they become too hot, these complicated molecules of living things break up into their separate atoms and cease to be living. Therefore there cannot be life on the sun or any of the stars.

Living things need energy to grow or move. On earth plants and animals get their energy from the light and heat of the sun. Therefore planets that are very far from the sun and extremely cold are not places where living things could exist.

All plants and animals can live only on planets that have a suitable atmosphere. But neither Mars nor Venus has a suitable atmosphere. It seems that there are no intelligent beings in our solar system except on the earth.

But if there are planets round the sun, why there should not be planets around other stars? May not some of these be placed, like the earth, at just the right distance from their sun to have a suitable atmosphere and to be neither too hot nor too cold for life? Somewhere in space, millions and millions of miles away, there may be other

creatures, with brains as well-developed as ours, who are also reaching out in space to discover what else exists in this wonderful universe.

#### 参考译文

科学家们正寻求答案的一个最令人激动的问题是，“宇宙中是否有生物存在？在无边无际的宇宙中，地球是否是人类和类似人类的其他生物赖以生存的唯一天体？”

生物和别的东西一样，是由原子组成的，而这些原子又集合成分子。生物分子则由几百或几千个原子按各不相同的复杂的方式排列而成。

如果生物的这些复杂分子温度太高，它们就分裂成单个的原子而不复存在。因此在太阳或其他恒星上是不可能存在生命的。

生物需要能量才能生长和运动。地球上的动植物从太阳的光和热中获取能量。因此那些远离太阳因而十分寒冷的行星不是生物所能生存的地方。

一切动植物只能在有适当大气层的行星上生存，然而不论火星上还是金星上都没有这种适宜的大气层。因此在太阳系中，看来除了在地球上以外，是不会有智慧生物的。

但是，既然太阳周围有行星，为什么在其他恒星周围就不能有行星呢？难道就不可能有一些行星和地球一样，距它们自己的太阳不远不近，既有合适的大气层，又不冷不热，恰能适宜于生物生存吗？在亿万英里以外的太空中，有可能存在着智力和我们一样发达的其他生物，他们也正在太空中四处探索，想要查明在这个奇妙的宇宙中是否还存在着什么其他生命。

解析 这句中的过去分词短语“arranged in different, complicated patterns”作定语，如果按照原句子结构，可译为“生物分子是由几百或几千个按各不相同的复杂的方式排列的原子所组成”，译文正确，但前置定语略显太长，读起来有点别扭。所以，译文将过去分词短语译作了方式状语，而将句子的谓语“are made up of”和过去分词“arranged”的意思合二为一，全句译作“生物分子则由几百或几千个原子按各不相同的复杂的方式排列而成”，这样的译文更顺畅一些，同时和上文的过渡就更自然。

这是一个条件状语从句，主句中的并列谓语之一“cease to be living”在这里不能直译为“停止存在”，译文将其译作“不复存在”，很达意，也很符合汉语表达习惯。

主语的定语从句“that are very far from the sun and extremely cold”中的“and”是用来表明结果的，所以，译作了“远离太阳因而十分寒冷的行星”。又如，She was sick and took some medicine. 她生病，所以吃药。

此句中的“placed”是谓语动词，和后面的“at just the right distance”合译为“距它们自己的太阳不远不近”这又恰好和后面的不定式结果状语“to be neither too hot nor too cold”“不冷不热”译成了平行结构。翻译时，在忠实于原文的前提下，如果能使译文在句式上讲究一些工整，对仗，将更使译文增色。

Passage Sixteen You know you have to read “between the lines” to get the most out of anything. I want to persuade you to do something equally important in the course of your reading. I want to persuade you to “write between the lines”. Unless you do, you are not likely to do the most efficient kind of reading.

You shouldn't mark up a book which isn't yours. Librarians (or your friends) who lend you books expect you to keep them clean, and you should.

If you decide that I am right about the usefulness of marking books, you will have to buy them.

There are two ways in which one can own a book. The first is the property right you establish by paying for it, just as you pay for clothes and furniture. But this act of purchase is only the prelude to possession. Full ownership comes only when you have made it part of yourself, and the best way to make yourself part of it is by writing in it. An illustration may make the point clear. You buy a beefsteak and transfer it from the butcher's icebox to your own. But you do not own the beefsteak in the most important sense until you consume it and get it into your bloodstream. I am arguing that books, too, must be absorbed in your bloodstream to do you any good.

There are three kinds of book owners. The first has all the standard sets and best-sellers—unread, untouched. (This individual owns woodpulp and ink, not books.) The second has a great many books—a few of them read through, most of them dipped into, but all of them as clean and shiny as the day they were bought. (This person would probably like to make books his own, but is restrained by a false respect for their physical appearance.) The third has a few books or many—every one of them dogeared and dilapidated, shaken and loosened by continual use, marked and scribbled in from front to back. (This man owns books.)

#### 参考译文

你知道读书要“深入字里行间”，以求最充分的理解。我劝你在读书过程中做一件同样重要的事情。我想劝你“在字里行间写字”。不这样做，你的读书就不可能是最有效的。你不应该在不是你自己的书上做记号。借给你书的图书管理员（或你的朋友）希望你保持书的整洁，再说你也应该这样做。如果你认为我说的在书上做记号颇有益处这番话是对的话，你就得买书。

一个人拥有书的方法有两种，第一种是花钱取得财产所有权，就像你花钱买衣服和家具一样。但花钱买书只是占有它的前奏。只有在你将它化为你自己的一部分之后，你才完全占有了它。而把你自己变为书的一部分的最好方法就是在书中写字。打个比方也许可以把这一点说清楚。你买下一块牛排，把它从肉铺的冰箱里转移到你的冰箱中。但从最重要的意义上来说，你还没有占有它，除非你吃下它并将它吸收到你的血液中。我的论点是，书的营养也只有在被吸收进你的血液中时，才能对你有所裨益。

书籍拥有者可以分为三种。第一种人藏有全部标准的成套书和畅销书——既没有读过，也没有碰过。（这位占有的只是纸浆和油墨，而不是书。）第二种人藏书很多——有几本从头至尾读过，大部分浅尝辄止，但全都跟新买时一样整洁光亮。（此君很可能想使书真的为其所有，但因错误地过分关注书籍的外观而裹足不前。）第三种人藏书或多或少——因不断使用，每本书都弄成书角卷起，破旧不堪，装订破损，书面松散，全书从扉页至末页画满了记号，涂满了字句。（此人是书的真正拥有者。）

解析 当“decide”后面跟that从句时，意思是“断定”、“认为”；

其宾语从句 “I am right about the usefulness of marking books” 译作 “我说的在书上做记号颇有益处这番话是对的”，译文增加了“说的...这番话...”，是为了使译文更通顺自然。在翻译时，有时可以增加原文中虽无其词但有其意的词，目的是为了更忠实于原文，使译文读起来更符合汉语的表达习惯。

这句的关键在主谓语 “full ownership comes”，这样的结构不宜直接译为汉语，所以，根据原文的意思意译为“你才完全占有了它”。可见，理解原文是翻译的前提，在这个前提下，译文不必拘泥于原文结构，而要符合汉语的表达习惯。

“...not...until...” 一般译作“...直到...才...”，但和前一句 “You buy a beefsteak and transfer it from the butcher's icebox to your own” 联系起来看，如果译作“但是直到你将其消化并吸收到血液中才在真正意义上拥有”，便显得和上文不够连贯，因为此句句首的 “but” 是转折连词，它在这里强调了 “but you do not own the beefsteak” 中的 “not” 的否定意味，所以译作“但从最重要的意义上来说，你还没有占有它，除非你吃下它并将它吸收到你的血液中。”

这句中的 “...but is restrained by a false respect for their physical appearance” 如果直译为“但受到对书籍的外观的错误尊敬的限制”虽能使读者明白其意，但读起来显然不是通达的汉语，译文“但因错误过分关注书籍的外观而裹足不前”中将原文的 “false” 转译为副词，同时对于它所修饰的原名词 “respect”（相应地转译成了动词）重新进行了词意选择，译作“过分关注”，这样译文便更达意，更明了。

Passage Seventeen One of the greatest advances in modern technology has been the invention of computers. They are already used in industry and in universities, and the time has come when ordinary people can use them as well. Computers are capable of doing extremely complicated work in all branches of learning. They can solve the most complex mathematical problems or put thousands of unrelated facts in order. Because they work accurately and at high speed, they save research workers years of hard work. This whole process by which machines can be used to work for us has been called automation.

Some time ago an expert on automation pointed out that it was a mistake to believe that these machines could "think". There is possibility that human beings will be “controlled by machines”. As computers need detailed instructions from human beings in order to be able to operate, they can never “rule the world” by making decisions of their own.

Computers could be plugged into a national network and be used like radios. For instance, people going on holiday could be informed about weather conditions; car drivers could be given alternative routes when there are traffic jams. It will also be possible to make tiny translating machines. This will enable people who do not share a common language to talk to each other without much difficulty or to read foreign publications. In hospitals where computers are used, diagnosis



becomes quicker and more accurate. Computers can even write out prescriptions.

Computers are the most efficient assistants man has ever had and there seems to be no limit to the way in which they can be used to improve our lives.

#### 参考译文

现代技术最大成就之一就是计算机的发明。计算机已在工业上和大学内得到了广泛的应用，普通人也能使用计算机的日子已经到来。计算机能在所有的学术领域进行极其复杂的工作，它们能解非常复杂的数学问题，或者把成千上万份毫不相关的资料整理得井井有条。由于计算机能精确而高速地工作，这就代替了研究人员成年累月的艰苦劳动，这种用机器来为人们工作的一整套过程，就叫做自动化。

不久以前，一位自动化专家指出，那种认为这些计算机具有“思维”能力的想法是错误的。人类绝不会“受机器操纵”。计算机需要人为它提供详尽的指令才工作，因而它绝对不可能自作主张地来“统治世界”。计算机可以接入全国性网络，而像收音机一样使用。比如，假日外出旅游的人们可以向它了解天气情况；汽车驾驶员在交通堵塞时可以向它询问别的行车路线；同时还将有可能会造出小型的翻译机器，这就使得操不同语言的人们可以不费力地相互交谈，或阅读各种外文出版物。在使用计算机的医院里，病情诊断可变得又快又准确，计算机甚至还会开处方。

计算机是人类迄今为止拥有的效率最高的助手，它可以改善我们的生活，其前景看来是无限广阔的。

解析正如前面所指出的，被动语态在科技英语中用法极其普遍，本文就有多处用了被动语态。我们前文说过，汉语中被动语态的用法远不如英语中那么广泛，所以，在翻译中，英语的被动语态多译成汉语的主动语态。在译作主动结构时，有时译作汉语的无主句，如 中的定语从句 by which machines can be used to work for us 译作“用机器来为人们工作的（整套过程）”；有时仍用原文的主语在译文中作主语，如 中的 they are already widely used in industry and in universities “计算机已在工业上和大学内得到了广泛的应用”； 中的“the whole process..... has been called automation”——“这整套过程就叫作自动化”，以及 中的“people going on holiday could be informed about weather conditions; car drivers could be given alternative routes...”——“假日外出旅游的人们可以向它了解天气情况；汽车驾驶员可以向它询问别的行车路线”。

中包含了一个定语从句—there seems to be no limit to the way in which they can be used to improve our lives. 定语从句又是被动语态，这个被动语态仍翻译为汉语的主动结构“它可以改善我们生活”，另外，这个句子如果按照英语的结构直译成汉语，就会很不通顺，所以，把它拆开来译作“.....它可以改善我们生活，其前景看来是无限广阔的”。

Passage Eighteen The original radar combined two things, as its English name RADAR showed: Radio Detection And Ranging. (Detection is finding something as the result of a search; Ranging is finding the exact distance.)

When we are travelling along in a ship or an aeroplane at night

or in fog, we are much happier if we know that the captain of the ship, or the pilot of the plane, knows where rocks or mountain tops are, so that he can keep away from them. Until the Second World War, travellers could never have this feeling of safety, because there was no way of "seeing" dangers through fog and cloud. But now there is "radar", a wonderful wartime invention, which has saved the lives of many thousands, both in war and in peace.

Radar is not too difficult a thing for ordinary people to understand. All of us have heard echoes: We speak in a large hall or before a wall of rock, and our voices come back to us, echoed by the hard substance which they hit. Scientists know the speed at which sound travels, so it is possible for them to measure the distance of a wall of rock by making a loud sound and seeing how long it takes to reach the wall and return to the place from which it started.

But sound travels too slowly and cannot go far enough to be useful over long distances. Now it has been known for many years that wireless waves travel at very great speed; it takes them less than four seconds to go from the earth to the moon and come back. But the difficult thing is to measure the time they take to go a short distance, for example, to go from a ship to the shore, or from an aeroplane to a mountain near it.

With radar, we can "see" things at a great distance, and it shows us how far away they are, in which direction they lie, and what movements they are making. The captain of a ship can find his way between rocks and other ships, and the soldiers guarding a town can see enemy aeroplanes hundreds of miles away.

#### 参考译文

最初的雷达正如它的英文名称“雷达”(RADAR—Radio Detection and Ranging)所表示的那样,包括两个方面:无线电测物和测距。(无线电测物是指靠搜索发现目标,而无线电测距是指测出目标的确切距离)。

当我们乘船或飞机在夜里或雾中旅行时,如果我们知道船长或飞行员熟悉礁石或山顶的位置,从而能及时避开的话,我们会感到十分欣慰。在第二次世界大战之前,旅客们从来不曾有过这种安全感,因为那时尚无透过云雾“看见”危险的方法。但现在有“雷达”了,而且这是一项很出色的战时的发明,它不论在战争时期还是平时,都拯救了成千上万人的生命。

雷达对于普遍人来说也不是难以理解的东西。大家都听到过回声:当我们在一个大厅里或是在一堵石壁前面说话时,我们的声音碰到坚硬的物质便发出回声,而这个回声也会传到我们耳朵里来。科学家知道声音传播的速度,因此,只要发出一个宏亮的声音,就可以根据这个声音传到石壁再返回原地所需要的时间,测出石壁的距离。

但声音传播得太慢,而且又传播不远,因而距离一远就没有用处了。多年来,大家都知道无线电波传播非常迅速,它从地球传到月球再返回地球所需的时间不到四秒钟。但是要测量它传播一个短距离,比如说,从一艘船到海岸或是从一架飞机到附近一座山峰所需的时间,可就困难了。

有了雷达，我们就能够“看到”距离很远的物体，它能告诉我们这些物体有多远，在哪个方向，以及它们做什么样的运动。船长能够在礁石和其它船只之间找出航道。而守卫着城市的士兵则能看到几百英里以外的敌机。

解析 这是一个多层复合句，主句中又包含了宾语从句，宾语从句中又套了一个宾语从句，而在这后一个宾语从句中又含了一个“so that”引导的目的状语从句，碰到这类复杂句时，首先要把句子结构分析清楚，再按照内在的逻辑关系，把它们译成汉语，必要时还可以调整句子结构。

这是一个简单的“there be”句型，主语“radar”有一个同位语“a wonderful wartime invention”和一个非限定性定语从句，翻译时基本采用了顺译法，将其中的同位语前增加了“而且”二字，把原文内含的意思表达了出来。另外，由于定语从句较长，不适于译为前置定语，所以，将其译成了一个并列分句。

这句的关键在方式状语短语“by making a loud sound and seeing how long it takes to reach the wall and return to the place from which it started”如果直译为“通过发出一个宏亮的声音，来看看这个声音传到石壁再返回原地所需要的时间”虽达意，但略显生硬，所以把第一个分词独立出来译作“只要发出一个宏亮的声音”，后一个分词短语仍译作方式状语“根据这个声音传到石壁再返回原地所需要的时间”，这样处理既忠实于原文，又表达得通顺。

“It is well known that...”句型译成汉语时常常通过将原文中的主语译成宾语，同时增补泛指性的词语（人们、大家等）作主语来译成汉语的主动语态，故此句译为“多年来，大家都知道无线电波传播非常迅速...”，类似的结构还有：“It is asserted that...”（有人主张...）；“It will be said...”（有人会说...）；“It is believed that...”（有人认为...）等。

Passage Nineteen Today more and more people in the U.S. are using credit cards instead of money to buy the things they need. Almost anyone who has a steady income and a continuous work record can apply for a credit card.

If you have a credit card, you can buy a car, eat a dinner, take a trip, and even get a haircut by charging the cost to your account. In this way you can pay for purchases a month or two later, without any extra charge. Or you may choose to spread out your payments over several months and pay only part of the total amount each month. If you do this, the credit company or the bank who sponsors the credit cards will add a small service charge to your total bill. This is very convenient for the customer. With the credit card in your wallet or purse, you don't have to carry much cash. This saves you trips to the bank to cash checks or withdraw cash. Also if you carry credit cards instead of a lot of cash, you don't have to be concerned about losing your money through carelessness or theft. The card user only has to worry about paying the final bill. This of course can be a problem if you charge more than you can pay for.

Credit card companies make a profit from the fees they charge the store and also from the fees collected from customers who pay for their

charges in monthly installments. However, credit card companies sometimes have problems collecting overdue payments from unreliable customers. Also, the uses of stolen, lost, or counterfeit credit cards by criminals has become a big headache for the credit card company that is responsible for the goods and services illegally charged to its customers' account.

#### 参考译文

今天，越来越多的美国人不用货币，而用信用卡购买他们所需要的物品。几乎每个有固定收入和持续不断工作的证据的人都可以申请信用卡。

如果你有了信用卡，便能以记账的方式购车、进餐、游泳甚至理发。这样你就可以在一两个月后交付货款而无须另加费用。要不你就分几个月付款，每月只交其中的一部分。你要是这么办，那么经办信用卡的公司或银行便会往你的总额里多加一笔小额的佣金。这种办法对用户来说，真是太方便了。钱包里有了信用卡，你就不必携带许多现金。这也省得你来回跑银行兑支票或取现金，还有，如果你携带信用卡而不是大笔现款，也就不必担因为不慎或遇窃而丧失钱财。信用卡的使用者只须为最后付清账单而劳神。要是用度大于支付能力，这当是个问题。

信用卡公司从商店的缴费以及从客户按月交付的款项中获取利润。然而，信用卡公司有时也有麻烦，得向不牢靠的客户索取愈期未交的款项，而且，还有犯罪分子使用盗得失主的或伪造的信用卡的问题，这些事情真叫信用卡公司大伤脑筋，因为客户的账目中如果出现非法记入的商品和劳务支付，公司就得承担全部责任。

解析 此句的介词短语“by charging the cost to your account”是方式状语，译文中置于谓语动词的前面，“以记账的方式购车、进餐……”。

这句是采用词性转换译法的典型例子，如果把句子的“trips”仍译为名词“旅行”，就会显得很生硬，所以转译为动词“跑”——这也省得你来回跑银行兑支票或取现金。

“charge more than you can pay for”中的‘charge’意为‘记账’，这里是指用信用卡支付，所以按照意思表达为“用度大于支付能力”。

这个长句的难点在于其中的定语从句，因为定语从句中又含了一个作定语的过去分词短语，定语太长，不宜译作前置定语，故将其独立成句置于句末。又因为定语从句中的过去分词短语在这里有假设的意味在内，所以，在翻译时用了相应的汉语词“如果”，将其译作“如果出现非法记入的商品和劳务支付”。

Passage Twenty Foreign trade, the exchange of goods between nations, takes place for many reasons. The first, as mentioned above, is that no nation has all of the commodities that it needs. Raw materials are scattered around the world. Large deposits of copper are mined in Peru and Zaire, diamonds are mined in South Africa and petroleum is recovered in the Middle East. Countries that do not have these resources within their own boundaries must buy from countries that export them.

Foreign trade also occurs because a country does not have enough of a particular item to meet its needs. Although the United States

is a major producer of sugar, it consumes more than it can produce internally and thus must import sugar.

Third, one nation can sell some items at a lower cost than other countries. Japan has been able to export large quantities of radios and television sets because it can produce them more efficiently than other countries. It is cheaper for the United States to buy these from Japan than to produce them domestically. According to economic theory, Japan should produce and export those items from which it derives a comparative advantage. It should also buy and import what it needs from those countries that have a comparative advantage in the desired items.

Finally, foreign trade takes place because of innovation or style.

Even though the United States produces more automobiles than any other country, it still imports large numbers of autos from Germany, Japan and Sweden, primarily because there is a market for them in the United States.

#### 参考译文

对外贸易的存在，即国家之间商品交换的存在，其原因很多。首先，如上所述，任何国家都不可能拥有它所需要的一切商品。原料广泛分布于世界各地。国内缺乏上述资源的国家必须向出口国购买。

对外贸易存在的另一个原因是，一个国家生产的某种商品的数量往往不能满足它自身的需求。虽然美国必须进口食糖。

第三，有的国家能够出售比别国生产成本低的某些商品。日本之所以能够出口大量的飞机和电视机，是因为日本的生产效率高于别国。对于美国来说，进口日本货要比自己生产合算。根据经济理论，日本应该生产和出口那些自己需要的、别国也因生产费用较低而获利的产品。

最后，产品的设计或式样各不相同，也是产生对外贸易的原因。尽管美国的汽车产量居世界首位，但它仍从德国、日本和瑞典进口大量汽车，主要是因为美国市场上有这种需要。

解析 此句为并列句，并更的三个谓语动词都用了被动语态（mined, mined 和 recovered），翻译时都译作了主动语态——秘鲁和扎伊尔采掘大铜矿，非出产钻石，中东开采石油。英语的被动语态在译成汉语时多用主动语态来表达，具体情况详见第三章英译汉技巧中“被动语态的译法”一节。

这是一个让步状语从句，主句中用了比较结构“it consumes more than it can produce internally...”，如果直译为“在国内它消费得要比生产得多...”虽然也表达了原文的意思，但不十分符合汉语的表达习惯，所以，翻译时采用了“词性转换”的方法，将其中的动词“consume”和“produce”转译为名词“消费呈量”和“生产量”。

句中包含了一个定语从句“from which it derives a comparative advantage”如果直译为“可以从中获得比较利润的（产品）”就表达得不太明确，所以，为了更忠实地表达原文，在译文中用了“增词”的手段，译作“因生产费用较低而获利的（产品）”。

“even though”在句中引导了让步状语从句，从句中的“produces more automobiles than any other country”没有直译为“比任何国家生产的汽车都多”，而是译为更符合汉语表达习惯的“...汽车产量居世界首位”。

Passage Twenty-one An "apple-polisher" is one who gives gifts or uses flattery to excess to win friendship or special treatment. It is not exactly a bribe, but it is close to it.

"Apple polishing" is as old as human society, but the phrase itself is recent, about fifty years old. It comes from the school-room. For a long time, some schoolboys would leave a shiny apple on a teacher's desk.

They would rub and polish the apple to give it a bright shine, to make it look more tasty. Such a gift, the student hoped, might make the teacher shut her eyes to his poor work and give him a good mark.

Many people are apple polishers. Politicians and people in high offices often use the technique, as do ambitious subordinates who wish to rise in position, thanks to the favor of a superior.

There are other phrases that give the same meaning as "apple polishing". One is "soft-soaping"; another is "buttering up".

All these phrases imply the use of flattery-telling someone how good he looks, how well he speaks, or how talented and wise he is. In English, these are all terms of mild opprobrium when directed at the flatterer.

Flattery is the cheapest form of "apple polishing". To flatter costs nothing, and you can give it as freely as necessary. A flatterer can always find somebody eager for flattery.

#### 参考译文

“擦苹果的人”是指利用送礼或过分阿谀奉承为手段来获取友谊或特殊待遇的人。确切地说，它虽不是贿赂，但也相去不远。

“擦苹果”这种事情自有人类社会以来就存在于世，但这一用语本身却很新，大约只有五十年的历史。这一短语最早来源于学校的教室。有很长一段时间，一些学生总在老师的讲桌上放置一只晶莹发亮的苹果。

他们把苹果擦得锃亮，使它显得更加美味可口。学生希望这样的礼物会使老师不顾他的低劣作业而给他打高分。

许多人是擦苹果的人。政客们和高官厚禄的人往往利用这种手段，那些野心勃勃、企图得到上极青睐而向上爬的人也往往利用这种手段。

还有和“擦苹果”一词意义相同的其他词语。一个是“抹软肥皂”；另一个是“涂黄油”。送礼就是给某人“抹软肥皂”或“涂黄油”的一咱手段。所有这些词语都是指利用阿谀奉承的手段，告诉别人说他长得多么漂亮，谈吐多么动听，多有天资和才智。在英语中，当人们形容那些善于拍马屁的时，这些都是温和的贬义词。

阿谀奉承是一种最廉价的“擦苹果”的方式。拍马屁、说讨好话不费吹灰之力，需要多少你可以说多少，而且拍马屁的人总能找到渴望别人恭维的人。

Passage Twenty-two Money is not only a means of exchange but is also a means of measuring the value of men's labour. In economic theory, 'labour' is any work undertaken in return for a fixed payment. The work undertaken by a mother in caring for her children may be hard work,

but it receives no fixed payment. It is not therefore labour in the strict economic sense.

As a scientist, the economist is interested in measuring the services which people render to each other. Although he is aware of the services which people provide for no financial reward, he is not concerned with these services. He is interested essentially in services which are measurable in terms of money payments of a fixed and or regular nature. In economics, money is the standard by which the value of things is judged. This standard is not a religious or subjective standard, but an objective and scientific one.

human labour produces both goods and services. The activities of a farmworker and nurse are very different, but both are measurable in terms of payment received. Labour in this sense is not concerned with distinctions of social class, but simply with the payment of wages in return for work. When we talk about 'the national labour force', however, we are thinking of all those people who are available for work within the nation, i. e. the working population.

#### 参考译文

货币不但是交换手段，而且还是衡量人们劳动价值的手段。在经济理论上，“劳动”是为换取固定报酬而从事的任何工作。母亲照料自己孩子的工作也许是辛苦的，但这种工作得不到固定的报酬，所以从严格的经济意义上来说并不是劳动。

作为一个科学工作者，经济学家所注意的是如何衡量人们互相提供的服务。尽管他知道有不为任何金钱报酬提供的服务，但他对这种服务并不关心。他只要注意那些能用固定数额、定期支付的货币来衡量的服务。在经济学里，货币是评定各种事物价值的标准。这不是宗教的或主观的标准，而是客观的和科学的标准。

人类的劳动既生产商品，也提供服务。农业工人和护士所做的事情差别很大，但都可用所得的报酬来衡量。从这个意义上讲，劳动与社会的阶级差别无关，而只和酬劳工作的工资报偿有关。然而，当我们谈论“全国的劳动力”时，我们想到的是全国所有能参加劳动的人，即劳动人口。

Passage Twenty-three There is a strong religious influence in American life, but it is characterized by a diversity of belief, a concern with the improving conditions of present-day society, and a separation of church and state which allows freedom of worship in which this diversity can flourish.

The religious life in the United States shows a diversity of practice. There are three aspects, however, that are perhaps most characteristic of the country and that most often receive comment by foreign visitors. First is the wide variety of denominations and the attitude of permissiveness and tolerance that exists among them. Nowhere else is there such a diversity.

The reason for this diversity can be found in the history of the country. the various national groups that settled in the United States

brought their own religions with them. More than twenty different Lutheran groups may be identified, many of which are separated on the basis of language. Many groups of settlers came in order to have their own particular form of religion, and a number of offshoots of European churches are represented in America. The American environment stimulated the practice of religious independence. The historic American belief in individuality and American dislike of being regimented fostered denominationalism.

#### 参考译文

在美国人的生活中，宗教的影响很深，但它的特征是：信仰多样化，关心改进当前的社会状况，政教分离。正是由于政教分离，才有信仰自由，从而各种各样的教派才得以蓬勃发展。

美国的宗教生活有多种多样的方式。然而有三个方面也许最能说明这个国家的特色，也最常引起国外来访者的评论。首先是种类繁多的宗教派别，以及它们之间所采取的忍让态度。其他任何地方都没有这种多样性。

之所以有这么多的宗教派别，其原因可以人这个国家的历史中找到。不同的民族集团移居美国时也把他们的宗教随着带来了。可以查明的不同的路德会教派就有二十多个，其中有许多是根据语言而自成一派的。许多移民团体是为了保持他们特殊的宗教信仰才来美国定居的，这样就使欧洲许多教派的分支在美国都有了代表。美国的环境促进了宗教方面独立性的惯常做法。美国人历来主张尊重个性，不喜欢受严密的组织约束也助长了成立许多宗教派别的倾向。

Passage Twenty-four You've had no symptoms, no pain, so sense of being sick. Yet, after wrapping a flexible cuff around your arm and pumping it up, your doctor frowns and gives you the bad news: you are one of the roughly 60 million Americans who have high blood pressure.

Because it can lurk in the body without your knowing it, high blood pressure has been called the silent killer. It's the leading cause of strokes and a major factor in heart attacks to kidney failure.

The good news is that thanks to an explosion of research, science now knows how to defuse the danger and control the disease. Depending on how high your pressure is, how you live and what changes you're willing to make in your lifestyle, treatment can be tailored specifically to you.

It is generally thought that salt is a culprit in this disease and many doctors prescribe a low—salt diet. They encourage cooking without salt, banning the salt shaker from the dinner table and avoiding smoked meats, potato chips and other highly salted foods.

Most doctors also advise cutting down on coffee and tobacco, because caffeine and nicotine are stimulants, and limiting alcohol intake. Many physicians urge outdoor exercise, including brisk walking, biking, swimming or jogging, which helps you with long term weight control and daily stress.

Relaxation Therapy. If you read the previous sentence out loud,



your blood pressure will go up. If you talk to another person, it will go still higher. If the conversation is with your boss, your pressure will go even higher. If you speak to someone of the opposite sex, your pressure may show less change if you're married than if you're single.

Dozens of times each day, your blood pressure zigzags, adjusting to what you're feeling and doing. These ups and downs take place in everyone, but the swings are more severe in people with high blood pressure. That discovery is the basis for the newest therapy: controlling blood pressure by learning techniques to control everyday stress.

#### 参考译文

你没有症状，没有疼痛，没有生病的感觉。然而在医生把一条活动的袖带缠住你的手臂并用气泵压气之后，他却皱着眉头告诉你一条坏消息：你是大约六千万患高血压的美国人中的一员了。

高血压能潜伏在人体而不为人所知，所以它被称作无声的杀手。它是中风的主要原因，是引起心脏病发作和肾功能衰竭的主要因素。

值得庆幸的是，由于进行了大量的研究工作，科学研究现已知道怎样预防危险并控制该病。依据你的血压高度，你的生活方式以及你愿意在生活方式上作些什么改变，可以为你拟出特定的治疗方案。

一般认为食盐是这种病的原因，于是许多医生建议低盐饮食。他们提倡无盐烹调，把盐从餐桌上拿开，并且不吃熏肉、油炸土豆片和其他高盐食品。

大多数医生也建议少喝咖啡、少吸烟，因为咖啡因和尼古丁是刺激物质，还要限制酒精摄入量。很多医生鼓励户外活动，包括轻松的散步，骑自行车，游泳或者慢跑。这些能帮助你长期控制体重，克服日常紧张情绪。

放松疗法。如果你把前面的句子读出来，你的血压就会升高。如果你和另外一个人谈话，血压升得更高。如果同你的老板交谈，血压升得还要高。同异性变话，结了婚的比单身的血压变化要小些。

随着你感情的变化以及所做的事情的不同，你的血压每天升升降降几十次。这些变化发生在每一个人身上，但在高血压患者身上表现尤为剧烈。这一发现就是此种疗法的基础：靠学会控制日常紧张情绪的办法控制血压。

Passage Twenty-five On the list of important human needs is a sense of belonging. That means the child knows he is part of a family, of a community and that he or she fits in. After belonging comes the need for love, then the need for self-esteem and finally the need for self-actualization. The need for love from parents, family, friends, and others is so very basic it includes all others. Persons who do not feel loved suffer many problems in their lives. They get angry, sometimes violent with others, or else they become very cold and unfeeling people since they do not know how to give or receive love.

Self-esteem means you respect yourself and your own worth. Self-actualization is, according to Maslow, the ultimate achievement of mature human beings. It means you have learned to give and receive love, you know you belong in a group, you respect yourself and others, and you wish to share with others.

Well, what has this to do with values? It has a great deal to do with values since we come to our values throughout life as result of how we have responded to our basic human needs such as those just mentioned. For example, why did Americans place family security first on their list of values? Partly because they know, as you do, that without physical comfort and love and the sense of belonging a family provides its children, we cannot become healthy adults. If we feel comfortable with ourselves and others it means we can trust them and that trust we learned, or should have learned, at home in our families.

The second value on the American list is a world at peace which is an extension of what we have just said about a family at peace and providing love, security and a sense of belonging. All of these very basic feelings stay with us all our lives and affect how we behave as well as how we think about many problems.

#### 参考译文

在人类各项重要的需要中是依属感，就是说孩子需要知道他是家庭的一部分，是他所属的社会集团的一分之。依属感之后继之而来的是爱的需要，再就是自尊的需要，最后是实现自我的需要。需要父母、家庭、朋友以及他人的爱是最基本的，它无所不包。感受不到为人所爱的人，生活中有许多问题使他痛苦烦恼。他生气，有时对人凶暴，要不就变得十分冷漠，毫无感情，因为他不知道如何爱人，也不懂得如何接受别人的爱。

自尊是对自己和自己价值的尊重。按马斯洛的说法，自我实现是成熟的人的最高成就，它指得是你学会爱别人和被别人爱，你知道自己是属于集团的，你尊重自己，也尊重他人，希望和大家苦乐共享。

那么这与价值标准有什么关系呢？关系大得很，因为我们一生之中自始至终是通过对刚才提到的那些人类的基本需要所作的反应来决定我们的价值标准的。例如为什么美国人把身家安全放在价值标准的第一位？部分的原因是，美国人知道，正像您知道那样，没有家庭给予的物质的上舒适、爱与依属感，他们就不能健康地成长。倘若我们感到自身和他人相处十分和谐，这就意味着我们能够信赖他们，而这种信赖我们在自己的家庭里就已经学会了或应该已经学会了。

美国价值标准的第二项是和平的世界，这是我们刚才说过的一个充满爱、安全而又给人以依属感的和睦家庭的延伸。所有这些基本而又基本的感情与我们同生共灭，影响我们对许多问题的看法和我们的行为。

Passage Twenty-six The newest wrinkle in the old game of courtship is match-making by computer. It goes something like this: a young man lists in a "data-bank" what he most desires in a prospective female companion and supplies information about his own characteristics. The computer compares the qualities and interests desired against those of an inventory of candidates who have also put themselves on file. After some adjustment and compromise, our young man is presented with the name, address and telephone number of a "Miss Just-Right-and-very-nice-too." Since electronic match-making is not quite yet an exact science, he may also be informed of a few

alternates ...in case something goes wrong and he doesn't quite hit it off with Miss Just-Right.

The fact that many "computerized introduction services" are pretty much fly-by-night operations does not mean that computer match-making is unworkable in principle. If marital fecility can be accurately defined, then it would seem that a compatible marriage partner would more likely be found among the thousands of candidates to which a computer could refer than among the handful that any one person could ever meet face to face.

#### 参考译文

在旧的求婚方式中，最近出现了一个创新的办法，那就是由计算机做媒。情况大致是这样：一个年轻小伙子把他对未来的女性伴侣最合乎心意的要求输入“数据库”，并提供有关他自己的一些特征信息。计算机把他所希求的品质和爱好同那些已将个人情况存入档的若干候选人的表格所开列的品质和爱好加以比较。经过一番调整和折中考虑，计算机给我们这个年轻人提供一位“非常合适且人才出众的小姐”的姓名、地址和电话号码。由于计算机做媒还不完全是一门精确的科学，他还可以得到关于几位候选人的信息……如果发生什么差错，或他不很中意的话。

许多“计算机化的婚姻介绍机构”的业务可靠性不强，但这一事实并不意味着计算机做媒在原则上是行不通的。如果我们能够给美满婚姻下个确切的定义，那么计算机从几千名候选人当中挑选出来的婚姻伴侣，似乎要比任何个人从他亲自接触到的为数不多的人当中挑选出来的更为合适。

## 第四篇 写作

### 第一章 高分文章的标准及写法

不同的英语作文考试，评分标准也不尽相同。欲在入学英语考试作文项拿高分，就必须对该项考试的评分标准了如指掌。为此，该章将详细分析高分档（15-13分）作文的评分标准。并且，在逐条分析高分档评分标准后，对考生如何达到各条评分标准的办法，予以介绍。

15-13分评分标准：内容切题，包括提纲的全部要点；表达清楚，文字连贯；句式有变化，句子结构和用词正确。

#### 一、内容切题，包括提纲的全部要点

评分标准的第一项即要求文章切题并包括提纲的全部要点。那末如何达到这一标准呢？

首先，切勿在拿到作文题后，唯恐时间不够，提笔就写。一定要认真审题，审题时注意抓住提纲的关键词以及各提纲要点之间的逻辑关系。

其次，审题后，要注意安排设计段落。每段的主题句（Topic sentence）都要根据提纲来确定，这样就会使文章切题，结构严谨，层次分明。

最后，切忌将记忆里的美妙句子生拉硬扯地弄进作文，使作文结构、意思松散、甚至离题。

#### 二、表达清楚，文字连贯

文章要做到表达清楚、文字连贯，文章各段落就必须根据提纲确立不同的主题句。而且，各段落的主题句将段落的各个部分凝聚在一起，流利地表现段落所要表现的思想，使读者能够轻松地理解段落中此部分与彼部分的关系。此外，为了使文章清楚、连贯，我们还可以用一些连接词，引导读者的思维从一个句子过渡到另一个句子。

下面列出的一些较为常见的连接词：

on one hand, on the other hand, for one thing, for another thing, to begin with, firstly, first of all, besides, in addition, what's more, moreover, most of all, accordingly, consequently, hence, thus, nevertheless, yet, however, in short, in brief, on the whole, to sum up, as a result, in conclusion, in contract 等。

请看下面两个段落，由于作者采用了明确的主题句及明显的连接词，便达到了整个段落主题思想清楚、文字浑然一体的效果。

#### The "women's Lib" and the Vocabulary of English

The "women's" lib movement toward greater equality for women has produced some permanent changes in the vocabulary of English. The first change is that new words have been added. The words "feminist" "sexist" and "male chauvinist" for example became common during the past ten years or so. Another new word is the title Ms which is often used in place of both Miss and Mrs. A second change is that sexist

titles of many job occupations have been neutralized. A chairman is now a "chairperson", a businessman is a "businessperson" and a salesman is a "salesperson". Moreover a mailman is now a "mail carrier" and an airline stewardess is now a "flight attendant."

Finally attempts to give equal treatment to masculine and feminine pronouns in English have led to the search for a new pronoun form to replace he (as he/she or s/he) when referring to neutral nouns such as the student. In my opinion some of the new words such as Ms are quite useful: you can use Ms to address a woman when you don't know if she is married. On the other hand the lack of a clear neutral pronoun can lead to awkward sentence construction.

### The causes of Inflation

Inflation is an economic condition in which prices for consumer goods increase and the value of money or purchasing power decreases. There are three important causes of inflation. The first and the most important cause may be excessive government spending. For example, in order to finance a war or carry out social programs, the government may spend more money than it has received through taxes and other revenue, thus creating a deficit. In order to offset this deficit, the Treasury Department can simply expand the money supply by issuing more paper money to meet the debts of government. This increase in the money supply will cause the value of the dollar to automatically decrease. The second cause of inflation occurs when the money supply increases faster than the supply of goods. If people have more money, they will run out to buy popular goods like televisions and computers, for example, and a shortage will result. Industry will then produce more at higher prices to satisfy demand. Furthermore, if people think that the prices of popular goods are going up, they will buy and even borrow money at high interest rates to pay for them. Finally, if labor unions demand that worker's wages be increased to cover the high cost of living, industry will meet this demand and add other costs of production on to the consumer. In summary, all of these causes can create inflationary problems that can affect the welfare of a nation. However, of these three causes, excessive government spending may be the most important.

除了上述介绍的通过采用明确的主题句及明显的连接词来达到表达清楚、文字连贯的效果外，还可以利用同义词来代替关键的词或词组，避免使文章很单调或不断重复。

例如：

Dottie McLean is a pompous, but capable president of the local league of women voters. Her pretentiousness... (examples and details)  
As for her proficiency in fulfilling the duties of her office...

(examples and details) when one recognizes the ability Dottie McLean has for getting people to work together, her highflown airs can be ignored.

凡划线的词基本同义：pompous（自大），capable（能干），pretentiousness（自夸），ability（能力），her highflown airs（她那昂然的风采）。这些词都是为了表现 Dottie McLean 的“自负”与“能干”。

### 三、句式有变化

初学英语写作的同志，由于对英语写作没有信心，通常不敢大胆地使用自己已常握的语言基础知识，包括英语句式知识。结果，作文里出现的基本都是以主、谓、宾句式为主的简单句子，文章因而显得刻板、不活泼。

下面给大家介绍几种文章中常见的句式：

#### 1. 介词短语开头的句子，如：

(1) As for the Flat Earth theory, I believe I could refute it.

(2) On most other questions I should have to fall back on the expert much earlier.

#### 2. 形容词或副词开头的句子，如：

(1) Once, when he was recovering from illness, he wrote a book about people who were examples of that kind of courage.

(2) Afterwards Mrs Parks said she couldn't imagine what had made her do it.

(3) Earlier, black leaders had fought for justice through the law courts while the people waited and hoped.

#### 3. 非谓语形式开头的句子，如：

(1) Defeated in the minor exchanges, I now play my queen of trumps: the opinion of the experts.

(2) Obtaining an audience with son No.1, I snarled, "I'll kill you if you threaten one of those kids again!"

#### 4. 句子含有同位语成分，如：

(1) It was Kennedy, the man, who put his stamp on the world of the early.

(2) Defeated in the minor exchanges, I now play my queen of trumps: the opinion of the experts.

#### 5. 句子由并列从句构成，如：

(1) Energy is the currency of the ecological system and life becomes possible only when food is converted into energy.

(2) The change in the hair coats is usually complete by September and maximum hair depths are reached by November or December when the weather becomes cold.

#### 6. 句子里含有从句，如状语从句、定语从句、主语从句等：

(1) As fall turns into winter, other changes take place. (时间状语从句)

(2) Some persons say that love makes the world go round. (宾语从句)

(3) But it does not follow that the earth is spherical.  
(主语从句)

7. 句子使用比较级结构，如：

(1) Benard Shaw remarks that we are more gullible and superstitious than we were in the Middle Ages.

(2) And much the greater part of our knowledge is at this level.

8. 句子使用强调结构，如：

(1) But the truth is that it is energy that makes the world go round.

(2) It was he who expected to be president.

#### 四、句子结构和用词正确

要在写作中，使用正确的句子结构及恰当的词汇，首先，要勤写多练。尤其在开始练习写作的初始阶段，可勤查语法书、字典等工具书、模仿一些正确的词、句，切忌自编自造英语句式、词组，养成不良的写作习惯，一定要注意使用学习过的句式及词汇。

其次，对于那些拿不稳的句式、词组，可采用第一章中提及的“回避政策”，不要过多依赖汉英词典，否则，很容易写出 Chinglish。

以上介绍了高分档作文的评分标准以及达到刻标准的一些具体应试办法。下面，请学习一篇 14 分的作文范文：

A. Title: ON MAKING FRIENDS

B. Time limit: 40 minutes

C. Word limit: 120-150 words (not including the given opening sentence)

D. Your composition should be based on the OUTLINE below and should start with the given opening sentence: "As a human being, one can hardly do without a friend."

E. Your composition must be written clearly on the ANSWER SHEET.  
OUTLINE:

1. The need for friends

2. True friendship

3. My principle in making friends

As a human being, one can hardly do without a friend. Society is made up of individuals, and making friends is a very important part in our life. Friends can give you a lot. First, if you have trouble with some problems, you can consult your good friends and exchange opinions. Thus, you will feel comfortable and encouraged. Secondly, if you wish to do some physical exercises, such as playing table tennis, you could play with friends and have a good time. Then you can relax yourself. In short, we need friends.

But what is true friendship? Some people think friends are people whom they can play with. In my opinion, a friend in need is a friend indeed. True friendship can encourage you when you are in difficulties. A

true friend not only shares with you your joy and happiness but also your trouble and anxiety. When you need him, he will give you a hand and spare no efforts. Of course, these principles are the same to you when you treat your friends.

As far as I'm concerned, I wish to make as many friends as possible. The world is a big family, and we will feel relaxed in a friendly atmosphere. You will discover the world is full of flowers and happiness. I wish some day we can all be friends.

最后，值得一提的是，因为研究生入学英语作文考试阅卷采用的是总体评分( Global scoring )方法，阅卷人员就总印象给出奖励分( Reward scores )，而不是按语言点的错误数扣分，所以，考生应注意卷面整洁美观，答题纸四周都要留空边。一般情况下，你的短文读者即是阅卷老师，所以，短文忌用对读者不尊敬的词，避免引起阅卷老师的反感。例如，有些习作经常出现下述句子：“ Do you know...? Let me tell you ”. 类似句子既过于口语化，又有将读者当“ 学生 ”之嫌，应尽量避免使用。另外，切勿将题目已提供的英语单词抄错。



## 第二章 题型分析及其范例

根据考试大纲，短文写作部分主要类型有：命题、图表和段首句作文。另外，参照全国大学英语四六级统考作文及 TOEFL 作文的出题形式，对于全国研究生入学英语考试的作文可能出现的出题形式，我们可以用以下表格来概括：

形式	非图表	1. 观点论述题
	图表	2. 不同物比较题 3. 不同观点比较题

另外，值得一提的是通过对各类英语写作题目的大量分析，我们还发现英语写作考试命题有两大特点：均为议论文；均为热门话题。所以，该书里写的应试技巧及给的范例均是针对议论文的。另外，由于考题为热门话题，考生不用担心：题目是否会偏，难？考时是否会感到没有材料可写？

### 一、观点论述题

考生在进行观点论述题的写作时，一定要明确提出自己的观点，并且，对已提出的观点，应该提供充分的、符合逻辑的论据。下面是引出考生本人观点的常用表达法：

in my opinion, I'm of the opinion that, I think, I argue for(against), I have three main reasons for my opinion...

#### 例 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition about "On the Effects of Technology." Your part of writing should be no less than 120 words.

### On the Effects of Technology

America is slowly becoming a high-tech society. New technologies like computers, robots and chemical engineering have changed the way most of us live and work. Life is certainly easier now that we have new foods and drugs, microwave ovens to cook in, computers to work on and new forms of energy. However, while life has gotten easier in some way, technology has had terrible consequences for many many Americans.

Many people are suffering the consequences of the changes brought by technology. In my opinion, the worst consequence of the new scientific technologies is unemployment. Millions of people are out of work in America today, and many of them think that it is due to the recession. But it isn't. Many people have been put out of work by robots, computers, and other kinds of machines that can do the work that people

used to do. The clearest example of this is the automotive industry, where robots have replaced human workers. These machines can do work faster and more efficiently, they can work twenty-four hours a day and they don't get sick or drunk. Thus, hundreds of thousands of people who used to work on building cars no longer have jobs and may never get new ones.

In addition, workers are not the only people who are affected by technology. Managers who can not adjust to computers and telecommunication systems are losing their jobs every day. And at the other end, secretaries who don't learn how to use computers may be fired or their jobs may be taken over by computers.

Thus, we may have more food, better drugs, cheaper energy, and better communications. But we may lose our ability to pay for or use these things. Technology may be improving our lives, but it is also taking away our livelihoods!

## 例 2

### The World Is Getting Smaller

Most of us may have such experiences: when you go to some place far away from the city you live in and think you know nobody there, you are surprised to find that you should run into one of old classmates on the street! Perhaps both of you would cry out, "What a small world!"

Why is the world getting smaller and smaller? For one thing, modern technology has made various means of transportation more and more advanced. Buses, trains, planes, taxis, ships are available in most cities of the world. They carry goods and passengers to and from every corner of the world. For another thing, with the development of modern society, people are contacting with one another more frequently. Everyday we must deal with a lot of people known or unknown to us before. The more advanced a society is, the more contacts with others we make.

So we draw to the conclusion that as long as technology makes progress, the world will be getting smaller and smaller.

## 二、不同物比较题

考生在进行此类作文题写作时,一定要将两物进行比较(compare)或对照(contrast)。比较两物的相同点,对照两物的相异点。注意,如果两物属于不同时间范围,句子要选用不同的时态(请参阅范文 1)。在对两物进行比较、对照后明确提出自己的见解或认识。

该类文章中常出现的表达方法有:

similarly, on the contrary, in contrast, contrary to, prefer A to

B

或以下句子结构:

compared with A, B has the following advantages.

I like A more (most) for the following reasons.

### 例 1

Directions: Traditional ways of life are often changed by modern technology. Using one or two examples of such changes, compare the new ways with the old. Which way of life do you like better? Why?

Technology threatens and inflicts damage upon our quality of life. Scientific achievement of this century is creating a widespread plague that would soon destroy the entire world. Let's take, for example, our air. Due to massive air pollution, what we breathe is not relatively safe like it used to be. The fumes from the exhaust pipes of automobiles, trucks and factories blow waste materials into the atmosphere. After a period of time, atmospheric changes occur. The fumes, that were collected in the atmosphere, are slowly eating away at the ozone layer. This layer of the atmosphere is what shields us from solar ultraviolet rays. Once this layer is gone, our natural protection against the sun would be gone, and if we were hit by one ray of the sun, we'd burst into flames and be reduced to a cinder.

Another plague of technology would be nuclear power. The power that can energize entire cities with electricity could also be the power to destroy. After 1945, the research on nuclear power has increased significantly. Contrary to the belief that it is safe, nuclear power has a way of destroying whole cities. It is not like a fire that can be put out with water or CO<sub>2</sub>, but special equipments have to be used. Afterwards, that place would remain radioactive for quite a long time, devoid of life and sound.

So you see, if technology cannot be halted, then our fate is sealed. Our end would not come about by natural means, but by our own technological achievements. And life on Earth would cease to exist.

### 例 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition about Bicycle—An Important Means of Transport in China. You should base your composition on the following outline:

- (1) 为什么自行车在中国这样普及；
- (2) 和汽车比较；
- (3) 自行车在中国的前途；

Your composition should be no less than 120 words.

Remember to write your composition clearly.

Bicycle, as a means of transport, is an indispensable companion of most Chinese. Each Chinese family possesses at least one bicycle. China is therefore called "The Bicycle Kingdom". The popularity of bicycle in China, I think, is mainly due to the economy of the country

and its people. China, as one of the developing countries, has no financial potential to expand its roads and to manufacture so many cars to satisfy the need of so many Chinese.

Compared with cars, bicycle, however, still has some advantages. First, it is very convenient. For its small size, it doesn't need special parking space. It can be parked almost everywhere. For its light weight, it can be carried easily upstairs and downstairs. Second, driven by manpower, it doesn't need fuel. Hence it has nothing to do with air pollution and energy crisis. Third, China is still a developing country. Most people can afford a bicycle, but not a more advanced vehicle—car.

With so many advantages, bicycle will remain to be an important means of transport in China in the following years. But I think with the rapid development of Chinese economy, more and more Chinese will own a car. Cars will surely substitute bicycles in the future.

### 三、不同观点比较题

在进行该类题写作时，考生首先要对不同观点进行描述，所采用的表达方法有：

Different people have different opinions. some people insist ... while others maintain...

在对不同观点进行描述后，通常来说，考生应正面提出自己的观点。

#### 例 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic: How to Solve the Housing Problem in Big Cities. Your suggested solutions to this problem are listed below. You are supposed to write in favour of one suggestion (ONE only) and against another (ONE only) . you should give your reasons in both cases. You should write no less than 120 words. Remember to give a short introduction and a brief conclusion. Write your Composition clearly.

四种可能解决住房问题的方案：

- (1) 多造高层建筑；
- (2) 向地下发展；
- (3) 建造卫星城市；
- (4) 疏散城市人口。

#### How to Solve the Housing Problem in Big Cities

With the development of modern industry, more and more people are flowing into big cities. Accordingly, the housing problem in big cities is becoming more and more serious.

People have offered many solutions to this problem. I think

building satellite cities in the suburbs is more practical. The fresh air and beautiful scenery in the suburbs will be appealing to the city citizens, who suffer a lot from air pollution, noises, etc. in the overcrowded city. With more people leaving the city, more space will be available for those remaining. The housing problem in big cities will thus be solved.

In the meantime, I'm against the opinion of utilizing the underground space to solve the problem. We can imagine how uncomfortable it will be to live under the ground, having to probe in the dark. The air there will be very stuffy. And the cost of building underground houses will be tremendous.

In brief, building satellite cities can not only improve the housing condition in big cities, but also provide a much better living environment. But the housing problem is very complicated. Perhaps people can hardly rely on only one way to solve the problem completely.

## 例 2

Directions: Some people say that the best preparation for life is learning to work with others and be cooperative. Others take the opposite view and say that learning to be competitive is the best preparation. Discuss these positions. using concrete examples of both. Tell which one you agree with and explain why.

As we proceed through life, we are faced with many types of situations. Each situation requires us to behave in different ways. In school or work we may be faced with a large project which, in order to be accomplished efficiently, demands the cooperation of many individuals. In this instance, each person must be flexible, supportive, and be willing to compromise. He is only a small part of much larger machine, To be competitive or selfish in this situation would only hinder or even cause the project to fail.

Being competitive also has a place in life. The desire to succeed and do better than others motivates us to work hard on the job and study diligently at school. Competition is what makes playing sports so exciting. But competition has its limits. Being competitive to the point of being "cutthroat" is the extreme. When a person resorts to doing anything to do better than others, his or her competitive nature becomes selfish and destructive.

Some people say that the best preparation for life is learning to work with others and be cooperative. Others take the opposite view and say that learning to be competitive is the best preparation. But to succeed in life we must learn to be both cooperative as well as competitive. The most important thing to learn in life is to know when to be cooperative and when to be competitive.

#### 四、图表题

进行图表类作文写作，考生比较容易失分。但只要掌握一些特殊表达方法，并学习有关范文，摸索出图表作文的一些写作诀窍，应付考试、拿一比较理想的成绩，是不会很困难的。

图表作文要求考生通过分析图表中内在关系的各种数据，阐述某种现象的规律或原因。因此，写好此类文章，切忌堆砌数据，而应在对图表进行准确地概括和描述后，用更多的篇幅来揭示图表的含义或分析其现象的原因。

下面是一些常用的表达方法：

1. 

As we can see from	}	the chart (table),...
According to		
As shown in		
As is shown in		
As can be seen in		

2. 

We can see	}	form the chart (table) that ...
It can be seen		
It has been shown		

3. The chart (table) shows that 

{	A is twice as high as B.
	A is three times the size of B.
	A is half the percentage of B.

4. The table shows that there was a 

{	slight increase.
	sharp rise.
	slow decline.
	steady fall.
	rapid drop
	large fluctuation
	sudden reduction.

5. 表示上升的动词：rise, increase, climb, go up; 名词：rise, increase;

表示下降的动词：fall, decline, decrease, drop, go down;  
名词：fall, decline, decrease, drop;

表示平稳的词：remain steady, remain unchanged, not change;

表示上升趋势：There is (was) an upward trend in (toward);

表示下降趋势：There is (was) a downward trend in (toward);

表示到达顶峰：reaches (reached) its peak; reaches its highest

point ;

表示降到最低点 : reaches (reached) its lowest point.

6.表示结论 :

Therefore,	} it can be	see ...	In conclusion,	} we
Thus,		concluded ...	To conclude	
From the table		inferred ...	On the whole	
Finally,		shown ...	In all	

can say that ...

### 例 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition. The title of it is: Film Is giving Way to TV. You should write no less than 120 words for your composition and it must include the following ideas (given in Chinese):

(1) 电影观众越来越少 ;

(2) 电视观众越来越多, 因为..... ;

(3) 然而, 还是有人喜欢看电影, 因为..... ;

Remember to write your composition in readable handwriting.

### Film Is Giving Way to TV

According to an investigation on the number of film-goers and TV-Watchers in the ten-year period (1975-1985), we can see that the number of film-goers decreased sharply from 85 000 to 15 000 in this period. More and more people disliked visiting the cinema.

Meanwhile, there were more and more TV-watchers. The number of TV-watchers increased twenty times in the period. I think such a rapid increase is mainly because TV offers its watchers great convenience. People can watch TV at home quite comfortably while drinking, eating and chatting with other family members. Besides, TV is more informative, with a great variety of programs. Of course, people are richer and richer, which means more and more people can afford TV.

Nevertheless, There still a number of film-goers. They claim cinema has a special atmosphere which they can't enjoy at home. Film grants them a formal and decent kind of entertainment.

### 例 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition based on the graph below. The suggested TITLE is: Car Accidents Declining in Walton City. Remember that

your composition must be written according to the following outline:

- (1) Rise and fall of the rate of car accidents as indicated by the graph;
- (2) Possible reason(s) for the decline of car accidents in the city;
- (3) Your predictions of what will happen this year; Your composition should be no less than 120 words and you should quote as few figures as possible.

### Car Accidents Declining in Walton City

From the graph, which shows the number of car accidents in Walton City in 1990, we learn that car accidents fluctuated in the year. From January to March, The number rose from 22 to 32, and then it declined to 26 in June. From June to August, the number sharply went up to 39, the highest point in the year. Fortunately, from then on, the number kept on decreasing, and in the last month of the year, there were only 16 accidents, the smallest number in the year.

I think there are possibly three major reasons for the decline of the car accidents in the city. Firstly, tourists moved out of the city after August. The roads became less crowded. Secondly, drivers became more aware of the danger of car accidents, and they tried to avoid careless driving and drunk driving. Thirdly, the government had taken strict and more efficient measures to reduce car accidents.

Hopefully, the number of the car accidents in Walton city will drop further with the efforts of the citizens.

总之，了解各种作文考试形式，同时学习一些优秀范文，有助于我们胸有成竹地上考场。见考题后也不至于惶恐，因为我们已熟悉了考题形式，并能运用一些常见的表达法。

这无疑将帮助我们最大限度地发挥自己的写作潜力。



### 第三章 写作步骤及文章的组织

参加英语写作考试，写作步骤一般作文的写作步骤有所不同。平时，我们写文章可分以下几步：

1. 确定主题；
2. 收集材料；
3. 列出提纲；
4. 运用写作技巧扩展文章；
5. 修改文章。

但参加英语写作考试时，写作步骤可简单地分为：

1. 审题；
2. 打草稿
3. 组织文章；
4. 修改文章；

一、审题 一般来说，英语写作考试规定了写作时间，而且，相当一部分的写作考题为考生确定了短文的主题、甚至规定了写作提纲。这就要求考生严格按照题意谋篇布局，否则，一篇短文即使写的再好，如果不符合题意、离题万里，是不会给分的。故考试作文的第一步是审题。审题时，要注意抓住题目及提纲中的关键词及各提纲要点之间的逻辑关系。

二、打草稿 审题后的关键一步就是打草稿或填充提纲。因为作文考试时间有限，草稿或提纲要尽量做到简单、扼要、不浪费笔墨。如：下述提纲就过于详细。其实，提纲里写下关键、句、结构就可以，即：该提纲只需写出划线部分。

题目：The School Library

中心思想：The library plays a very important part in students' life  
(或 a student's life).

提纲(outline):

- (1) A student has to borrow books from the library.
  - a) He needs reference books for his selective courses.
  - b) He may want to read novels, stories and plays.
- (2) He needs newspapers and magazines in the library.
  - a) Many new magazines are on display in the first reading-room.
  - b) There are newspapers from all provinces.
  - c) Back numbers may be borrowed at the counter.
- (3) He needs the library all the more in his junior and senior years.
  - a) The library provides him with books for his research.
  - b) He wouldn't be able to write his graduation paper without using the library.

另外，在打草稿或写提纲阶段，很容易出现以下两种情况，妨碍写作水平的正常发挥：

(1) 看题后，有的考生由于紧张怯场，一时头脑空白，不知写什么，也有的考生可能由于对题目没多大兴趣，在监考和学期作文考试评卷过程中，我们发现有的考试草稿纸上的作文与抄写 Answer Sheet 上的作文几乎一模一样，有时，抄在 Answer Sheet 上的作文都不及草稿清楚、完整，可能由于最后时间不够、来不及抄写。所以，草稿力求简洁。

平时就不关心那类问题，也不知写什么。如果出现这种情况，对考生来说这个阶段的关键就是拓宽写作思路。记住：金无足赤，人无完人。所以，

任何事物、任何人都有正反两个方面。并且，任何观点都有人赞成，也有人反对。采用这种辩证的方法拓展题目，思路自然就打开了。

(2) 部分考生可能在看题后，浮想联翩，感到要写的东西太多了，不知从何下手。如果出现这种情况，考生也可将自己的想法，首先分成两大类：正面的和反面的；支持某一观点的和反对某一观点的等等。然后写下各观点的关键词。如果能用英文写出关键词更好，不能用英文表达的关键词可暂且写上中文。最后，选择一些扣题、有说服力、又能用英语流利表达的观点。

比如，一篇作文题目：Do You Like Reading? 那么，能拓宽思路的简单的提纲可以是：

Like	Dislike
1. enlarge knowledge;	1. bad content, bad effect;
2. offer enjoyment;	2. waste of time;
3. kill time;	3. damage to eyes;
4. pass exams;	4. too expensive;

我们再来看看以下两个题目是如何列提纲的：

题目：The Most Distinctive Characteristics of Modern Teenagers

提纲：1. Concern themselves with affairs of state; 2. Like to show off;  
3. Want to be independent of others; 4. Concerned more about the future;

题目：How to Buy a Good Used Car

提纲：1. Carefully inspect the car; 2. Talk to the former owner of the car;  
3. Engage a good mechanic to examine its motor;

### 三、组织文章

提纲写好后，就进入了文章的组织及写作阶段。一般研究生入学英语写作可按下式安排布局：

#### (1) 引言 (Introduction)

文章的开头段至少有两个重要作用：首先要告诉评卷人文章的主题和中心思想；其次要告诉阅卷人一些饶有趣味的信息或用一些吸引他们的偏僻捷径的写作手法。尤其重要的是，首段的内容要和文章的中心思想紧密相关，能引人入胜，吸引读者，使他们能顺着作文思路，读完全文，找到结论。

#### (2) 正文 (Body)

这是短文的主要部分。在这部分文章的写作中作者通常是在阐述及说明持有某种观点或某种现象存在。所以，该部分的写作重在使道理讲的有条有理、既逻辑又清楚。明确的主题句及恰当的连词是使文章段落层次分明、有条不紊的关键。同时要注意，不同类型的文章，说理的角度及文法都有所不同。

请参阅第二章中的“表达清楚、文字连贯”部分的内容及第三章“题型分析及其范例”。

#### (3) 结束语 (Conclusion)

文章的结尾至少有两个作用：照应开头；概括全文。尤其重要的是，文章的结尾在思想、内容方面要有意识地与前面部分衔接起来，这样，就能给

人一种完整的感觉。另外，结尾的语要求精练，思想要发人深省，使人有重读的愿望。

下面主要谈谈如何写好文章的开头。

万事开头难。写短文也是如此。短文的开头，是作者棘手的部分，因为作者必须决定从何下笔，写出怎样的基调。另外，一个恰如其分的开头也反映了作者的写作水平。

文章的开头，五花八门，但归纳起来，常见的、比较成功的开场白有以下几种写法：

#### 1. 谚语

What Is More Important: Health or wealth?

As the saying goes, "Health is the wealth" ...

谚语一般已为大家所接受，由它开头引出下文或提出作者本人的观点，也易为读者所接受。

#### 2. 不同的观点

### Deer And the Energy Cycle

Some persons say that love makes the world go round. Others of a less romantic and more practical turn of mind say that it isn't love; it's money. But the truth is that it is the energy that makes the world go round ...

这是一篇关于鹿及能量循环科普性文章。这类文章容易写得枯燥、乏味。但文章开头通过描述不同人对推动世界前进动力的不同看法，此出了们普遍关心的“钱”和“爱情”，并由此自然地引出作者自己的观点。

#### 3. 问题

### A Good Student?

What is meant by a true student? A true good student is one who possesses good morality, sound health, perfect knowledge and various abilities. To attain this end, I shall give a few suggestions as following:

这篇文章开头针对文章标题设问自答，紧扣标题，又能引起下文，思路合理，行文自然。

#### 4. 定义

Hitler's Invasion of the Soviet Union in 1941

What is fascism? Fascism is the use of brutal force in enslaving the people at home and the people of foreign countries. Fascism is oppression and aggression.

#### 5. 问句

(例名可参照上例)

#### 6. 引语

### Why Do We Believe That the Earth Is Round?

Somewhere or other — I think — it is in the preface to Saint Joan — Benard Shaw remarks that we are more gullible and superstitious today than we were in the Middle Ages...

这篇文章的中心思想即：现代人比中纪的人更加轻信迷信。在文章的开头，作者通过引用文学大师萧伯纳的话将自己的观点引出。

#### 7. 故事

### To Fake Life With Courage

One cold afternoon in 1937 a football game was taking place. The players were students at Harvard University, Near Boston, in the United States of America. American football is a rough game in which it is easy to get hurt...

全文主要描写了美国肯尼迪总统的一个突出的品格：勇气。但文章开始，却未提及“勇气”二字，而是描写了肯尼迪总统在哈佛大学踢足球的一个故事。故事在该文章中的作用既可以引人入胜、又可以使读者产生悬念。

#### 四、修改文章

刀不磨不快，文章不改不好。对文章修改润色是一个十分重要的环节。即使是伟大的作家，写作中思考不周，有所疏漏，总是难免的。鲁迅说过：“写完后至少看两遍，竭力将可有可无的字、句、段删去，毫不可惜”。

但研究生入学英语写作考试中的短文修改与一般文章的修改又有所不同，由于考试时间紧，加上平时练习不够，考生极容易在写作中出一些极简单的、不应该出现的语言错误，而得高分作文的标准之一即：句子结构和用词正确。所以，考生应该尽量做到在写完作文后，抽时间全面检查是否有语言错误。如：

- |                         |                  |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| 1. 主、谓动词是否一致；           | 5. 词序安排是否正确；     |
| 2. 动词时态是否有错；            | 6. 有没有不完整的句子；    |
| 3. 名词单、复数是否有错；          | 7. 拼写是否有错；       |
| 4. 有些表达是否出现了 Chinglish； | 8. 标点符号、大小写是否有错； |

值得一提的是，短文修改阶段，考生应特别检查短文里是否用了自己没把握的词、句、及句子结构，是否有的词、句是自己从中文里硬翻译过来的。如果有的话，应尽量换用地道的英语表达法或避免使用它们。

## 第四章 遣词造句及修辞手法

### 一、选词

文章采用什么样的词汇要以文章的内容及读者为转移。

美国许多总统的就职演讲由于选用了简短有力、脍炙人口的词而家喻户晓、流芳百世。如约翰·肯尼迪就职演说词中的名言是：“Ask not what your country can do for you, ask what you can do for your country”，林肯葛底斯堡演说中的“government of the people, by the people, for the people”也深得人们的喜爱。

但研究生入学考试英语写作中应选用什么样的词汇呢？考生是否也能用简短的词汇来表达深邃的思想呢？我们发现学生习作中普遍存在的一个现象是：用的是初中英语课本里的词汇；表达的是小学三年级孩子的思想。可见，对英语未能熟练掌握的英语学习者，要想用简短的词去表达较深的思想，是很难的。

其实，许多简短的词意思都较抽象、笼统，而那些大、长词的表达却更具体、明确并能给人以深刻的印象。请看下面几类词：

bad children:rude, selfish, ungrateful hot-tempered;

bad meat:tough, overcooked, contaminated

good men:kind, honest, generous, sympathetic, warmhearted  
selfless honorable

good food:tasty, nourishing, wholesome, high-priced, substantial

初稿：

(1)My friend Ariadne is very interesting. (2)She carries herself like the heroine she is named after, even though she's only a five-good one.(3) Another thing she does is to choose clothes that flatters her. (4) Her colthes aren't always new, but uses colors and lines in a way that immediately catches your eyes. (5) She is a good cook and has seven brothers. (6) Her glasses make her a look of cleverness and confidence. (7) When she is closer you can see her vivid, deep blue eyes. (8) They look nice with her light blond hairs. (9) She's 30 years, but you'd never know it, by looking at herself. (10) She seems ageless.

修改后：

(1) My friend Ariadne is as striking as her name. (2) She knows that the riginal Airadne was a heroine in a Greek myth, and she carries herself like a heroine even though she's only five foot one. (3) But her posture is not the only thing that catches your eyes. (4) Her skillful use of jewelry, scarves and the way she blends the colors and lines of her clothes make her stand out in any any group of people. (5) It doesn't matter that her clothes aren't always in the current fashion. (6) They are right for her. (7)Even glasses look good on her ; they give her a look of intelligence and self-confidence. (8)Up closer, you can see her vivid, deep blue eyes that contrast strikingly with her light blond

hair. (9) The effect of all these features is to make her seem as ageless as the myth that she is named after.

仔细阅读、比较上面两篇短文后，我们发现修改稿不仅换上了能够统率全文、使全文浑然一体的主题句：My friend Ariadne is as striking as her name, 而且，加用了连贯词 and, but 等，使文章结构和意思都更紧凑。这里，值得注意的是许多简短的词都换成了大、难或长的词。如：第一句中的 very 换成了一个比较结构“as.....as”，这更能反映习作者驾驭语言的能力。第 4 句的“make her stand out in any group of people”换下“striking”因而使表达多样化。另外，修改后的短文通过用“blends”代替“new”以及“contrasts strikingly”取代“looks nice”，使短文的表达更加具体、贴切。

## 二、另外，选词时要避免使用罗嗦、累赘的词。请看下面几个例子：

(不简洁) Their solution to the problem of overpopulation at first sounded like a strange solution.

(改正) Their solution to the problem of overpopulation at first sounded strange.

(不简洁) In 1975 the stealers beat the Virkings; in 1976 the steelers beat the Cowboys.

(简洁) In 1975 the steelers beat the Virkings; in 1976, the Cowboys. (分号的使用表示省略了相同的主谓语。)

(同义重复) Julia delights in giving parties; entertaining guests is a real pleasure.

(简洁) Julia delights in giving parties.

## 三、修辞手法

在写作应试技巧的最后部分，我们想谈谈一些常见的修辞手法。其实，对文章的修辞手段具体是什么，绝大多数考生并不陌生，因为在中学语文课里，我们已接触过大量的修辞格。在英语学习中，只要稍加留意，我们会发现，修辞格的使用在文章中也不罕见。我们要在一篇 150 字左右的英语考试作文中拿高分，从某种意义上来说，我们不仅在谋篇布局上下功夫，有时也不得不“show off”我们的语言功底、甚至修辞能力。当然，我们不提倡言之无物、无病呻吟。但有目的、适量的修辞能使文字具体形象、新鲜活泼。

### 1. 明喻(Simile):

(1) He is as brave as a lion.

(2) Childhood is like a swiftly passing dream.

(3) As cold waters to a thirsty soul, so is good news from a far country.

(4) as cold as ice;  
as good as gold;  
as strong as an ox;  
as cunning as a fox;

### 2. 暗喻(Metaphor):

(1) Jim was a fox.

- (2)The world is a stage.
- (3)I skim over the book to taste the tone of it.
- (4)At last he felt a ray of hope.

3.拟人(Personification):

- (1)The wind whistled through the trees.
- (2)It's almost as if the insects kept reproducing themselves!

4.夸张(Hyperbole):

- (1)Thanks a million.
- (2)He almost died laughing.
- (3)Belinda smiled, and all the world was gay.

5.委婉语(Euphemism):

- (1)“die”的委婉语: pass away, go to sleep, go to heaven,depart;
- (2)“old people”的委婉语: senior citizens;
- (3)“mad”的委婉语: feeble-minded, queer;

6.对照(Antithesis):

- (1)Speech is silver; silence is gold.
- (2)If the economy stays down, can the conservatives stay up?
- (3)It takes a great deal of history to produce a little literature.

7.象声词、拟声(Onomatopoeia):

- (1)You will hear the vroom-vroom of engines, seeing the highway is the mind's eye.
- (2)Then gang goes my ale.

8.头韵(Alliteration):

- (1)Message printed on the bag offered leisurely, lucrative work of delivering more such bags.
- (2)The sun sank slowly.]
- (3)Our country is getting prosperous and powerful.
- (4)We are becoming increasingly aware all that can befall patients in their illness when information is denied or distorted.

9.排比句(parallelism)

- (1)Go back to Mississippi, go back to Alabama, go back to south Carolina, go back to Georgia, go back to Louisiana, go back to the slums and ghettos of (同义重复)Julia delights in giving parties; entertaining guests is a real pleasure.  
(简洁) Julia delights in giving parties.

